Learn to speak Italian with ease and confidence

Buon giorno! If you’re looking to reach a comfort level in conversational Italian, this hands-on, friendly guide gets you speaking like a native. Here, you’ll find expanded coverage of the necessary grammar, major verb tenses, and conjugations that beginners need to know. Plus, you’ll get a fully updated and expanded audio CD that includes real-life conversations, a refreshed and expanded mini-dictionary, more useful exercises and practice opportunities, and more.

- **Italian 101** — learn how to pronounce the Italian alphabet, numbers, and common words, and get a handle on the basic grammar you’ll need to know as you’re working through the book
- **Ciao down** — start practicing your Italian-speaking skills in everyday situations, like asking for directions to the Colosseum or expressing your love for espresso
- **Start talkin’ the talk** — get the know-how to confidently navigate public transportation, find a hotel room, change money, and handle an emergency on your excursion in Italy
- **The power of dieci (ten)** — discover ten ways to pick up Italian quickly, ten things never to say in Italian, ten favorite Italian expressions, and ten phrases that’ll make people think you’re a local

Buon giorno! If you’re looking to reach a comfort level in conversational Italian, this hands-on, friendly guide gets you speaking like a native. Here, you’ll find expanded coverage of the necessary grammar, major verb tenses, and conjugations that beginners need to know. Plus, you’ll get a fully updated and expanded audio CD that includes real-life conversations, a refreshed and expanded mini-dictionary, more useful exercises and practice opportunities, and more.

- **Italian 101** — learn how to pronounce the Italian alphabet, numbers, and common words, and get a handle on the basic grammar you’ll need to know as you’re working through the book
- **Ciao down** — start practicing your Italian-speaking skills in everyday situations, like asking for directions to the Colosseum or expressing your love for espresso
- **Start talkin’ the talk** — get the know-how to confidently navigate public transportation, find a hotel room, change money, and handle an emergency on your excursion in Italy
- **The power of dieci (ten)** — discover ten ways to pick up Italian quickly, ten things never to say in Italian, ten favorite Italian expressions, and ten phrases that’ll make people think you’re a local

Go to Dummies.com® for videos, step-by-step examples, how-to articles, or to shop!
Get More and Do More at Dummies.com®

Start with FREE Cheat Sheets

Cheat Sheets include
• Checklists
• Charts
• Common Instructions
• And Other Good Stuff!

To access the Cheat Sheet created specifically for this book, go to
www.dummies.com/cheatsheet/italian

Get Smart at Dummies.com

Dummies.com makes your life easier with 1,000s of answers on everything from removing wallpaper to using the latest version of Windows.

Check out our
• Videos
• Illustrated Articles
• Step-by-Step Instructions

Plus, each month you can win valuable prizes by entering our Dummies.com sweepstakes.*

Want a weekly dose of Dummies? Sign up for Newsletters on
• Digital Photography
• Microsoft Windows & Office
• Personal Finance & Investing
• Health & Wellness
• Computing, iPods & Cell Phones
• eBay
• Internet
• Food, Home & Garden

Find out “HOW” at Dummies.com

*Sweepstakes not currently available in all countries; visit Dummies.com for official rules.

Mobile Apps

There’s a Dummies App for This and That

With more than 200 million books in print and over 1,600 unique titles, Dummies is a global leader in how-to information. Now you can get the same great Dummies information in an App. With topics such as Wine, Spanish, Digital Photography, Certification, and more, you’ll have instant access to the topics you need to know in a format you can trust.

To get information on all our Dummies apps, visit the following:
www.Dummies.com/go/mobile from your computer.
About the Authors

Teresa Picarazzi graduated with a BA from Skidmore College and an MA/PhD in Italian Literature from Rutgers University. For many years she taught Italian language, literature, and culture at several universities, including The University of Arizona, Wesleyan University, and Dartmouth College. She also directed the Italian language and study abroad programs at some of these. For the past six years, she has taught Italian at The Hopkins School in New Haven, Connecticut.

In her spare time, Teresa likes to cook and read. She lives in Fairfield, Connecticut, with her daughter, her husband, Toby the dog, and Mittens and Governor the cats. The family spends every summer in Ravenna, Italy.

After her university studies in linguistics and Spanish and English language and literature, Francesca Romana Onofri lived several years abroad to better her understanding of the cultures and languages of different countries. In Spain and Ireland she worked as an Italian and Spanish teacher, as well as a translator and interpreter at cultural events. In Germany she was responsible for communication and special events in a museum of modern art, but even then she never gave up on her passion for languages: She was an Italian coach and teacher at the Opera Studio of the Cologne Opera House, and did translations — especially in the art field. Back in Italy, Francesca has edited several Berlitz Italian books and is working as a translator of art books, as well as a cultural events organizer and educator.

Karen Möller is currently studying Italian and English linguistics, literature, and culture. Before entering academia, Karen worked in the field of public relations and wrote articles for all kinds of fashion magazines and newspapers. Recently she has had occasion to work with Berlitz Publishing on German-Italian projects, including verb, vocabulary, and grammar handbooks, and Italian exercise books.
Dedication

I would like to dedicate this book to my parents, Mary and Domenico.

—Teresa Picarazzi

Author’s Acknowledgments

I would like to thank my husband Giancarlo and daughter Emilia for their patience and support while I was working on this book, and my students, present and past, for their curiosity and love for all things Italian. I would also like to thank the people at Wiley for making this book come true: acquisitions editor Michael Lewis for contacting me; project editor Susan Hobbs for carefully guiding me step by step through the process, and technical editors Alicia Vitti and Christiana Thielmann for making me look at some aspects of Italian language and culture through a different lens.

—Teresa Picarazzi
Publisher’s Acknowledgments

We’re proud of this book; please send us your comments at http://dummies.custhelp.com. For other comments, please contact our Customer Care Department within the U.S. at 877-762-2974, outside the U.S. at 317-572-3993, or fax 317-572-4002.

Some of the people who helped bring this book to market include the following:

Acquisitions, Editorial, and Media Development

Project Editor: Susan Hobbs
Acquisitions Editor: Michael Lewis
Copy Editor: Susan Hobbs
Assistant Editor: Erin Calligan Mooney
Editorial Program Coordinator: Joe Niesen
Technical Editors: Alicia Vitti, Christiana Thielmann
Editorial Manager: Jennifer Ehrlich
Editorial Supervisor and Reprint Editor: Carmen Krikorian
Editorial Assistants: David Lutton, Jennette ElNaggar
Art Coordinator: Alicia B. South
Cover Photos: © iStockphoto.com / stevedangers
Cartoons: Rich Tennant
(www.the5thwave.com)

Composition Services

Project Coordinator: Nikki Gee
Layout and Graphics: Claudia Bell, Carl Byers, Nikki Gately, Joyce Haughey, Corrie Socolovitch, Christin Swinford
Proofreaders: Laura Albert, Susan Moritz, Mildred Rosenzweig
Indexer: Potomac Indexing, LLC

Publishing and Editorial for Consumer Dummies

Diana Graves Steele, Vice President and Publisher, Consumer Dummies
Kristin Ferguson-Wagstaffe, Product Development Director, Consumer Dummies
Ensley Eikenburg, Associate Publisher, Travel
Kelly Regan, Editorial Director, Travel

Publishing for Technology Dummies

Andy Cummings, Vice President and Publisher, Dummies Technology/General User

Composition Services

Debbie Stailey, Director of Composition Services
Contents at a Glance

Introduction ................................................................ 1

Part I: Getting Started ................................................. 7
Chapter 1: Saying It Like It Is ................................................................. 9
Chapter 2: Jumping Into the Basics of Italian ........................................21
Chapter 3: Buongiorno! Salutations! ..........................................................43
Chapter 4: Getting Your Numbers and Time Straight ...............................63

Part II: Italian in Action ............................................ 83
Chapter 5: Casa dolce casa (Home Sweet Home) ...........................................85
Chapter 6: Where Is the Colosseum? Asking Directions ..............................103
Chapter 7: Food Glorious Food — and Don’t Forget the Drink ..................119
Chapter 8: Shopping, Italian Style ............................................................139
Chapter 9: Having Fun Out on the Town ....................................................151
Chapter 10: Taking Care of Business and Telecommunicating ..................173
Chapter 11: Recreation and the Outdoors ..................................................191

Part III: Italian on the Go ......................................... 207
Chapter 12: Planning a Trip .................................................................209
Chapter 13: Money, Money, Money ..........................................................221
Chapter 14: Getting Around: Planes, Trains, Taxis, and Buses ....................233
Chapter 15: Finding a Place to Stay ..........................................................255
Chapter 16: Handling Emergencies ..........................................................271
Chapter 17: Small Talk, Wrapping Things Up ...........................................293

Part IV: The Part of Tens .......................................... 313
Chapter 18: Ten Ways to Pick Up Italian Quickly .......................................315
Chapter 19: Ten Things Never to Say in Italian ........................................319
Chapter 20: Ten Favorite Italian Expressions .............................................323
Chapter 21: Ten Phrases to Say So That People Think You’re Italian ...........327
Part V: Appendixes ................................................................. 331
Appendix A: Verb Tables ........................................................................................................ 333
Appendix B: Dictionaries ........................................................................................................ 347
Appendix C: About the CD ..................................................................................................... 359
Appendix D: Answer Keys ....................................................................................................... 361

Index ................................................................................................................................. 369
# Table of Contents

## Introduction ................................................................. 1
  - About This Book ................................................................. 1
  - Conventions Used in This Book .............................................. 1
  - Foolish Assumptions ............................................................ 3
  - How This Book Is Organized .................................................. 3
    - Part I: Getting Started ....................................................... 3
    - Part II: Italian in Action ...................................................... 3
    - Part III: Italian on the Go .................................................... 4
    - Part IV: The Part of Tens ..................................................... 4
    - Part V: Appendixes ............................................................. 4
  - Icons Used in This Book ........................................................ 4
  - Where to Go from Here .......................................................... 5

## Part I: Getting Started .................................................. 7

### Chapter 1: Saying It Like It Is ........................................... 9
  - You Already Know Some Italian! .......................................... 9
  - Cognates .............................................................................. 11
  - Popular expressions .............................................................. 11
  - Mouthing Off: Basic Pronunciation ....................................... 12
    - The Alphabet ....................................................................... 13
    - Vowels .............................................................................. 13
    - Consonants ....................................................................... 15
  - Stressing Words Properly ..................................................... 19
  - Using Gestures ..................................................................... 20

### Chapter 2: Jumping Into the Basics of Italian ................... 21
  - Setting Up Simple Sentences ............................................... 21
  - Coping with Gendered Words (Articles, Nouns, and Adjectives) ........................................................................ 22
    - Nouns and gender .............................................................. 22
    - The indefinite articles ....................................................... 23
    - Definite articles .................................................................. 24
    - Adjectives ......................................................................... 25
  - Talking about Pronouns ....................................................... 26
    - Personal pronouns ............................................................ 27
    - Saying "you": Formal and informal ...................................... 27
Chapter 3: Buongiorno! Salutations! ................................. 43
Looking at Common Greetings and Good-byes ...................... 43
Deciding between formal or friendly ........................................ 45
Rephrasing to a greeting ........................................................... 45
Specifying your reuniting ......................................................... 46
Making Introductions .............................................................. 47
Introducing yourself ............................................................... 47
Introducing other people ....................................................... 50
Getting Acquainted ............................................................... 53
Finding out whether someone speaks Italian ......................... 53
Talking about where you come from ....................................... 54
Extending and responding to invitations .................................. 60

Chapter 4: Getting Your Numbers and Time Straight .......... 63
Counting Numbers ................................................................. 63
Times of Day and Days of the Week ......................................... 66
Using the Calendar and Making Dates ..................................... 68
Making dates ........................................................................... 69
Telling time ............................................................................. 70
Chatting about the Weather ..................................................... 72
Familiarizing Yourself with the Metric System ......................... 77
Length and Distance ............................................................... 78
Weight .................................................................................... 78

Part II: Italian in Action ......................................................... 83

Chapter 5: Casa dolce casa (Home Sweet Home) ............... 85
Ordering Ordinals ................................................................. 85
Inhabiting Your Home ............................................................ 87
Hunting for an apartment ........................................................ 87
Sprucing up your apartment .................................................... 92
Furnishing your new pad ........................................................ 93
Housekeeping in style ............................................................ 95
Cooking and cleaning ............................................................. 98
Doing household chores ......................................................... 100
# Table of Contents

Chapter 6: Where Is the Colosseum? Asking Directions ........... 103
- Finding Your Way: Asking for Specific Places .................. 103
- Mapping the quarters and following directions ............... 105
- Verbs on the Move .................................................. 109
- Locations You May Be Looking For .................................. 113

Chapter 7: Food Glorious Food — and Don’t Forget the Drink .... 119
- Eating, Italian Style ............................................... 119
- Drinking, Italian Style ............................................. 119
  - Expressing your love for espresso ................................ 120
  - Beverages with even more of a kick .......................... 121
- The Start and End of Dining Out ................................. 123
  - Making reservations ............................................. 124
  - Paying for your meal ............................................ 125
- Having Breakfast .................................................... 126
- Eating Lunch .......................................................... 127
- Enjoying Dinner ..................................................... 129
- Shopping for Food ................................................ 132
  - Al macellaio (ahl mah-chehl-lahy-oh) (at the butcher’s) ...... 132
  - Pesce (fish) (peh-sheh) ........................................ 133
  - At the panetteria (breadshop) ..................................... 134

Chapter 8: Shopping, Italian Style ................................. 139
- Clothing Yourself ................................................... 139
- Deciding between department stores and boutiques ......... 139
- Sizing up Italian sizes .............................................. 143
- Talking definitely and indefinitely ................................ 144
- Coloring your words ................................................ 145
- Accessorizing .......................................................... 147
- Stepping out in style ................................................ 148

Chapter 9: Having Fun Out on the Town ...................... 151
- Acquiring Culture ................................................... 151
- Going to the movies ................................................ 154
- Going to the theater ................................................ 156
- Going to a museum .................................................. 160
- Going to a local festival .......................................... 161
- Going to a concert ................................................... 162
- Inviting Fun ............................................................ 164

Chapter 10: Taking Care of Business and Telecommunicating .... 173
- Phoning Made Simple ............................................. 173
- Connecting via cellphones, texts, and Skype ................. 174
- Calling for business or pleasure .................................. 176
- Making Arrangements over the Phone ......................... 178
- Asking for People and Getting the Message .................. 179
What Did You Do Last Weekend? — Talking about the Past .................182
Discussing Your Job ..................................................................................186
  The human element ...........................................................................187
  Office equipment ................................................................................187

Chapter 11: Recreation and the Outdoors ..............................................191
  Taking a Tour ........................................................................................191
  Speaking Reflexively ...........................................................................195
  Playing Sports ......................................................................................196
  Talking about Hobbies and Interests ....................................................200

Part III: Italian on the Go ................................................................. 207

Chapter 12: Planning a Trip .................................................................209
  Deciding When and Where to Go .........................................................209
  Taking a Tour ......................................................................................211
  Booking a Trip/Traveling to Foreign Lands .........................................213
  Arriving and Leaving: The Verbs “Arrivare” and “Partire” ....................216
  Going to the Beach and Spa ...............................................................217
  Using the Simple Future Tense ..............................................................217

Chapter 13: Money, Money, Money. ....................................................221
  Going to the Bank ................................................................................221
  Changing Money ..................................................................................224
  Using Credit Cards ..............................................................................226
  Looking at Various Currencies .............................................................228

Chapter 14: Getting Around: Planes, Trains, Taxis, and Buses ..............233
  Getting through the Airport .................................................................233
    Checking in .......................................................................................234
    Dealing with excess baggage ...........................................................236
    Waiting to board the plane ...............................................................237
    Coping after landing ........................................................................238
  Going through Customs ........................................................................240
  Losing Luggage ...................................................................................241
  Renting a Car ......................................................................................243
  Navigating Public Transportation ......................................................245
    Calling a taxi ...................................................................................245
    Moving by train ................................................................................246
    Going by bus or tram .......................................................................249
    Reading maps and schedules ...........................................................251
  Being Early or Late .............................................................................253
Chapter 15: Finding a Place to Stay ......................................................... 255
Choosing a Place to Stay ........................................................................... 255
Reserving a Room ...................................................................................... 256
Checking In .................................................................................................. 259
Personalizing pronouns ........................................................................... 262
  This or these: Demonstrative adjectives and pronouns ....................... 263
  Yours, mine, and ours: Possessive pronouns ........................................ 263
Bending Others to Your Will: Imperatives ............................................... 267

Chapter 16: Handling Emergencies ........................................................ 271
Talking to Doctors ...................................................................................... 272
  Describing what ails you ....................................................................... 273
  Understanding professional medical vocabulary .................................... 277
  Getting what you need at the pharmacy ............................................... 277
  Braving the dentist ............................................................................... 279
Reporting an Accident to the Police ......................................................... 280
I’ve Been Robbed! Knowing What to Do and Say When the Police Arrive ... 281
Dealing with Car Trouble ......................................................................... 285
When You Need a Lawyer: Protecting Your Rights .................................. 287
Reporting a Lost or Stolen Passport .......................................................... 288

Chapter 17: Small Talk, Wrapping Things Up .......................................... 293
Discovering Interrogative Pronouns .......................................................... 293
  Asking simple questions ....................................................................... 295
  Taking care of basic needs ................................................................... 296
Talking About Yourself and Your Family — Possessives Part 2 ............. 300
Speaking Reflexively ................................................................................. 305
Talking shop ............................................................................................... 307
Discussing your job .................................................................................. 307

Part IV: The Part of Tens ........................................................................ 313

Chapter 18: Ten Ways to Pick Up Italian Quickly .................................... 315
Read Italian Food Labels ........................................................................... 315
Ask for Food in Italian ............................................................................... 316
Listen to Italian Songs ............................................................................... 316
Read Italian Publications ......................................................................... 316
Watch Italian Movies ................................................................................. 316
Tune in to Italian Radio and TV Programs ............................................... 317
Listen to Italian Language Tapes .............................................................. 317
Share Your Interest .................................................................................. 317
Surf the Net ............................................................................................... 318
Cook! ......................................................................................................... 318
Appendix B: Dictionaries ................................................. 347

Appendix C: About the CD. ........................................ 359
  Track Listing........................................................................ 359
  Customer Care...................................................................... 360

Appendix D: Answer Keys ............................................. 361

Index .................................................................................. 369
Introduction

As society becomes more global, knowing how to say at least a few words in other languages opens doors to communication. Carrying on a brief conversation in an immersion situation can enrich your experience. You may be planning a trip to Italy for business or pleasure. You may have friends and neighbors who speak other languages, or you may want to get in touch with your heritage by learning a little bit of the language that is spoken today in the place your ancestors came from.

Whatever your reason for wanting to learn some Italian, *Italian For Dummies* can help. Two experts at helping readers develop knowledge — Berlitz, experts in teaching foreign languages; and John Wiley & Sons, Inc., publishers of the best-selling *For Dummies* series — have teamed up to produce a book that gives you basic Italian language skills. We’re not promising fluency here, but basic communicative competency that will allow you to be understood. If you need to greet someone, purchase a ticket, or order off a menu in Italian, you need look no further than *Italian For Dummies*.

About This Book

This is not a class that you have to drag yourself to twice a week for a specified period of time. You can use *Italian For Dummies* however you want to, whether your goal is to learn some words and phrases to help you get around when you visit Italy, or you just want to be able to say “Hello, how are you?” to your Italian-speaking neighbor. Go through this book at your own pace, reading as much or as little at a time as you like. You don’t have to trudge through the chapters in order, either; just read the sections that interest you.

*Note:* If you’ve never taken Italian before, you may want to read the chapters in Part I before you tackle the later chapters.

Conventions Used in This Book

To make this book easy for you to navigate, we’ve set up a few conventions:

- Italian terms are set in **boldface** to make them stand out.
- Pronunciations are set in normal type with stressed syllables in *italics*. English translations are also set in italics.
Verb conjugations (lists that show you the forms of a verb) are given in tables in this order of six persons: “I,” “you” (singular, informal), “he/she/it/you” (formal), “we,” “you” (plural/informal), and “they/you” (plural, formal) form. Pronunciations follow in the second column. Following is an example using parlare (pahr-lah-reh) (to speak). The translations in the third column have all three forms, but for the sake of space, I only give you the first:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conjugation</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>io parlo</td>
<td>ee-oh pahr-loh</td>
<td>I speak, I do speak, I am speaking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu parli</td>
<td>tooh pahr-lee</td>
<td>You (informal) speak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lei/lui/lei parla</td>
<td>ley/looh-ee/lehy pahr-lah</td>
<td>She/he/you (formal) speak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noi parliamo</td>
<td>noi pahr-lee-ah-moh</td>
<td>We speak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voi parlate</td>
<td>voi parl-ah-teh</td>
<td>You (plural informal) speak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loro parlano</td>
<td>loh-oh pahr-lah-noh</td>
<td>They/you (plural formal) speak</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Language learning is a peculiar beast, so this book includes a few elements that other For Dummies books do not. Following are the new elements you’ll find:

**Talkin’ the Talk dialogues:** The best way to learn a language is to see and hear how it’s used in conversation, so we include dialogues throughout the book under the heading “Talkin’ the Talk.” Listen to and repeat these dialogues as often as you like. In both the CD and the text, they will help you approximate authentic pronunciation.

**Words to Know blackboards:** Identifying key words and phrases is also important in language learning, so we collect the important words in a chapter (or section within a chapter) in a chalkboard, with the heading “Words to Know.”

**Fun & Games activities:** You can use the Fun & Games activities to reinforce some chapter concepts you’ve learned. These word games are fun ways to gauge your progress.

Also note that because each language has its own ways of expressing ideas, the English translations that we provide for the Italian terms may not be exactly literal. We want you to know the gist of what’s being said. For example, the phrase *Mi dica* (mee dee-kah) can be translated literally as the formal imperative “Tell me,” but the phrase really means “(How) Can I help you?”
Foolish Assumptions

To write this book, we had to make some assumptions about who you are and what you want from a book called *Italian For Dummies*. These are the assumptions we made:

- You know no Italian — or if you took it back in school, you don’t remember much.
- You’re not looking for a book that will make you fluent in Italian; you just want to know some words, phrases, and sentence constructions so that you can communicate basic information in Italian.
- You don’t want to have to memorize long lists of vocabulary words or a bunch of boring grammar rules.
- You want to have fun and learn a little bit of Italian at the same time.

If these statements apply to you, you’ve found the right book!

How This Book Is Organized

This book is divided by topic into parts, and then into chapters. The following sections tell you what types of information you can find in each part.

Part I: Getting Started

This part lets you get your feet wet by giving you some Italian basics: how to pronounce your ABCs, numbers, words, and so on. We even boost your confidence by reintroducing you to some Italian words that you probably already know. Finally, we outline the basics of Italian grammar that you may need to know when you work through later chapters in the book.

Part II: Italian in Action

In this part, you begin learning and using Italian. Instead of focusing on grammar points as many language textbooks do, this part focuses on everyday situations, such as shopping, dining, going out, asking for directions, and being home.
Part III: Italian on the Go

This part gives you the tools you need to take your Italian on the road, whether it’s planning a trip or excursion, navigating public transportation, finding a room, or handling an emergency.

Part IV: The Part of Tens

If you’re looking for small, easily digestible pieces of information about Italian, this part is for you. Here, you can find ten ways to learn Italian quickly, ten useful Italian expressions to know, ten things never to say in Italian, and more.

Part V: Appendixes

This part of the book includes important information that you can use for reference. We include verb tables, which show you how to conjugate regular and irregular verbs. We also provide a listing of the tracks that appear on the audio CD that comes with this book so that you can find out where in the book those dialogues are and follow along. We give you a mini-dictionary in both Italian-to-English and English-to-Italian formats. If you encounter an Italian word that you don’t understand, or you need to say something in Italian, you can look it up here. You can also find the answers to the Fun and Games sections here.

Icons Used in This Book

You may be looking for particular information while reading this book. To make certain types of information easier for you to find, we’ve placed the following icons in the left-hand margins throughout the book:

This icon highlights tips that can make learning Italian easier.

To ensure that you don’t forget important information, this icon serves as a reminder, like a string tied around your finger.

Languages are full of quirks that may trip you up if you’re not prepared for them. This icon points to discussions of these weird grammar rules.
If you’re looking for information and advice about culture and travel, look for these icons.

The audio CD that comes with this book gives you the opportunity to listen to real Italian speakers so that you can get a better understanding of what Italian sounds like. This icon marks the Talkin’ the Talk dialogues that you can find on the CD. This is a great way to practice your own speaking.

Where to Go from Here

Learning a language is all about jumping in and giving it a try (no matter how bad your pronunciation is at first). So make the leap! Start at the beginning, pick a chapter that interests you, or pop the CD into your stereo or computer and listen to a few dialogues. Skip over the parts that distract you and take you away from Italian (such as the pronunciation spellings and translations after you’ve been through them once): The more you think in Italian, the more natural it will come to you. Before long, you’ll be able to respond, “Sì!” when people ask, “Parla italiano?”
Part I

Getting Started

The 5th Wave

By Rich Tennant

“...I insisted they learn some Italian. I couldn’t stand the idea of standing in front of the Trevi Fountain and hearing, ‘gosh’, ‘wow’, and ‘far out.’”
Ciao! See? You already understand some Italian, although you may think we’re saying good-bye before we even say hello. The truth is that ciao mean both “hello” and “goodbye.”

These first four chapters introduce you to the basics of the Italian language: Chapter 1 gets you going with pronunciation, Chapter 2 helps you with basic Italian grammar. You learn how to say “hello” and “goodbye” as well as how to introduce yourself and others in Chapter 3. And you learn how to tell time, put dates in your calendar, and ask for phone numbers in Chapter 4. So Andiamo! (ah-de-ah-moh) (Let’s go!)
Chapter 1
Saying It Like It Is

In This Chapter
▶ Taking note of the little Italian you know
▶ Looking at popular expressions and cognates
▶ Learning basic Italian pronunciation
▶ Using gestures

You probably know that Italian is a Romance language, which means that Italian, just like Spanish, French, Portuguese, and some other languages, is a “child” of Latin. There was a time when Latin was the official language in a large part of Europe because the Romans ruled so much of the area. Before the Romans came, people spoke their own languages, and the mixture of these original tongues with Latin produced many of the languages and dialects still in use today.

If you know one of these Romance languages you can often understand bits of another one of them. But just as members of the same family can look very similar but have totally different personalities, so it is with these languages. People in different areas speak in very different ways due to historical or social reasons, and even though Italian is the official language, Italy has a rich variety of dialects. Some dialects are so far from Italian that people from different regions cannot understand each other.

Despite the number of different accents and dialects, you will be happy to discover that everybody understands the Italian you speak and you understand theirs. (Italians don’t usually speak in their dialect with people outside their region.)

You Already Know Some Italian!

Although Italians are very proud of their language, they have allowed some English words to enter it. They talk, for example, about gadgets, jogging, feeling and shock; they often use the word okay; and since computers have entered their lives, they say “cliccare sul mouse” (kleek-kah-reh soohl mouse)
Part I: Getting Started

(to click the mouse). Finally, there’s **lo zapping** (loh zap-ping), which means switching TV channels with the remote. These are only a few of the flood of English words that have entered the Italian language.

In the same way, many Italian words are known in English-speaking countries. Can you think of some?

How about . . .

✓ **pizza** *(peet-tsah)*
✓ **pasta** *(pahs-tah)*
✓ **spaghetti** *(spah-geht-tee)*
✓ **tortellini** *(tohr-tehl-lee-nee)*
✓ **mozzarella** *(moht-tsah-rehl-lah)*
✓ **espresso** *(ehs-prehs-soh)*
✓ **cappuccino** *(kahp-pooh-chee-noh)*
✓ **panino** *(pah-nee-noh)*: For one sandwich: for two or more, the word is **panini** *(pah-nee-nee)*
✓ **biscotti** *(bees-koht-tee)* (cookies): One cookie is a **biscotto** *(bees-koht-toh)*
✓ **tiramisù** *(tee-rah-mee-sooh)*

Incidentally, did you know that **tiramisù** literally means “pull me up”? This refers to the fact that this sweet is made with strong Italian espresso.

You may have heard words from areas other than the kitchen, such as the following:

✓ **amore** *(ah-moh-reh)*: This is the word “love” that so many Italian songs tell about.
✓ **avanti** *(ah-vahn-tee)*: You use this word as “come in!” and also “come on!” or “get a move on!”
✓ **bambino** *(bahm-bee-noh)*: This is a male child. The female equivalent is **bambina** *(bahm-bee-nah)*.
✓ **bravo**! *(brah-vo)*: You can properly say this word only to one man. To a woman, you must say “**brava**!” *(brah-vah)*, and to a group of people, you say “**bravi**!” *(brah-vee)* unless the group is composed only of women, in which case you say “**brave**!” *(brah-veh)*.
✓ **ciao**! *(chou)*: **Ciao** means “hello” and “goodbye.”
✓ **scusi** (skooh-zee): This word stands for “excuse me” and “sorry” and is addressed to persons you don’t know or to whom you speak formally. You say “**scusa**” (scooh-zah) to people you know and to children.

You’ve heard at least some of these words, haven’t you? This is just a little taste of all the various words and expressions you’ll get to know in this book.

**Cognates**

In addition to the words that have crept into the language directly, Italian and English have many cognates. A cognate is a word in one language that has the same origin as a word in another one and may sound similar. You can get an immediate picture of what cognates are from the following examples:

✓ **aeroporto** (ah-eh-roh-pohr-toh) (*airport*)
✓ **attenzione** (aht-tehn-tsyoh-neh) (*attention*)
✓ **comunicazione** (koh-mooh-nee-kah-tyooh-neh) (*communication*)
✓ **importante** (eem-pohr-tahn-teh) (*important*)
✓ **incredibile** (een-kreh-dee-bee-leh) (*incredible*)

You understand much more Italian than you think you do. Italian and English are full of cognates. To demonstrate, read this little story with some Italian words and see how easy it is for you to understand.

It seems **impossibile** (eem-pohs-see-bee-leh) to him that he is now at the **aeroporto** (ah-eh-roh-pohr-toh) in Rome. He always wanted to come to this **città** (cheet-tah). When he goes out on the street, he first calls a **taxi** (tah-ksee). He opens his bag to see if he has the **medicina** (meh-dee-chee-nah) that the **dottore** (doht-toh-reh) gave him. Going through this **terribile traffico** (tehr-ree-bee-leh trahf-fee-koh), he passes a **cattedrale** (kaht-teh-drah-leh), some **sculture** (skoohl-tooh-reh), and many **palazzi** (pah-laht-tye-see). He knows that this is going to be a **fantastico** (fahn-tahs-tee-koh) journey.

**Popular expressions**

Every language has expressions that you use so often that they almost become routine. For example, when you give something to somebody and he or she says, “Thank you,” you automatically reply, “You’re welcome!” This
type of popular expression is an inseparable part of every language. When you know these expressions and how to use them, you’re on the way to really speaking Italian.

The following are some of the most common popular expressions in Italian:

✓ Accidenti! (ahch-chee-dehn-tee) (Wow! / Darn it!)
✓ Andiamo! (ahn-dyah-moh) (Let’s go!)
✓ Che c’è? (keh cheh) (What’s up?)
✓ D’accordo? D’accordo! (dahk-kohr-doh) (Agreed? Agreed!)
✓ E chi se ne importa? (eh kee seh neh eem-pohr-tah) (Who cares?)
✓ È lo stesso. (eh loh stehs-soh) (It’s all the same; It doesn’t matter.)
✓ Fantastico! (fahn-tahs-tee-koh) (Fantastic!)
✓ Non fa niente. (nohn fah nee-ehn-teh) (Don’t worry about it. It doesn’t matter.) You say “Non fa niente” when someone apologizes to you for something.
✓ Non c’è di che. (nohn cheh dee keh) (You’re welcome.)
✓ Permesso? (pehr-mehs-soh) (May I pass / come in?) Italians use this expression every time they cross a threshold entering a house or when passing through a crowd.
✓ Stupendo! (stooh-pehn-doh) (Wonderful!; Fabulous!)
✓ Va bene! (vah beh-neh) (Okay!)

**Mouthing Off: Basic Pronunciation**

Italian provides many opportunities for your tongue to do acrobatics. This is really fun, because the language offers you some new sounds. In this section, I give you some basic pronunciation hints that are important both for surfing through this book and for good articulation when you speak Italian. First, I’d like to make a deal with you. Next to the Italian words throughout this book you find the pronunciation in parentheses. In the following sections, I give you some helpful hints about how to read these pronunciations — that is, how to pronounce the Italian words. The deal is that you and I have to agree on which letters refer to which sounds. You have to follow this code all through this book.

In the pronunciations, I separate the syllables with a hyphen, like this: casa (kah-zah) (house). Furthermore, I italicize the stressed syllable, which means that you put the stress of the word on the italicized syllable. (See the section “Stressing Words Properly,” later in this chapter, for more information about
Chapter 1: Saying It Like It Is

stresses.) If you learn the correct pronunciation in this chapter, starting with the alphabet, you may even forego the pronunciation spelling provided, and read it like a real Italian.

The Alphabet

What better way is there to start speaking a language than to familiarize yourself with its alphabet! Table 1-1 shows you all the letters as well as how each sounds. It’s essential to learn how to pronounce the Italian alphabet so that you’ll be able to pronounce all of the new words you will be learning. Listen to and repeat the CD as many times as you need to in order to get down the right sounds. In the long run, this will help you be understood when you communicate in Italian. Note that there are only 21 letters in the Italian alphabet: missing are j, k, w, x, and y (which have crept into some Italian words now used in Italy).

| Table 1-1 The Italian Alphabet (ahl-fah-beh-toh) |
|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| **Letter** | **Pronunciation** | **Letter** | **Pronunciation** | **Letter** | **Pronunciation** |
| a | ah | b | bee | c | chee | d | dee |
| e | eh | f | ehf-feh | g | jee | h | ahk-kah |
| i | ee | j | | k | | ehl-leh |
| m | ehm-meh | n | ehn-neh | o | oh | p | pee |
| q | kooh | r | ehr-reh | s | ehs-seh | t | tee |
| u | ooh | v | vooh |
| w | | x | | y | | z | dzeh-tah |

Vowels

I’ll start with the tough ones: vowels. The sounds are not that new, but the connection between the written letter and the actual pronunciation is not quite the same as it is in English.
Italian has five written vowels: a, e, i, o, and u. The following sections tell you how to pronounce each of them.

**The vowel “a”**

In Italian, the letter a has just one pronunciation. Think of the sound of the a in the English word father. The Italian a sounds just like that.

To prevent you from falling back to the other a sounds found in English, I transcribe the Italian a as (ah), as shown earlier in *casa* (*kah-sah*) (*house*).

Here are some other examples:

- ✓ *albero* (*ahl-beh-roh*) (*tree*)
- ✓ *marmellata* (*mahr-mehl-laht*) (*jam*)
- ✓ *sale* (*sah-lev*) (*salt*)

**The vowel “e”**

Try to think of the sound in the French word gourmet (you don’t pronounce the t). This sound comes very close to the Italian e. In this book, I transcribe the e sound as (eh). For example:

- ✓ *sole* (*soh-leh*) (*sun*)
- ✓ *peso* (*peh-zoh*) (*weight*)
- ✓ *bere* (*beh-reh*) (*to drink*)

**The vowel “i”**

The Italian i is simply pronounced (ee), as in the English word see. Here are some examples:

- ✓ *cinema* (*chee-neh-mah*) (*cinema*)
- ✓ *bimbo* (*beem-boh*) (*little boy*)
- ✓ *vita* (*vee-tah*) (*life*)

**The vowel “o”**

The Italian o is pronounced as in the English (from the Italian) piano. I therefore list the pronunciation as (oh). Try it out on the following words:

- ✓ *domani* (*doh-mah-neh*) (*tomorrow*)
- ✓ *piccolo* (*peek-koh-loh*) (*little; small*)
- ✓ *dolce* (*dohl-cheh*) (*sweet*)
The vowel “u”
The Italian u sounds always like the English (ooh), as in zoo. Therefore, I use (ooh) to transcribe the Italian u. Here are some sample words:

✓ tu (tooh) (you)
✓ luna (looh-nah) (moon)
✓ frutta (frooht-tah) (fruit)

Pronunciation peculiarities
You will come across some sounds and spellings that are not so familiar, for example:

✓ oi as in oink: noi (noi) (we)
✓ ah as in ice: dai (dahy) (you give)
✓ ee as in feet: diva (dee-vah) (diva)
✓ ey as in aid: lei (ley) (she)
✓ ou as in out: auto (ou-toh) (car)

Consonants
Italian has the same consonants that English does. You pronounce most of them the same way in Italian as you pronounce them in English, but others have noteworthy differences. I start with the easy ones and look at those that are pronounced identically:

✓ b: As in bene (beh-neh) (well)
✓ d: As in dare (dah-reh) (to give)
✓ f: As in fare (fah-reh) (to make)
✓ l: As in ladro (lah-droh) (thief)
✓ m: As in madre (mah-dreh) (mother)
✓ n: As in no (noh) (no)
✓ p: As in padre (pah-dreh) (father)
✓ t: As in treno (treh-noh) (train) Make certain to exaggerate the t when it’s doubled, like in the word spaghetti (spah-geht-tee) as in the last name Getty.
✓ v: As in vino (vee-noh) (wine)
Finally there are some consonants that do not really exist in Italian except in some foreign words that have entered the language.

✓ **j:** Exists mostly in foreign words such as jogging, junior, and jeans, and sounds like the *y* in *yam.*

✓ **k:** The same as *j*; you find it in words like *okay,* *ketchup,* and *killer.*

✓ **w:** As with *j* and *k,* you find it in some foreign words (for the most part English words), like *whisky,* *windsurf,* and *wafer.*

✓ **x:** As with *j,* *k,* and *w,* *x* doesn’t really exist in Italian, with the difference that “*x* words” derive mostly from Greek. Examples include *xenofobia* (kseh-noh-foh-bee-ah) (*xenophobia*) and *xilofono* (ksee-loh-foh-noh) (*xylophone*).

✓ **y:** The letter *y* normally appears only in foreign words, like *yogurt,* *hobby,* and *yacht.*

Now, on to the consonants that are pronounced differently than they are in English.

**The consonant “c”**

The Italian *c* has two sounds, depending on which letter follows it:

✓ **Hard c:** When *c* is followed by *a,* *o,* *u,* or any consonant, you pronounce it as in the English word *cat.* I transcribe this pronunciation as *(k).* Examples include *casa* (kah-sah) (*house*), *colpa* (kohl-pah) (*guilt*), and *cuore* (kwoh-reh) (*heart*).

To obtain the “*k*” sound before *e* and *i,* you must put an *h* between the *c* and the *e* or *i.* Examples include *che* (keh) (*what*), *chiesa* (kyeh-zah) (*church*), and *chiave* (kyah-veh) (*key*).

✓ **Soft c:** When *c* is followed by *e* or *i,* you pronounce it as you do the first and last sound in the English word church; therefore, I give you the pronunciation *(ch).* Examples include *cena* (cheh-nah) (*dinner*), *cibo* (chee-boh) (*food*), and *certo* (chehr-toh) (*certainly*).

To obtain the “*ch*” sound before *a,* *o,* or *u,* you have to insert an *i.* This *i,* however, serves only to create the “*ch*” sound; you do not pronounce it. Examples include *ciao* (chou) (*hello; goodbye*), *cioccolata* (chok-koh-lah-tah) (*chocolate*), and *ciuccio* (chooh-choh) (*baby’s pacifier*).
Follow a scheme like this:

C + i, e = “ch”

C+ h, o, u, a, cons = “k”

The consonant “g”
The Italian g behaves the same as the c. Therefore, I present it the same way:

- **Hard g**: When g is followed by a, o, u, or any consonant, you pronounce it as you pronounce the g in the English word good. I transcribe this pronunciation as (g). Examples include gamba (gahm-bah) (leg), gomma (gohm-mah) (rubber), and guerrra (gweh-rah) (war).

  To obtain the “g” sound before e or i, you must put an h between the letter g and the e or i. Examples include spaghetti (spah-geht-tee) (spaghetti), ghiaccio (gyahch-choh) (ice), and ghirlanda (geer-lahn-dah) (wreath).

- **Soft g**: When g is followed by e or i, you pronounce it as you do the first sound in the English word job; therefore, I write the pronunciation as (j). Examples include gentile (jehn-tee-leh) (kind), giorno (johr-noh) (day), and gelosia (jeh-loh-zee-ah) (jealousy).

  To obtain the “j” sound before a, o, or u, you have to insert an i. The i serves only to indicate the proper sound; you do not pronounce it. Examples include giacca (jahk-kah) (jacket), gioco (joh-koh) (game), and giudice (jooh-dee-cheh) (judge). Here’s another little pattern to help you remember these pronunciations:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>gamba</th>
<th>gomma</th>
<th>guerrra</th>
<th>ghiaccio</th>
<th>spaghetti</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gentile</td>
<td>giorno</td>
<td>giacca</td>
<td>gioco</td>
<td>giudice</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The consonant “h”
The consonant h has only one function: namely, to change the sound of c and g before the vowels e and i, as described earlier. It also appears in foreign expressions such as hostess, hit parade, and hobby, and in some forms of the verb avere (ah-veh-reh) (to have), but it’s always silent.

The consonant “q”
Q exists only in connection with u followed by another vowel; that is, you always find qu. The q is pronounced like (k), and qu is, therefore, pronounced (kw). Examples include quattro (kwaht-troh) (four), questo (kwehs-toh) (this), and quadro (kwah-droh) (picture).
The consonant “r”
The Italian r is not pronounced with the tongue in the back, as it is in English, but trilled at the alveolar ridge, which is the front part of your palate, right behind your front teeth. You have to practice it. In the beginning, you may not find this pronunciation manageable, but practice makes perfect!

Here are some words to help you practice:

✓ radio (rah-dee-oh) (radio)
✓ per favore (pehr fah-vo-reh) (please)
✓ prego (preh-goh) (you’re welcome)

The consonant “s”
S is sometimes pronounced as the English s, as in so. In this case, I give you the pronunciation (s). In other cases, it’s pronounced like the English z, as in zero; in these cases, I list (z) as the pronunciation. Examples include pasta (pahs-tah) (pasta), solo (soh-loh) (only), chiesa (kyeh-zah) (church), and gelosia (jeh-loh-zee-ah) (jealousy).

The consonant “z”
A single z is pronounced (dz) — the sound is very similar to the English z in zero, with a d added at the beginning, as in zero (dzehr-oh) (zero). Just try it. When the z is doubled, you pronounce it more sharply, like (ts), as in tazza (taht-tsah) (cup; mug). Furthermore, when z is followed by the letter i, it also has a ts sound, like in the word nazione (nah-tysoh-neh) (nation).

Double consonants
When you encounter double consonants in Italian, you have to pronounce each instance of the consonant or lengthen the sound. The difficult part is that there’s no pause between the consonants.

Doubling the consonant usually changes the meaning of the word. So, to make sure that your Italian is understandable, emphasize doubled consonants well. To make you pronounce words with double consonants correctly, I write the first consonant at the end of one syllable and the other one at the beginning of the following one, as in these examples:

✓ nono (noh-noh) (ninth)
✓ nonno (nohn-noh) (grandfather)
✓ capello (kah-pehl-loh) (hair)
✓ cappello (kahp-pehl-loh) (hat)
Chapter 1: Saying It Like It Is

Try it once again:

✓ **bello** *(behl-loh) (beautiful)*
✓ **caffè** *(kahf-feh) (coffee)*
✓ **occhio** *(ohk-kyoh) (eye)*
✓ **spiaggia** *(spyah-jah) (beach)*

**Consonant clusters**

Certain consonant clusters have special sounds in Italian. Here they are:

✓ **gn** is pronounced as the English “ny.” The sound is actually the same as in a Spanish word I’m sure you know: **señorita** *(seh-nyoh-ree-tah) (miss)*, or better yet, an Italian word like **gnocchi** *(nyohk-kee).*

✓ **gl** is pronounced in the back of the throat like the English word million in words like **gli** *(lyee) (the)* and **famiglia** *(fah-mee-lyah) (family).* You should not say anything like the English **g.**

✓ **sc** follows the same rules of the soft and hard “c” from the previous section. It is pronounced as in the English scooter when it comes before **a, o, u, or h** — that is, as in **scala** *(skah-lah) (scale)*, **sconto** *(skohn-toh) (discount)*, and **scuola** *(scwoh-lah) (school).* Before **e** and **i,** it is pronounced like the **sh** in **cash.** Examples of this pronunciation include **scena** *(sheh-nah) (scene), scesa** *(sheh-sah) (descent),** and **scimmia** *(sheem-mee-ah) (monkey).*

**Stressing Words Properly**

Stress is the audible accent that you put on a syllable as you speak it. One syllable always gets more stress than all the others. (A reminder: In this book I *italicize* the syllable to stress.)

Some words give you a hint as to where to stress them: They have an accent grave (’’) or acute (’) above one of their letters. Here are some examples:

✓ **caffè** *(kahf-feh) (coffee)*
✓ **città** *(cheet-tah) (city)*
✓ **lunedì** *(looh-neh-dee) (Monday)*
✓ **perché** *(pehr-keh) (why)*
✓ **però** *(peh-roh) (but)*
Only vowels can have accents, and in Italian all vowels at the end of a word can have this accent ('). If there’s no accent in the word, you’re unfortunately left on your own. A rough tip is that Italian tends to have the stress on the penultimate (the next-to-last) syllable. But there are too many rules and exceptions to list them all here!

The accent tells you where to stress the word.

Fortunately, only a few words have the same spelling and only an accent to distinguish them. But it can be a very important distinction, as in the following example:

e (eh) and è (eh) (he/she/it is) are distinguished only by the accent on the vowel.

**Using Gestures**

Italians love to emphasize their words with gestures. For example, there are gestures to express the following feelings: *Ho fame* (oh fah-meh) (*I’m hungry*), *Me ne vado* (meh neh vah-doh) (*I’m leaving*), and *E chi se ne importa?* (eh kee seh neh eem-pohr-tah) (*Who cares?*). Needless to say, a flood of rude gestures exist as well.

Unfortunately, describing the gestures in words is too difficult, because Italian body language is a science and is hard for non-Italians to copy. You also have to make the right facial expressions when performing these gestures. These gestures generally come naturally and spontaneously, and you’re sure to see some as you observe Italian life. Still, I won’t let you go off without some of the practical, useful gestures that you might make when with Italians. Greeting and saying goodbye, for example, are accompanied by a common gesture — hugging and kissing. Italians seek direct contact when greeting one another. When you’re not very familiar with a person, you shake hands. But when you know a person well or you have an immediate good feeling, you kiss cheek to cheek; that is, you don’t really touch with your lips, but only with your cheek.
Chapter 2

Jumping Into the Basics of Italian

In This Chapter
- Introducing simple sentence construction
- Dealing with masculine and feminine words
- Discovering the use of pronouns
- Using the right “you”
- Exploring regular and irregular verbs
- Uncovering the present tense

This chapter takes a look at some basic Italian grammar and leads you through the building blocks of sentences. Consider these blocks as challenging scaffolding that helps you to construct your sentences, piece by piece. In this chapter, I walk you through gender and number, as well as how to conjugate enough verbs to get you immediately on the road to communicating in Italian.

Setting Up Simple Sentences

Becoming a fluent speaker of a foreign language takes a lot of work. Simply communicating or making yourself understood in another language is much easier. Even if you only know a few words, you can usually communicate successfully in common situations such as at a restaurant or a hotel.

Forming simple sentences is, well, simple. The basic sentence structure of Italian is subject-verb-object — the same as in English. Nouns in Italian are gender specific. In the following examples, you can see how this structure works:

- Carla parla inglese. (kahr-lah pahr-lah een-gleh-zeh) (Carla speaks English.)
- Pietro ha una macchina. (pee-eh-troh ah ooh-nah mahk-kee-nah) (Pietro has a car.)
- L’Italia è un bel paese. (lee-tahl-ee-ah eh oohn behl pah-eh-zeh) (Italy is a beautiful country.)
Coping with Gendered Words (Articles, Nouns, and Adjectives)

Gender drives the construction of definite and indefinite articles, nouns, and adjectives. It is essential to learn the gender of nouns as soon as you encounter them, because that will determine what article and adjective you’re going to use with them — these are all interconnected. Luckily most of this grammar follows some very cool schemata which you can plug in anywhere once you have it down. The more you commit these to memory, the easier it will be to effectively create sentences.

**Nouns and gender**

All nouns have a specific gender (masculine and feminine) and number (singular and plural). You need to know what those are in order to create (and understand) sentences, have verb agreement, and add on articles and adjectives. The good news is that nouns follow a predictable pattern. The following shows you how to form the singular and plural of masculine and feminine nouns. See if you can infer the rules just by looking at the chart.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gender</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Feminine</td>
<td>a (ah)</td>
<td>e (eh)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td>o (oh)</td>
<td>i (ee)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Masculine/feminine</td>
<td>e (eh)</td>
<td>i (ee)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

So the rules are:

- ✓ Feminine nouns usually end in **a** in the singular and **e** in the plural.
- ✓ Masculine nouns usually end in **o** in the singular and **i** in the plural.
- ✓ There are masculine and feminine nouns that end in **e** in the singular end in **i** in the plural. You need to memorize their gender the first time you encounter them.

Here’s a tip. Anything ending in **-ione** (like **nazione** [nahts-yoh-neh]) is feminine.
That was pretty painless, wasn’t it? Are you ready for some exceptions in the way of invariable nouns? These nouns only have one form: that is, they are the same in both the singular and plural forms. See if you can guess the rules for these as you go through the following bullets.

- **un caffè** (m) (oohn kahf-feh)  
  one coffee,  
  **due caffè** (dooh-eh kahf-feh)  
  two coffees  

- **un bar** (m) (oohn bahr)  
  one bar,  
  **due bar** (dooh-eh bahr)  
  two bars  

- **una bicicletta** (f) (ooh-nah bee-chee)  
  one bike,  
  **due biciclette** (dooh-eh bee-chee)  
  two bikes  

- **uno zoo** (m) (ooh-noh zoh)  
  one zoo,  
  **due zooti** (dooh-eh zoh)  
  two zoos

The rules for the three main types of invariable nouns follow:

1. Nouns that end in an accented final vowel, such as **caffè** and **città** (cheet-tah) (city), are invariable.
2. Nouns that end in a consonant (these are rare!), such as **bar** and **film** (feelm) (film, movie) are invariable.
3. Nouns that are abbreviations, such as **zoo**, **bici**, **radio** (rah-dee-oh) and **cinema** (chee-neh-mah) (cinema, movie-house) are invariable.

**The indefinite articles**

Did you happen to notice the indefinite articles for “one” or “a/an” that precede all of the previously mentioned nouns? They are always singular. Also, Italian indefinite articles agree in gender. And the one you choose also has to take into account the first letter of the noun that it precedes. Table 2-1 shows you the indefinite articles plus some examples.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feminine Femminili (fehm-meen-ee-lee)</th>
<th>Masculine Maschili (mahs-kee-lee)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>una ragazza</strong> (ooh-nah rah-gahts-tsaht) (a girl)</td>
<td><strong>un ragazzo</strong> (oohn rah-gahts-tsoh) (a boy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>una amica</strong> (oohn-ah mee-kah) (a girl) friend</td>
<td><strong>un amico</strong> (oohn ah-mee-koh) (a boy) friend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>una zia</strong> (ooh-nah dzee-ah) (an aunt)</td>
<td><strong>uno zio</strong> (ooh-noh dzee-oh) (an uncle)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>una studentessa</strong> (ooh-nah stoo-eh-teh-eh-sah) (a female) student</td>
<td><strong>uno studente</strong> (ooh-noh stoo-eh-teh) (a male) student</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Did you make a special note of the letters that the nouns begin with? So the rules for indefinite articles go something like this:

- **una** before all feminine nouns beginning with a consonant
- **un’** before all feminine nouns beginning with a vowel
- **un** before all masculine nouns beginning with vowels and consonants
- **uno** before all masculine nouns beginning with the **s impura** (s+ consonant), **z, gn, ps, st**: zio (dzee-oh) (**uncle**); gnomo (nyoh-moh) (**gnome**); psicologo (psee-kohl-oh-goh); **studente** (stoooh-dehn-teh) (**student**)

**Definite articles**

Of course, you don’t go around talking about singular things all the time. Italian is one of those languages that require a definite article before the noun in most cases. For example, if you want to say “Sicily is interesting,” you need to precede Sicily with an article, such as **La Sicilia è interessante** (lah see-chee-lee-ah eh een-tehr-ehs-sahn-teh). The same goes for the following noun: “Love is blind” (**L’amore è cieco**) (lah-moh-reh eh cheh-koh).

Table 2-2 shows a list of articles that you should try to commit to memory. Italian definite articles agree in number and gender with the nouns they precede. Just like with the indefinite articles, the letter that heads the noun also determines what article to use.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 2-2</th>
<th>Definite Articles (Articoli determinative)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>(ahr-tee-koh-lee deh-tehr-mee-nah-tee-vee)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Feminine</strong></td>
<td><strong>Masculine “the”</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
<td><strong>Plural</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l’ (lh)</td>
<td>lo (loh)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la (lah)</td>
<td>le (leh)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>il (il)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Here are some examples of definite articles. Can you identify a pattern?

- **la casa/le case** (lah kah-zah/leh kah-zeh) (**house, houses**)
- l’amica/le amiche (lah-mee-kah, leh ah-mee-keh) (**friend, friends**)
- **il libro/i libri** (il lee-broh, ee lee-bree) (**book, books**)
- **lo zio/gli zii**, (loh dzee-oh, lyee zee) (**uncle, uncles**) **lo studente, gli studenti** (loh stooh-dehn-teh, lyee stooh-dehn-tee) (**student, students**)


Here are two examples: Note how the article does not appear in the translation, but is necessary in Italian:

Gli amici vengono a cena (lyee ah-mee-chee vehn-goh-noh ah cheh-nah)  
(Friends are coming for dinner.)

Mi piacciono le lasagne! (mee pyahch-choh-noh leh lah-zah-nyeh)  
(I like lasagna.)

**Adjectives**

The gender feature of nouns extends to other grammatical categories, including pronouns and adjectives. First, I take a look at the adjectives.

An adjective is a word that describes a noun — whether a person, a thing, or whatever — with a quality or characteristic. (You can read more about these in Chapters 3, 8 and 16.) There are two types of adjectives in Italian: The first type has four endings, and the second type has two.

The first type matches in both number and gender with the noun it is modifying, and, therefore, ends in o, a, i, e, as follows with the adjective italiano (ee-tahl-ee-ah-noh) (Italian):

 ✓ il ragazzo italiano (il rah-gahts-tsoh ee-tah-lee-ah-noh) (the Italian boy)
 ✓ i ragazzi italiani (ee rah-gahts-tsee ee-tah-lee-ah-nee) (the Italian boys)
 ✓ la ragazza italiana (lah rah-gahts-tsah ee-tah-lee-ah-nah) (the Italian girl)
 ✓ le ragazze italiane (leh rah-gahts-tseh ee-tah-lee-ah-neh) (the Italian girls)

Other typical adjectives with the four endings include spagnolo (spahn-yoh-loh) and giallo (jahl-loh) (yellow).

The second type only agrees in number (and not gender), and ends in e in the singular and i in the plural. The adjective grande (grahn-deh) (big) is one of those adjectives. These adjectives are valid for both feminine and masculine nouns. In the plural of both genders, change the -e to an -i — for example, grandi (grahn-dee) (big). Other adjectives that only agree in number include francesce (frahn-cheh-zeh) (French) and verde (vehr-deh) (green).

 ✓ l’esame facile (leh-zah-meh fah-chieh-leh) (the easy exam)
 ✓ gli esami facili (lyee eh-zah-mee fah-chieh-leh) (the easy exams)
 ✓ la prova facile (lah proh-vah fah-chieh-leh) (the easy test)
 ✓ le prove facili (leh proh-veh fah-chieh-leh) (the easy tests)

In Italian, the position of the adjective is not as rigid as it is in English. In most cases, the adjective follows the noun. Nevertheless, there are some
adjectives which can stand before the noun, such as bello (behl-loh) (beautiful), buono (bwoh-noh) (good), and cattivo (kaht-tee-voh) (bad).

Words to Know

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>esame (m)</td>
<td>eh-zah-meh</td>
<td>exam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prova (f)</td>
<td>proh-vah</td>
<td>test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ragazzo/a (m/f)</td>
<td>rah-gats-tsoh</td>
<td>boy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>studente (m)</td>
<td>stooh-dehn-teh</td>
<td>student (male)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>studentessa (f)</td>
<td>stooh-dehn-tehs-sah</td>
<td>student (female)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>casa (f)</td>
<td>kah-zah</td>
<td>house</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>libro (m)</td>
<td>lee-broh</td>
<td>book</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amica (f/sing.)</td>
<td>ah-mee-kah</td>
<td>girl-friend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amiche (f/pl.)</td>
<td>ah-mee-keh</td>
<td>girl-friends</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amico (m/sing)</td>
<td>ah-mee-koh</td>
<td>friend (male)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amici (m/pl)</td>
<td>ah-mee-chee</td>
<td>male friends or mixed gender friends</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caffè (m)</td>
<td>kahf-feh</td>
<td>coffee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bici (f)</td>
<td>bee-chee</td>
<td>bike</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Talking about Pronouns

A pronoun replaces, as the word itself says, a noun. When you talk about Jim, for example, you can replace his name with he. You often use pronouns to avoid repetition.
**Personal pronouns**

Several types of personal pronouns exist. Presently, the most important ones for you are the subject pronouns, which refer to *I, you, he, she, it, we, or they.* Every verb form refers to one of these pronouns, as the following section points out. Table 2-3 lists the subject pronouns.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 2-3</th>
<th>Subject Pronouns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pronoun</strong></td>
<td><strong>Pronunciation</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>io</td>
<td>ee-oh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu</td>
<td>tooh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lui</td>
<td>looh-ee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lei</td>
<td>ley</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noi</td>
<td>noi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voi</td>
<td>voi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loro</td>
<td>loh-rah</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Italians often drop subject pronouns because the verb ending shows what the subject is. Use a personal pronoun only for contrast, for emphasis, or when the pronoun stands alone.

- **Contrast:** *Tu tifi per il Milan, ma io per la Juventus.* (tooh tee-fee pehr il mee-lahn mah ee-oh pehr lah yooh-vehn-toohs) *(You’re a fan of Milan, but I’m a fan of Juventus.)*
- **Emphasis:** *Vieni anche tu alla festa?* (vyeh-nee ahn-keh tooh ahl-lah fehs-tah) *(Are you coming to the party, too?)*
- **Isolated position:** *“Chi è?” “Sono io.”* (kee eh soh-noh ee-oh) *(“Who’s there?” “It's me.”)*

**Saying “you”: Formal and informal**

You probably already know that many foreign languages contain both formal and informal ways of addressing people. If you didn’t know before, now you do! In Italian, you need to respect this important characteristic. Use the informal pronoun *tu* (tooh) *(you)* with good friends, young people, children, and your family members. When, however, you talk to a person you don’t know well (a superior, shopkeeper, waiter, teacher, professor, and so on), you should address him or her formally — that is, with *lei* (ley) *(you).* When you become more familiar with someone, you may change from formal to informal. According to custom, the elder person initiates the use of *tu.*
Tu requires the verb form of the second person singular — for example, tu sei (tooh sey) (you are). Lei calls for lei è (ley eh) (you are [formal singular]).

The following examples show the forms of you:

- **Informal singular:** Ciao, come stai? (chou koh-meh stahy?) (Hi, how are you?)
- **Formal singular:** Buongiorno, come sta? (bwohn-johr-noh koh-meh stah) (Good morning, how are you?)
- **Informal plural:** Ciao, come state? (chou koh-meh stah-teh) (Hi, how are you? (Speaking here to a group of people.)

**Verbs**

There seems to be an infinite number of verbs in Italian. These truly are the glue to bind the different parts of speech together. Some people try to get by using only infinitives (the verbs before you conjugate them), but I want you to make sense and feel confident when speaking, so learn the regular and irregular verbs patterns in this chapter (and also Appendix A), and you’ll be on your way to talking in the present, past, and future tenses. Getting a good handle on them gives you a solid basis from which to build your sentences, communicate, and be understood!

**Introducing regular and irregular verbs**

What’s the difference between regular and irregular verbs? Regular verbs follow a certain pattern in their conjugation: They behave the same way as other verbs in the same category. Therefore, you can predict a regular verb’s form in any part of any tense. On the other hand, you cannot predict irregular verbs in this way — they behave a bit like individualists.

**Regular verbs**

You can divide Italian verbs into three categories, according to their ending in the infinitive form. They are, -are, as in parlare (pahr-lah-reh) (to speak); -ere, as in vivere (vee-veh-reh) (to live); and -ire, as in partire (pahr-tee-reh) (to leave). Verbs in these categories can be regular as well as irregular. Notice the subject pronouns that go with the verbs: We place them here to remind you which verb form you need.

These translate in the present tense as, for example: I speak, I do speak, I am speaking, I’m going to speak (if it’s not too much in the future) — it depends
on the context. I translate the first person of all of the verbs that follow: the other persons follow suit.

The following shows you the conjugation of three regular verbs:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conjugation</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>parlare</td>
<td>pahr-lah-reh</td>
<td>to speak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>io parlo</td>
<td>ee-oh pahr-loh</td>
<td>I speak, I do speak, I'm speaking, I'm going to speak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu parli</td>
<td>tooh pahr-lee</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lui/lei parla</td>
<td>looh-ee/ley pahr-lah</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noi parliamo</td>
<td>noi pahr-lyah-moh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voi parlate</td>
<td>voi pahr-lah-teh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loro parlan</td>
<td>loh-roh pahr-lah-noh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vivere</td>
<td>vee-veh-reh</td>
<td>to live</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>io vivo</td>
<td>ee-oh vee-voh</td>
<td>I live, I do live, I'm living</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu vivi</td>
<td>tooh vee-vee</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lui/lei vive</td>
<td>looh-ee/ley vee-veh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noi viviamo</td>
<td>noi vee-vyah-moh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voi vivete</td>
<td>vee-veh-teh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loro vivono</td>
<td>loh-roh vee-voh-noh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>partire</td>
<td>pahr-tee-reh</td>
<td>to leave, to depart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>io parto</td>
<td>ee-oh pahr-toh</td>
<td>I leave, I do leave, I am leaving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu parti</td>
<td>tooh pahr-tee</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lui/lei parte</td>
<td>looh-ee/ley pahr-teh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noi partiamo</td>
<td>noi pahr-tyah-moh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voi partite</td>
<td>vee-veh-teh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loro partono</td>
<td>loh-roh pahr-toh-noh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can apply these patterns to every regular verb, such as mangiare (mahn-jah-reh) (to eat), giocare (joh-kah-reh) (to play), ripetere (ree-peh-teh-reh) (to repeat), prendere (prehn-deh-reh) (to have or take as in a restaurant) and aprire (ah-preh-reh) (to open). Some regular verbs behave a bit differently, but this doesn’t render them irregular. In some cases — for example, some -ire verbs — you insert the letters -isc- between the root and the ending (in all persons except the noi and voi), as in this example of capire (kah-pee-reh) (to understand):
### Conjugation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Conjugation</strong></th>
<th><strong>Pronunciation</strong></th>
<th><strong>Translation</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>io capisco</td>
<td>ee-oh kah-pees-koh</td>
<td><em>I understand,</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>I do understand,</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>I am understanding</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>tu capisci</strong></td>
<td>tooh kah-pee-shee</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>lui/lei capisce</strong></td>
<td>looh-ee/ley kah-pee-sheh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>noi capiamo</strong></td>
<td>noi kah-pyah-moh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>voi capite</strong></td>
<td>voi kah-pee-teh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>loro capiscono</strong></td>
<td>loh-roh kah-pees-koh-noh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Other verbs that follow this pattern are **finire** (fee-nee-reh) (*to finish, end*) and **preferire** (preh-feh-ree-reh) (*to prefer*). For more verbs that follow this **isc** pattern, check out Appendix A, and for lots more on Italian verbs in general, pick up a copy of my *Italian Verbs For Dummies* (John Wiley & Sons, Inc.).

### Irregular verbs

Two important verbs, which you often use as auxiliary verbs, are irregular — **avere** (ah-veh-reh) (*to have*) and **essere** (ehs-seh-reh) (*to be*).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Conjugation</strong></th>
<th><strong>Pronunciation</strong></th>
<th><strong>Translation</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>avere</td>
<td>ah-veh-reh</td>
<td><em>to have</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>io ho</td>
<td>ee-oh oh</td>
<td><em>I have, I do have</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu hai</td>
<td>tooh ahy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lui/lei ha</td>
<td>looh-ee/ley ah</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noi abbiamo</td>
<td>noi ahb-byah-moh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voi avete</td>
<td>voi ah-veh-teh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loro hanno</td>
<td>loh-roh ahn-noh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>essere</td>
<td>ehs-seh-reh</td>
<td><em>to be</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>io sono</td>
<td>ee-oh soh-noh</td>
<td><em>I am</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu sei</td>
<td>tooh sey</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lui/lei è</td>
<td>looh-ee/ley eh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noi siamo</td>
<td>noi see-ah-moh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voi siete</td>
<td>voi see-eh-teh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loro sono</td>
<td>loh-roh soh-noh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Cindy is visiting Florence for the first time. She’s gotten lost, and so she asks a traffic cop, a vigile urbano (vee-jee-leh oohr-bah-noh), how to find her hotel.

Cindy:  
**Scusi, ho una domanda.**
skooh-zee oh ooh-nah doh-mahn-dah
Excuse me, I have a question.

Parla inglese?
*pahr*-lah een-geh-zeh
Do you speak English?

Vigile:  
**No ma lei parla italiano!**
noh mah ley *pahr*-lah ee-tahl-ee-ah-noh
No, but you speak Italian!

Cindy:  
**Parlo poco ma capisco di più.**
*pahr*-loh poh-koh mah kah-pees-koh dee pyoooh
I speak a little but I understand more.

Mi sono persa.
mee soh-noh pehr-sah
I’m lost.

Vigile:  
**Dove deve andare?**
doh-veh deh-veh ahn-dah-reh
Where do you need to go?

Cindy:  
**Non posso trovare il mio albergo.**
nohn pohs-soh troh-vah-reh il mee-oh ahl-behr-goh
I can’t find my hotel.

Vigile:  
**Ha una piantina di Firenze?**
ah ooh-nah pyahn-tee-nah dee fee-rehn-zeh
Do you have a map of Florence?

Cindy:  
**Si eccola qua.**
see ehk-koh-lah kwah
Yes, here it is.
Ecco! (ehk-koh) Here you go! Here it is! is used only when pointing something out. You can attach a direct object pronoun to ecco if you like: “Dov’è la mia borsa?” “Eccola!” (doh-veh lah mee-ah bohr-sah ehk-koh-lah) (Where’s my bag? Here it is!) “Gigio, dove sei?” “Eccomi!” (jee-joh doh-veh sey ehk-koh-mee) (“Giorgio, where are you?” “Here I am!”).

You frequently hear this expression in a hotel: Ecco la sua chiave (ehk-koh lah sooh-ah kyah-veh) (Here is your key), and in a bar: Ecco i due cappuccini! (ehk-koh ee dooh-eh kahp-pooh-chee-nee) (Here are the two cappuccinos!)

### Idiomatic uses of avere

Even though the verb avere means *to have*, it is frequently used in circumstances when we would use the verb to be in English (such as to be hungry, to be thirsty, to be hot, to be cold, to be a certain age). In Italian, these terms literally mean to have hunger, to have thirst, to have heat, to have years. Table 2-4 lists some common idiomatic expressions with avere.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Expression</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>avere fame</td>
<td>ah-veh-reh fah-meh</td>
<td>to be hungry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avere sete</td>
<td>ah-veh-reh seh-teh</td>
<td>to be thirsty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avere caldo</td>
<td>ah-veh-reh kahl-doh</td>
<td>to be hot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avere freddo</td>
<td>ah-veh-reh frehd-doh</td>
<td>to be cold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avere sonno</td>
<td>ah-veh-reh sohn-noh</td>
<td>to be sleepy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avere voglia di</td>
<td>ah-veh-reh vohl-yah dee</td>
<td>to feel like, have a craving for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avere bisogno di</td>
<td>ah-veh-reh bee-zoh-nyoh dee</td>
<td>to need</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avere torto</td>
<td>ah-veh-reh tohr-toh</td>
<td>to be wrong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avere ragione</td>
<td>ah-veh-reh rah-joh-neh</td>
<td>to be right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avere anni</td>
<td>ah-veh-reh ahn-nee</td>
<td>to be a certain age</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Other common irregular verbs are andare (ahn-dah-reh) (to go), venire (veh-nee-reh) (to come), dire (dee-reh) (to say or tell), fare (fah-reh) (to do or make), dare (dah-reh) (to give), and uscire (oooh-shee-reh) (to go out):
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conjugation</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>andare</td>
<td>ahn-dah-reh</td>
<td>to go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>io vado</td>
<td>ee-oh vah-doh</td>
<td>I go, I do go, I’m going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu vai</td>
<td>tooh vahy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lui/lei va</td>
<td>looh-ee/ley vah</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noi andiamo</td>
<td>noi ahn-dyah-moh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voi andate</td>
<td>voi ahn-dah-teh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loro vanno</td>
<td>loh-roh vahn-noh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>venire</td>
<td>veh-nee-reh</td>
<td>to come</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>io vengo</td>
<td>ee-oh vehn-goh</td>
<td>I come, to do come, I’m coming</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu vieni</td>
<td>tooh vyeh-nee</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lui/lei viene</td>
<td>looh-ee/ley vyeh-neh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noi veniamo</td>
<td>noi veh-nyah-moh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voi venite</td>
<td>voi veh-nee-teh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loro vengono</td>
<td>loh-roh vehn-goh-noh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dire</td>
<td>dee-reh</td>
<td>to say or tell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>io dico</td>
<td>ee-oh dee-koh</td>
<td>I say, I do say, I’m saying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu dici</td>
<td>tooh dee-chee</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lui/lei dice</td>
<td>looh-ee/ley dee-cheh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noi diciamo</td>
<td>noi dee-chah-moh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voi dite</td>
<td>voi dee-teh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loro dicono</td>
<td>loh-roh dee-koh-noh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fare</td>
<td>fah-reh</td>
<td>to do or make</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>io faccio</td>
<td>ee-oh fahch-choh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu fai</td>
<td>tooh fahy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lui/lei fa</td>
<td>looh-ee/ley fah</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noi facciamo</td>
<td>noi fahch-chah-moh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voi fate</td>
<td>voi fah-teh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loro fanno</td>
<td>loh-roh fahn-noh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Like the verb *avere*, Table 2-5 shows that the verb *fare* (to do or to make) has some interesting idiomatic uses that don’t translate word for word.

### Table 2-5  
**Idiomatic Uses of Fare**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Expression</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fare domanda</td>
<td><em>fah</em>-reh doh-<em>mahn</em>-dah</td>
<td>to apply for a job or to a university</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fare una domanda</td>
<td><em>fah</em>-reh ooh-nah doh-<em>mahn</em>-dah</td>
<td>to ask a question</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fare una passeggiata</td>
<td><em>fah</em>-reh ooh-nah pahs-sehj-jah-tah</td>
<td>to take a walk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fare una pausa</td>
<td><em>fah</em>-reh ooh-nah pou-<em>zah</em></td>
<td>to take a break</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fa bel/cattivo tempo</td>
<td>fah behl kaht-tee-vooh tehm-poh</td>
<td>to be nice/ugly out (weather)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fa caldo/freddo</td>
<td><em>fah</em> kahl-doh frehd-doh</td>
<td>to be hot or cold out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fare un giro</td>
<td><em>fah</em>-reh oohn jee-roh</td>
<td>to take a ride</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fare fotografie</td>
<td><em>fah</em>-reh foh-toh-grah-fee-eh</td>
<td>to take pictures</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Then there are other very common, very irregular verbs, which are best to commit to memory.

**Conjugation**  
**Pronunciation**  
**Translation**

dare  
*da*reh  
to give  

io do  
*doh*  
*I give, I do give, I’m giving*  

tu dai  
adhy  

lui/lei dà  
*looh*-ee/ley dah  

noi diamo  
noi dee-*ah*-moh  

voi date  
voi *dah*-teh  

loro danno  
*loh*-roh *dahn*-noh

So, too, does the verb *dare* (*to give*) have some idiomatic uses, and so it also means to take when you’re taking an exam: *dare un esame* (*dah*-reh oohn eh-zah-meh*).
**Chapter 2: Jumping Into the Basics of Italian**

**Conjugation** | **Pronunciation** | **Translation**
--- | --- | ---
uscire | ooh-shee-reh | to go out, to exit, to leave the house
io esco | ee-oh ehs-koh |
tu esci | tooh ehsh-ee |
lui/lei esce | looh-ee/ley ehsh-eh |
noi usciamo | noi ooh-shah-moh |
voi uscite | voi ooh-shee-teh |
loro escono | loh-roh ehs-koh-noh |

---

**Talkin’ the Talk**

Fabio has just called Giacomo to chat and catch up on things.

Fabio: **Ciao Giacomo, sono Fabio.**
chou jah-koh-moh soh-noh fah-byoh
Hi Giacomo, it’s Fabio.

Giacomo: **Uè Fabio, come va?**
ooh-eh fah-byoh koh-meh vah
Hey, Fabio, how’s it going?

Fabio: **Benone! Studio molto in questi giorni.**
beh-noh-neh stooh-dee-oh mohl-toh in kwehs-tee johr-nee
Great! I’m studying a lot these days.

Giacomo: **Dai l’esame di filosofia lunedì?**
dahy leh-zah-meh dee fee-loh-soh-fee-ah
looh-neh-dee
Are you taking the philosophy exam on Monday?

Fabio: **Si, e ho ancora 120 pagine da leggere.**
see eh oh ahn-koh-rah chehn-toh-vehn-tee pah-gee-neh dah lehj-jeh-reh
Yes, and I still have to read 120 pages.
Part I: Getting Started

Ma ho bisogno di fare una pausa, di uscire.
mah oh bee-zoh-nyoh dee fah-reh ooh-nah pou-zah 
dee ooh-shée-reh
But I need to take a break, to go out.

Cosa fai stasera?
koh-zah fahy stah-seh-rah
What are you doing tonight?

Giacomo:  Esco con Anna.
ehs-koh kohn ahn-nah
I’m going out with Anna.

Fabio:  Dove andate?
doh-veh ahn-dah-teh
Where are you going?

Giacomo:  Se fa bello, andiamo a mangiare in collina.
seh fah behl-loh ahn-dyah-moh ah mahn-jah-reh 
in kohl-lee-nah
If it’s nice out, we’re going to go eat in the country. 
(Lit: the hills)

Perché non venite anche tu e Daniela?
pehr-keh nohn veh-nee-teh tooh eh dahn-yeh-lah
Why don’t you and Daniela come?

Fabio:  Buon’idea!
bwohn-ee-dey-ah
Good idea!

Vedo cosa dice Daniela e ti richiamo fra mezz-ora.
veh-doh koh-zah dee-cheh dahn-yeh-lah eh tee ree-
kyah-moh frah medz-dzoh-rah
I’ll see what Daniela says and call you back in a 
half hour.

Giacomo:  D’accordo – ciao a dopo!
dahk-kohr-doh chou ah doh-poh
Okay, talk to you later!

Fabio:  Ciao!
chou
Bye!
Chapter 2: Jumping Into the Basics of Italian

Having to, wanting to, being able to

Three modal verbs — *dovere* (doh-veh-reh) (*to have to, must, to need to, ought to*), *volere* (voh-leh-reh) (*to want*), *potere* (poh-teh-reh) (*to be able to, can*) — are kind of like helping verbs. You conjugate them and then the verb that follows is the infinitive. For example:

**Devo fare la spesa.** *(dey-voeh fah-reh lah speh-zah) I need to go (food) shopping.*

**Voglio dormire!** *(vohl-yoh dohr-mee-reh) I want to sleep!*

**Posso andare a bere?** *(pooh-soh ahn-dah-reh ah beh-reh) May I go get a drink?*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conjugation</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dovere</td>
<td>doh-veh-reh</td>
<td><em>to have to, must, ought to, need to</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>io devo</td>
<td>io dey-voeh</td>
<td><em>I must, I should, I ought to, I need to</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu devi</td>
<td>tooh dey-veh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lui/lei deve</td>
<td>looh-ee/ley dey-veh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noi dobbiamo</td>
<td>noi dohb-byah-moh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voi dovete</td>
<td>voi doh-veh-teh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loro devono</td>
<td>loh-roh deh-voh-noh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volere</td>
<td>voh-leh-reh</td>
<td><em>to want</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>io voglio</td>
<td>io vohl-yoh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu vuoi</td>
<td>tooh vwoi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lui/lei vuole</td>
<td>looh-ee/ley vwoh-leh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noi vogliamo</td>
<td>noi vohl-yah-moh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voi volete</td>
<td>voi vohl-yeh-teh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loro vogliono</td>
<td>loh-roh vohl-yoh-noh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potere</td>
<td>poh-teh-reh</td>
<td><em>to be able to, can, may</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>io posso</td>
<td>ee-oh pohs-soh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu puoi</td>
<td>tooh pwoi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lui/lei può</td>
<td>looh-ee/ley pwoh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noi possiamo</td>
<td>noi pohs-syah-moh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voi potete</td>
<td>voi poh-teh-teh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loro possono</td>
<td>loh-roh pooh-soh-noh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Presenting the Simple Tenses: Past, Present, and Future

Clearly, people don’t use just one tense. Sometimes you need to report what you did yesterday or outline what you’re going to do tomorrow. These three tenses (past, present, and future) are not high grammar — just basic stuff.

✓ leri ho mangiato un gelato. (yeh-ree oh mahn-jah-toh oohn jeh-lah-toh) (Yesterday I ate an ice-cream.)

✓ Mangio un gelato. (mahn-joh oohn jeh-lah-toh) (I am eating/eat an ice cream.)

✓ Domani mangerò un gelato. (doh-mah-neef mahn-jeh-roh oohn jeh-lah-toh) (Tomorrow I’m going to eat an ice cream.)

You find more on these tenses in Chapter 12 (future) and Chapter 10 (present perfect).

Talkin’ the Talk

Emilia and Cristina are two middle-school-aged girls who are walking home from the first day at their new school.

Cristina: Ho una nuova bici rossa! 
            oh ooh-nah nwoh-vah bee-chee rohs-sah
            I have a new red bike!

Emilia: La mia è sempre quella vecchia.
        lah mee-ah eh seh-mreh qwehl-lah vehk-kyah
        I still have my old one.

Cristina: Quella azzurra? È carina.
         kwehl-lah adz-dzoek-rah eh kah-ree-nah
         The blue one? It’s nice.

         Mi piacciono i miei nuovi insegnanti.
         mee pyach-choh-noh ee myey nwoh-vee
         in-sehn-yahn-tee
         I like my new teachers.

Emilia: Quanti anni ha la tua nuova insegnante di matematica?
         qwahn-tee ahn-neef ah lah tooh-ah nwooh-vah
         in-sehn-nyahn-tee kah
         How old is your new math teacher?
Cristina: **Non lo so. Forse quaranta.**
I don’t know. Maybe 40.

È **brava!**
She’s good!

Emilia: **Anch’io sono contenta della nuova scuola.**
I’m happy, too, with the new school.

**Vuoi fare un giro in centro?**
Do you want to take a ride down-town?

Cristina: **Si ma dobbiamo metterci il casco.**
Yes, but we have to wear our helmets.

Emilia: **Va bene.**
Okay.

**Ce l’ho qua.**
I have it here.

Cristina: **Dove andiamo?**
Where are we going?

Emilia: **Ho fame! Pizza o gelato?**
I’m hungry! Pizza or ice cream?

Cristina: **Gelato, naturalmente!**
Ice cream, of course!

Emilia: **Andiamo!**
Let’s go!
## Words to Know

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Italian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>albergo</td>
<td>ahl-behr-goh</td>
<td>hotel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>piantina</td>
<td>pyahn-tee-nah</td>
<td>map</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mi sono persa</td>
<td>mee soh-noh pehr-sah</td>
<td>I'm lost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>casco</td>
<td>kahs-koh</td>
<td>helmet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gelato</td>
<td>jeh-lah-toh</td>
<td>ice-cream</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>insegnante</td>
<td>in-seh-nyahn-teh</td>
<td>teacher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>va bene</td>
<td>vah beh-neh</td>
<td>okay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d’accordo</td>
<td>dahk-kohr-doh</td>
<td>okay, agreed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ciao</td>
<td>chou</td>
<td>hi/bye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mi piace</td>
<td>mee pyah-cheh</td>
<td>I like (something singular)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mi piacciono</td>
<td>mee pyahch-choh-noh</td>
<td>I like (something plural)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anch’io</td>
<td>ahn-kee-oh</td>
<td>I also, me too</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pausa</td>
<td>pou-za</td>
<td>break</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>domanda</td>
<td>doh-mahn-dah</td>
<td>question</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stasera</td>
<td>stah-seh-rah</td>
<td>tonight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dove</td>
<td>doh-veh</td>
<td>where</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quanti anni ha</td>
<td>kwahn-tee ahh-nee ah</td>
<td>how old is . . .  ?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The following contains several Italian words that I introduced in this chapter. Just find and circle the words from the list! See Appendix D for the answer key.

albergo
amica
avere
bici
caldo
capire
dire
dove
dovere
esame
essere
facile
fame
fare
italiano
partire
pausa
ragazza
rosso
sete
volere
zio
Chapter 3

Buongiorno! Salutations!

In This Chapter
▶ Greetings and good-byes
▶ Deciding when to be formal or friendly
▶ Responding to a greeting
▶ Asking whether someone speaks English
▶ Describing places, nationalities, and where you come from
▶ Introducing yourself and others

Buongiorno! (bwohn-johr-noh) (Hello!)

Have you ever counted the number of times you say hello in a single day? You probably say it more often than you realize. When you interact with people, you usually begin with a greeting — and that greeting can have an impact on the first impression you give. This chapter explains how to say hello and good-bye as well as how to supplement a greeting with some basic small talk.

Looking at Common Greetings and Good-byes

Italians like to have social contact and meet new people. Generally, they’re easygoing and receptive to people trying to speak their language. At the same time, they tend to be very respectful and polite.

To give you a good start in greeting people in Italian, we want to familiarize you with the most common greetings and good-byes, followed by examples.
Part I: Getting Started

✓ Ciao  
chou  
Hello and good-bye: informal  

Ciao Claudio  
chouh klou-dee-oh  
Hi, Claudio! Bye, Claudio!  

✓ Salve  
sahl-veh  
Hello and good-bye: neutral, but more formal than Ciao!  

Salve ragazzi!  
sahl-veh rah-gaht-tsee  
Hi, folks!, or Hey, guys!  

Salve is a relic from Latin. In Caesar’s time; the Romans used it a lot.  

✓ Buongiorno  
bwohn johr-noh  
Good morning (Literally: Good day) formal,  

Buongiorno  
bwohn johr-noh  
Good morning.  

Signora Bruni!  
see-nyoh-rah brooh-nee  
Mrs. Bruni!  

Buongiorno is the most formal greeting. Whenever you’re in doubt, use this word (if it is before 2:00 p.m.). You frequently hear it when you leave an Italian shop.  

✓ Buonasera  
bwoh-nah-seh-rah  
Good afternoon; good evening: formal  

Buonasera  
bwoh-nah-seh-rah  
Good afternoon/evening  

signor Rossi!  
see-nyohr rohs-see  
Mr. Rossi!  

You use buonasera after 2 p.m. to say both hello and good-bye. Just mind the time of day!  

✓ Buonanotte  
bwoh-nah-noht-teh  
Good-night! (Use only when parting for the night and going to bed)  

Buonanotte  
bwoh-nah-noht-teh  
Good night, guys!  

ragazzi!  
rah-gaht-tsee  

✓ Buona giornata!  
bwoh-nah johr-nah-tah  
Have a good day!  

You often use this phrase when you’re leaving somebody or saying goodbye on the phone.  

✓ Buona serata!  
bwoh-nah seh-rah-tah  
Have a good evening!  

Like buona giornata, you use buona serata when you’re leaving someone or saying good-bye on the phone, if that person is your friend. The difference is that you use buona serata, according to Italian custom, after 2 p.m.  

✓ Arrivederci  
ahr-ree-veh-dehr-chee  
Good bye.  

Arrivederci  
ahr-ree-veh-dehr-chee  
Good-bye, Mrs. Eva!  

signora Eva!  
see-nyoh-rah eh-vah
Deciding between formal or friendly

In Chapter 2 you saw some of the differences between using the tu, voi, Lei, and Loro pronouns and verbs when you want to say “you.”

An important feature of Italian culture is that there are two different ways of addressing people.

✓ You generally use the formal form of address — Lei (ley) (you: formal singular) — with adults you don’t know: businesspeople (waiters, shopkeepers), officials, and persons of higher rank, such as supervisors, teachers, professors, older people, and so on. (With children or among young people you use the informal tu.)

✓ When you get to know someone better, depending on your relationship, you may switch to the informal form of address — tu (tooh) (you, informal singular). You also use the informal with members of your family, friends, and, as already mentioned, with children.

Replying to a greeting

When you reply to a greeting in English, you often say “How are you?” as a way of saying “Hello” — you don’t expect an answer. In Italian, however, this is not the case; you respond with an answer. Following are common ways to reply to particular greetings.

**Formal greeting and reply**

Greetings:

Buongiorno signora, come sta?
bwohn-johr-noh see-nyoh-rah koh-meh stah

Hello, ma’am, how are you?

Reply:

Benissimo, grazie, e Lei?
beh-nee-see-moh grah-tsee-eh eh ley

Very well, thank you, and you?

**Informal greeting and reply**

Greetings:

Ciao, Roberto, come stai?
chou roh-behr-toh koh-meh stahty

Hi, Roberto, how are you?
Reply: Bene, grazie, e tu?
beh-neh grah-tsee-eh eh tooh
Fine, thanks, and you?

Another typical, rather informal, greeting and reply
Greeting: Come va?
koh-me vah
How are things?
Reply: Non c’è male.
nohn cheh mah-leh
Not bad.

Specifying your reuniting
Sometimes, you want to say more than just good-bye and specify your next meeting. The following expressions are common and also can be used as good-byes on their own:

A presto! (ah prehs-toh) (See you soon!)
A dopo! (ah doh-poh) (See you later!)
A domani! (ah doh-mah-nee) (See you tomorrow!)
Ci vediamo! (chee veh-dyah-moh) (See you!)

You can combine Ci vediamo with other phrases. For example:

Ci vediamo presto! (chee veh-dyah-moh prehs-toh)
(See you soon!)

Ci vediamo dopo! (chee veh-dyah-moh doh-poh)
(See you later!)

Ci vediamo domani! (chee veh-dyah-moh doh-mah-nee)
(See you tomorrow!)

Using body language
In Italy, people who are familiar with each other, such as family and friends, commonly hug and kiss on both cheeks. Italians kiss twice: once right, once left. Another common physical greeting is the more formal handshake. You shake hands with people you meet for the first time and with those you don’t know well.
Making Introductions

It’s important to be able to introduce yourself to someone, and to answer questions about who you are and where you’re from.

Whether to use first or last names as well as formal and informal registers are important considerations. In a job situation, you usually use last names, whereas at private functions, people are more likely to tell you their first names. The fact that someone gives you his or her first name, however, does not necessarily mean that you should use the informal tu (tooh) (you); using a person’s first name with the formal form of address is quite common. Usually, the older person proposes making the switch to the informal form.

Introducing yourself

We want to familiarize you with an important reflexive verb, chiamarsi (kyah-mahr-see) (to call oneself), which you use to introduce yourself and to ask others for their names. Here is the present tense of this important verb:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conjugation</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mi chiamo</td>
<td>mee kyah-moh</td>
<td>My name is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ti chiami</td>
<td>tee kyah-mee</td>
<td>Your name is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>si chiamma</td>
<td>see kyah-mah</td>
<td>Your/ his/, her/ its name is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ci chiamiamo</td>
<td>chee kyah-myah-moh</td>
<td>Our names are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vi chiamate</td>
<td>vee kyah-mah-teh</td>
<td>Your names are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>si chiamano</td>
<td>see kyah-mah-noh</td>
<td>Their names are</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

So that you can get the ring of the verb chiamarsi, practice these easy examples. Just change your intonation and word order, and you can ask someone’s name instead of telling them.

✔ Ciao (or Buongiorno), mi chiamo Eva. (chou/bwohn-johr-noh mee kyah-moh eh-vah) (Hello, my name is Eva.)

✔ E tu come ti chiami? (eh too koh-meh tee kyah-mee) (And what’s your name? )

✔ Lei, come si chiamo? (lay koh-meh see kyah-mah) (What’s your name?)

✔ Piacere! (pyah-cheh-reh) (with a quick hand-shake) is one way of saying: Nice to meet you!
Incidentally, as in English, you can also introduce yourself simply by saying your name: Io sono Pietro (ee-oh soh-noh pee-eh-troh) (I’m Pietro). Finally, you can just simply state your name, without the “Mi chiamo” (My name is) or “Sono,” (I am) as in the sample dialogue that follows.

Talkin’ the Talk

The people in this dialogue are colleagues assigned to work on the same project. They introduce themselves to each other.

Mr. Messa: Carlo Messa. Piacere!
kahr-loh mehs-sah pyah-cheh-reh
Carlo Messa, nice to meet you!

Mr. Rossi: Piacere, Marco Rossi.
pyah-cheh-reh mahr-koh rohs-see
Nice to meet you, Marco Rossi.

Ms. Pertini: Piacere, sono Paola Pertini.
pyah-cheh-reh soh-noh pah-oh-lah pehr-tee-nee
Nice to meet you, I’m Paola Pertini.

Ms. Salvi: Lieta di conoscerci. Anna Salvi.
lee-eh-tah dee koh-noh-shehr-lah ahn-nah sahl-vee
Pleased to meet you, Anna Salvi.

Mr. Melis: Mi chiamo Carlo Melis, piacere.
mee kyah-moh kahr-loh meh-les pyah-cheh-reh
My name is Carlo Melis, nice to meet you.

Mr. Foschi: Molto lieto, Silvio Foschi.
mohl-toh lee-eh-toh seel-vee-oh fohs-kee
Very pleased to meet you, Silvio Foschi.

Children and young people forego ceremony and introduce themselves more casually, though still politely — something like this:

Ciao! Sono Giulio.
chou soh-noh jooh-lee-oh
Hello! I’m Giulio.

E io sono Giulia, piacere.
eh ee-oh soh-noh jooh-lee-ah pyah-cheh-reh
And I’m Giulia, nice to meet you.
The following example offers a very informal introduction, used only in a very casual situation, such as on the beach or at a club:

**Come ti chiami?**
*koh-meh tee-kyah-mee*
*What’s your name?*

**Chiara. E tu?**
*kyah-rah eh tooh*
*Chiara, and yours?*

**Amedeo.**
*ah-meh-deh-oh*
*Amedeo.*

---

**Talkin’ the Talk**

Now listen to two young people introducing each other in a less formal setting. Mario enters the café and comes up to a table occupied by another person, Patrizia.

Mario:  
*È libero?*  
*eh lee-beh-roh*
*Is it free?*

Patrizia:  
*Si.*  
*see*
*Yes.*

Mario:  
*Grazie. Scusa, ma non sei la sorella di Gianni?*  
*grah-tsee-eh skooh-za mah nohn say lah soh-rehl-lah di giahn-nee*
*Thank you. Excuse me, but aren’t you Gianni’s sister?*

Patrizia:  
*Si.*  
*see*
*Yes.*

Mario:  
*Mi chiamo Mario.*  
*mee kyah-moh mah-ree-oh*
*My name is Mario.*

Patrizia:  
*Si.*  
*see*
*Yes.*

Mario:  
*Gioco a calcio con Gianni.*  
*joh-koh ah cahl-choh kohn jahn-nee*
*I play soccer with Gianni.*
Patrizia: Ciao, io sono Patrizia.
chou ee-oh soh-noh pah-tree-tsee-ah
Hello, I’m Patrizia.

Mario: Ti disturbo?
tee dees-toohr-boh
Am I bothering you?

Patrizia: No, per niente.
Noh pehr nee-ehn-teh.
No, not at all.

Sto aspettando due amici.
stoh ahs-peht-tahn-doh dooh-eh ah-mee-chee
I’m waiting for two friends.

Introducing other people

Sometimes you not only have to introduce yourself, but also introduce someone to your friends or to other people.

The following vocabulary may be helpful in making introductions. With it, you can indicate the relationship between you and the person you’re introducing. Gesturing toward the person and simply saying mio fratello means, quite simply, “This is my brother.”

✓ mio fratello (mee-oh frah-tehl-loh) (my brother)
✓ mia sorella (mee-ah soh-rehl-lah) (my sister)
✓ mia figlia (mee-ah fee-lyah) (my daughter)
✓ mio figlio (mee-oh fee-lyoh) (my son)
✓ mio marito (mee-oh mah-ree-toh) (my husband)
✓ mia moglie (mee-ah moh-lyee-eh) (my wife)
✓ mia madre (mee-ah mah-dreh) (my mother)
✓ mio padre (mee-oh pah-dreh) (my father)
✓ la mia amica/il mio amico (lah mee-ah ah-mee-kah eel mee-oh ah-mee-koh) (my friend [m]) Sometimes this also means girlfriend or boyfriend.
✓ la mia ragazza/il mio ragazzo (lah mee-ah rah-gat-tsah/eel mee-oh rah-gat-tsoh) (my girlfriend/my boyfriend)
✓ la mia fidanzata/il mio fidanzato (lah mee-ah fee-dahn-zah-tah/eel mee-oh fee-dahn-zah-toh) (my fiancè)
✓ il mio collega (eel mee-oh kohl-leh-gah) (my colleague [m])
✓ la mia collega (lah mee-ah kohl-leh-gah) (my colleague [f])

To make life easier I give you here the verb presentare (preh-zehn-tah-reh) (to introduce). (See Chapter 2 for more on ___ARE verb conjugations.)

Ti presento mia moglie, Teresa. (tee preh-zehn-toh mee-ah mohl-yeh teh-reh-sah) (Let me introduce you (informal) to my wife, Teresa.)

Le presento mia suocera, Mary. (lehprehzehn-toh mee-ah swoh-chehr-ah) (Let me introduce you (formal) to my mother-in-law, Mary.)

Talkin’ the Talk

The following dialogue, which represents a formal occasion, contains some typical expressions used during introductions. Here, Mrs. Ponti introduces a new colleague to one of her co-workers. Note the abbreviation for signora.

Sig.ra Ponti: Buonasera signora Bruni . . . Signora Bruni, Le presento il signor Rossi.

bwon-nah-seh-rah see-nyoh-rah brooh-neeh see-nyoh-rah brooh-neeh leh preh-zehn-toh eel see-nyoh rohs-see

Good afternoon, Mrs. Bruni . . . Mrs. Bruni, I’d like to introduce you to Mr. Rossi.

Sig.ra Bruni: Lieta di conoscerci.

lee-eh-tah deh koh-noh-shehr-lah
Pleased to meet you.

Sig. Rossi: Il piacere è tutto mio!

eel pyah-cheh-reh eh tooht-toh mee-oh
The pleasure is all mine!
Of course, friends can be informal with one another, as the next conversation shows. Here Teresa bumps into her old friend Marinella. Both are married now and introduce their husbands.

Marinella: **Ciao, Teresa, come stai?**
chou teh-reh-zah koh-meh stahy
Hello, Teresa. How are you?

Teresa: **Bene, grazie.**
beh-neh grah-tsee-eh.
Well, thank you.

**Sono contenta di vederti!**
soh-noh con-tehn-tah dee veh-dehr-tee
I'm happy to see you!

Marinella, **ti presento mio marito Giancarlo.**
mahr-een-ehl-lah tee preh-zehn-toh mee-oh mah-ree-toh jahn-kahr-loh
Marinella, I'd like to introduce you to my husband, Giancarlo.

Marinella: **Ciao, Giancarlo.**
chou, jahn-kahr-loh
Hello.

Giancarlo: **Piacere.**
pyah-cheh-reh
Nice to meet you.

Marinella: **E questo è Gianni.**
eh kwehs-toh eh jahn-nee
And this is Gianni.

Gianni: **Piacere.**
pyah-cheh-reh
Nice to meet you.
Getting Acquainted

Introducing yourself is the first step in getting to know someone. If you get a good feeling about the person and want to speak more, a conversation usually follows the introduction. This section tells you about the different topics you might talk about to get to know each other.

Finding out whether someone speaks Italian

Of course you will want to practice your Italian as soon as you get to Italy. You have an opportunity to try out your newly acquired smattering of Italian.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Italian</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Parla italiano?/</td>
<td>Do you speak Italian?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parli italiano?</td>
<td>(pahr-lah/pahr-lee ee-tahl-ee-ah-noh) (Formal/Informal)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parla inglese?/</td>
<td>Do you speak English?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parli inglese?</td>
<td>(pahr-lah/pahr-lee een-gleh-seh) (Formal/Informal)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A possible response to these questions is:

Parlo un po'.

(pahr-loh oohn poh) I speak a little bit.

Talkin’ the Talk

Ilaria and Carmen have recently gotten to know each other. Because Carmen is not Italian, although she lives in Italy, Ilaria is curious to know how many languages she speaks.

Ilaria: Quante lingue parli?

kwahn-teh leen-gweh pahr-lee

How many languages do you speak?

Carmen: Tre: italiano, spagnolo e tedesco.

treh ee-tah-lee-ah-noh spah-nyoh-loh eh teh-dehs-koh

Three: Italian, Spanish, and German.

Ilaria: E qual è la tua lingua madre?

eh kwha-leh lah tooh-ah leen-gwah mah-dreh

And which is your mother tongue?
Carmen: **Lo spagnolo.**
loh spah-nyoh-loh
Spanish.

Ilaria: **Tua madre è spagnola?**
tooh-ah mah-dreh eh spah-nyoh-lah
Is your mother Spanish?

Carmen: **Si. E mio padre è austriaco.**
see eh mee-oh pah-dreh eh ous-tree-ah-koh
Yes, and my father is Austrian.

---

**Talking about where you come from**

You know how interesting meeting people from other countries and nationalities can be. Two common questions are useful to remember:

✔ **Da dove viene?** (dah doh-veh vee-eh-neh) *(Where do you come from?)*
   Where are you coming from; in this instance, where are you from? Formal

✔ **Da dove vieni?** (dah doh-veh vee-eh-nee) *(Where are you from?)* Informal

✔ **Di dov’è?** (dee doh-veh) *(Where are you from?)* Formal

✔ **Di dove sei?** (dee doh-veh sey) *(Where are you from?)* Informal

The answers are, respectively:

✔ **Vengo da . . .** (vehn-goh dah) *(I come from/I’m from)*

✔ **Sono di . . .** (soh-noh dee) *(I’m from . . .)*

Now you can play with these phrases. You can insert the names of continents, countries, cities, or places.

---

**Talkin’ the Talk**

Il signor Dadina is sitting in his favorite café in Ravenna drinking his coffee and notices somebody at the next table who is examining a map of the city’s Byzantine churches. Il signor Dadina is a curious person:
Chapter 3: Buongiorno! Salutations!

Sig. Dadina: **Non è di qui, vedo Di dov’è?**
nohn eh dee kw-ee veh-roh di doh-veh
I can see you’re not from here: where are you from?

Sig. Tarroni: **Sono di Perugia.**
soh-noh dee peh-rooh-jah
No, I’m from Perugia.

Sig. Belli: **Una bella città!**
ooh-nah behl-lah cheet-tah
A beautiful town!

Sig. Verdi: **Sì, è piccola ma molto bella.**
see eh peek-koh-lah mah mohl-toh behl-lah
Yes, it is small but very beautiful.

If you want to talk about provenance, the adjectives denoting nationalities come in handy. As you say in English, “Are you American?” you say the same in Italian:

✔ **È americano/a?** (eh ah-meh-ree-kah-noh/nah) *(Are you American?)*
Formal

✔ **Sei americano/a?** (sey ah-meh-ree-kah-noh/nah) *(Are you American?)*
Informal

After you know the basics for such a situation, you’re ready to chat.

**Talkin’ the Talk**

Il signor Bennati, meets a Canadian, Mr. Walsh. Because they are strangers, their exchange is in the formal form.

Sig. Bennati: **Di dov’è?**
deel doh-veh
Where are you from?

Mr. Walsh: **Sono canadese.**
soh-noh kah-nah-deh-zeh
I’m Canadian.

Sig. Bennati: **Di dove esattamente?**
deel doh-veh eh-zah-tah-mehn-teh
From where, exactly?
Part I: Getting Started

Mr. Walsh:  
**Di Montreal. Lei è italiano?**  
*dee mohn-treh-ahl ley eh ee-tah-lee-ah-noh*  
From Montreal. Are you Italian?

Sig. Bennati:  
**Si, di Firenze.**  
*see dee fee-rehn-tseh*  
Yes, from Florence.

In English, you must put the pronoun (I, you, he, she, we, and so on) in front of the verb. You may have noticed that this is not the case in Italian. Because the verb form is different for each pronoun, you can easily leave out the pronoun — you understand who is meant from the verb ending and from the context. You use the pronoun only when the subject isn’t clear enough or when you want to emphasize a fact — for example, **Loro sono americani, ma io sono italiano** (loh-roh soh-noh ah-meh-ree-kah-nee mah ee-oh soh-noh ee-tahl-yah-ah-noh) (**They are Americans, but I am Italian**).

Use adjectives ending in -o (singular) and -i (plural) to refer to males, and adjectives ending in -a (singular) and -e (plural) to refer to females. Adjectives that end in -e in the singular refer to both males and females and end in the plural with -i.

Some adjectives indicating nationality end with -e: This form is both feminine and masculine. Table 3-1 gives some examples.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 3-1</th>
<th>Some Nationalities and Countries</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nationality/Country</strong></td>
<td><strong>Pronunciation</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>albanese/i</td>
<td>ahl-bah-neh-zeh/see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Albania</td>
<td>ahl-bah-nee-ah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>canadese/i</td>
<td>kah-nah-deh-zeh/zee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>kah-nah-dah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cinese/i</td>
<td>chee-neh-zeh/zee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cina</td>
<td>chee-nah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>francese/i</td>
<td>frahn-cheh-zeh/zee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Francia</td>
<td>frahn-chah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>giapponese/i</td>
<td>jahp-poh-neh-zeh/zee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Giappone</td>
<td>jahp-poh-neh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inglese/i</td>
<td>een-gleh-zeh/zee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inghilterra</td>
<td>een-geel-tehr-rah</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 3: Buongiorno! Salutations!

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nationality/Country</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>irlandese/i</td>
<td>eer-lahn-deh-zeh/nee</td>
<td>Irish (sing./pl.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irlanda</td>
<td>eer-lahn-dah</td>
<td>Ireland</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>olandese/i</td>
<td>oh-lahn-deh-zeh/nee</td>
<td>Dutch (sing./pl.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>olanda</td>
<td>oh-lahn-dah</td>
<td>Holland</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>portoghese/i</td>
<td>pohr-toh-geh-zeh/nee</td>
<td>Portuguese (sing./pl.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Portogallo</td>
<td>pohr-toh-gahl-loh</td>
<td>Portugal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>senegalese/i</td>
<td>seh-neh-gahl-eh-zeh/nee</td>
<td>Senegalese (sing./pl.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Senegal</td>
<td>seh-neh-gahl</td>
<td>Senegal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>svedese/i</td>
<td>sveh-deh-zeh/nee</td>
<td>Swedish (sing./pl.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Svezia</td>
<td>sveh-tsee-ah</td>
<td>Sweden</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In other cases, nationalities have feminine, masculine, plural feminine, and plural masculine forms, and end in a, o, e, i, as Table 3-2 shows.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nationality/Country</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>americana/o/e/i</td>
<td>ah-meh-ree-kah-nah/nee</td>
<td>American/Americans America</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stat Uniti d’America</td>
<td>stah-tee ooh-nee-tee dah-meh-ree-kah</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>australiana/o/e/i</td>
<td>ou-strahl-yah-nah/nee</td>
<td>Australian/Australians Australia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>ou-strahl-yah</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brasiliana/o/e/i</td>
<td>brah-see-lyah-nah/nee</td>
<td>Brazilian/Brazilians Brazil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brasile</td>
<td>brah-see-leh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>greca/o/greci/greche</td>
<td>greh-koh/greh-kah/greh-chee/gre-keh greh-chah</td>
<td>Greek/Greeks Greece</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grecia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>italiana/o/e/i</td>
<td>ee-tah-lee-ah-nah/nee</td>
<td>Italian/Italians Italy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Italia</td>
<td>ee-tah-lee-ah</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>marocchina/o/e/i</td>
<td>mah-rohk-kee-nah/nee</td>
<td>Moroccan/Moroccans Morocco</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maroccho</td>
<td>mah-rohk-koh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
Table 3-2 (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nationality/Country</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>messicano/a/e/i</td>
<td>meh-see-kah-nah/neh/nee/meh-see-koh</td>
<td>Mexican/Mexicans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Messico</td>
<td></td>
<td>Mexico</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>polacco/a/polacchi/polacche/Polina</td>
<td>poh-lah-koh/kah/kee/keh/poh-loh-nee-ah</td>
<td>Polish (sing./pl.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Poland</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rumeno/a/e/i</td>
<td>rooh-meh-nah/neh/nee/roh-mah-nee-ah</td>
<td>Romanian/Romanians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romania</td>
<td></td>
<td>Romania</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>russa/o/e/i</td>
<td>roohs-sah/soh/see/roos-see-ah</td>
<td>Russian/Russians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Russia</td>
<td></td>
<td>Russia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spagnola/o/e/i</td>
<td>spah-nyoh-lah/loh/leh/lee/spah-nyah</td>
<td>Spanish (sing./pl.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spagna</td>
<td></td>
<td>Spain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>svizzera/o/e/i</td>
<td>sveet-tseh-rah/roh/reh/ree/sveet-tseh-rah</td>
<td>Swiss (sing./pl.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Svizzera</td>
<td></td>
<td>Switzerland</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tedesca/o/tedesche/tedeschi/Germania</td>
<td>teh-dehs-kah/koh/kee/jehr-mah-nee-ah</td>
<td>German/Germans</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Instead of saying *sono americano* (soh-noh ah-meh-ree-kah-noh) (*I’m American*), you can also say *vengo dall’America* (vehn-goh dahl-lah-meh-ree-kah) (*I’m from America*). The same is true for all countries.

The following examples give you more practice with this construction.

- **Veniamo dall’Italia.** (vehn-nee-ah-moh dahl-lee-tah-lee-ah) (*We come from Italy/we’re from Italy.*)
- **Vengono dalla Spagna.** (vehn-goh-noh dahl-lah spah-nyah) (*They come from Spain.*)
- **Vengo dal Giappone.** (vehn-goh dahl jahp-poh-neh) (*I come from Japan.*)
- **Veniamo dal Canada.** (vehn-nee-ah-moh dahl kah-nah-dah) (*We come from Canada.*)
- **Veniamo dagli U. S. A. (or Stati Uniti)** (vehn-nee-ah-moh dah-lyee ooh-zhah/stah-tee ooh-nee-tee) (*We come from the U. S. A. or United States.*)
If you travel to Italy and make new friends, you may be asked these informal questions:

- **Ti piace l’Italia?** (tee pyah-cheh lee-tah-lee-ah) *(Do you like Italy?)*
- **Sei qui per la prima volta?** (say kwee pehr lah pree-mah vohl-tah) *(Is this your first time here?)*
- **Sei qui in vacanza?** (say kwee een vah-kahn-tsah) *(Are you on vacation?)*
- **Quanto rimani?** (kwahn-toh ree-mah-nee) *(How long are you staying?)*

### Talkin’ the Talk

In the following dialogue, you can catch some typical expressions for describing a city.

**Tokiko:**  
**Ti piace Venezia?**  
tee pyah-cheh veh-neh-tee-ah  
Do you like Venice?

**Dolores:**  
**Si, è molto romantica.**  
see eh mohl-toh roh-mahn-tee-kah  
Yes, it’s very romantic.

**Tokiko:**  
**È bellissima! Io sono giapponese.**  
eh behl-lees-see-mah. ee-o soh-noh jahp-poh-neh-zeh  
It’s very beautiful! I am Japanese.

**Dolores:**  
**Com’è Tokio?**  
kohm-eh toh-kee-oh  
What’s Tokyo like?

**Tokiko:**  
**È grandissima, moderna.**  
eh grahn-dees-see-mah moh-dehr-nah  
It’s huge, modern.
Extending and responding to invitations

You may be asked to join an Italian friend for a meal in a restaurant, or even at his/her home after you’ve become friends. When you want to invite someone to dinner, you can use the following phrases:

✓ Andiamo a cena insieme? (ahn-dee-ah-moh ah cheh-nah een-syeh-eh-meh) (Should we go to dinner together?)
✓ Posso invitarti stasera? (pohs-soh een-vee-tahr-tee stah-seh-rah) (Can I invite you for this evening?) This usually means that the person asking is going to be treating.

To accept an invitation, you can use the following expressions:

✓ Volentieri, grazie! (voh-lean-tyeh-reh grah-tsee-eh) (I’d like to, thank you!)
✓ Con piacere, grazie! (kohn pyah-ehreh grah-tsee-eh) (With pleasure, thank you!)

Of course, you can’t accept every invitation you receive. Following are expressions you can use to decline an invitation:

✓ Mi dispiace ma non posso. (mee dees-pah-ah-eh mah nohn pohs-soh) (I’m sorry, but I can’t.)
✓ Magari un’altra volta, grazie. (mah-gah-ree oohn-ahhl-trah vohl-tahr grah-tsee-eh) (Perhaps another time, thank you.)
✓ Mi dispiace, ho già un altro impegno. (mee dees-pyah-ehreh oh jah oohn ahl-troh eem-ehn-nyooh) (I’m sorry, but I already have another appointment.)

Talkin’ the Talk

Francesca talks to Giovanni to get the particulars for their date that evening.

Francesca: Ci vediamo per cena questa sera?
chee veh-dyah-moh pehr cheh-nah kwehs-tahr seh-rah
Shall me meet for supper tonight?

Giovanni: Si, perché no? Offro io, però.
see pehr-keh noh. ohf-froh ee-oh pehr-oh
Yes, why not? It’s my treat, though.
A chance meeting leads to a quick introduction in the short dialogue. Fill in the blanks in the Italian, using the following phrases. See Appendix D for the answer key.

le presento, il piacere, e lei, come sta, conoscerla

Gayle: **Buonasera, signora Frederick. ______?**
Good afternoon, Ms. Frederick. How are you?

Ms. Frederick: **Benissimo, grazie, ______?**
Very well, thank you, and you?

Gayle: **Bene, grazie. ______ mio amico, George.**
Fine, thanks. I’d like to introduce my friend, George.

George: **Lieta di ______, signora.**
Pleased to meet you, Ma’am.

Ms. Frederick: ______ è mio.
The pleasure is mine.
In This Chapter
▶ Counting numbers
▶ Telling time
▶ Using the calendar and making dates
▶ Reviewing the metric system

Numbers are a basic part of any language, so we’ve included numbers early on in this chapter. You can’t get away without knowing numbers, even in small talk. Somebody may ask you how old you are, how many days you’re visiting, or whatever. You can see how numbers are used throughout this book, for example in Chapters 7 and 13.

Counting Numbers

Every language follows a certain scheme to formulate higher numbers. When you know the basics — the numbers from one to ten — you’re halfway there.

In the Italian scheme, as in English, the higher value precedes the lower one, so that to say “22,” you first say venti (vehn-tee) (twenty) and then due (dooh-eh) (two) and simply put them together: ventidue (vehn-tee-dooh-eh) (twenty-two). The same is true for higher numbers — like trecentoventidue (treh-chehn-toh-vehn-tee-dooh-eh) (three hundred and twenty-two) and duemila-trecentoventidue (dooh-eh-mee-lah-treh-chehn-toh-vehn-tee-dooh-eh) (two thousand three hundred and twenty-two).

One thing merits some further explanation: When two vowels meet (this happens frequently with uno [ooh-noh] [one] and otto [oht-toh] [eight]) you eliminate the first vowel as in ventiuno (vehn-tooh-noh) (twenty-one) and quarantotto (kwah-rahnt-toht-toh) (forty-eight). So far so good.
Every rule has exceptions, and there are some irregular numbers, which you simply have to memorize. The numbers from 11 to 19 follow their own rules: undici (oohn-dee-chee) (eleven), dodici (doh-dee-chee) (twelve), tredici (treh-dee-chee) (thirteen), quattordici (kwaht-tohr-dee-chee) (fourteen), quindici (kween-dee-chee) (fifteen), sedici (seh-dee-chee) (sixteen), diciassette (dee-chahs-seht-teh) (seventeen), diciotto (dee-choht-toh) (eighteen), and dicianove (dee-chahn-noh-veh) (nineteen).

In Italian you cannot express a decade in just one word — you use a phrase. When you want to say “in the sixties,” you have to say negli anni sessanta (neh-lyee ahh-nee sehns-sahn-tah), which literally means “in the years sixty.” You form all the other decades using this method also. To say “the seventies” (without the “in the”) you simply say “gli anni settanta” (lyee ahh-nee sehnt-tahn-tah).

One other thing to keep in mind is that the plural of mille (meel-leh) (one thousand) is mila (mee-lah), as in duemila (dooh-eh-mee-lah) (two thousand).

Table 4-1 gives you enough numbers so that you can form the ones on your own not included here.
### Italian Pronunciation Number

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Italian</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>quindici</td>
<td>kween-dee-chee</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sedici</td>
<td>seh-dee-chee</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diciassette</td>
<td>dee-chahs-seht-teh</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diciotto</td>
<td>dee-choht-toh</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diciannove</td>
<td>dee-chahn-noh-veh</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>venti</td>
<td>vehn-tee</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ventuno</td>
<td>vehn-tooh-noh</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ventidue</td>
<td>vehn-tee-dooh-eh</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ventitré</td>
<td>vehn-tee-treh</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ventiquattro</td>
<td>vehn-tee-kwaht-troh</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>venticinque</td>
<td>vehn-tee-cheen-kweh</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ventisei</td>
<td>vehn-tee-sey</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ventisette</td>
<td>vehn-tee-seht-teh</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ventotto</td>
<td>vehnt-oht-toh</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ventinove</td>
<td>vehn-tee-noh-veh</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trenta</td>
<td>trehn-tah</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Numbers 40 to 100

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Italian</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>quaranta</td>
<td>kwah-rahn-tah</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cinquanta</td>
<td>cheen-kwahn-tah</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sessanta</td>
<td>sehs-sahn-tah</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>settanta</td>
<td>seht-tahn-tah</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ottanta</td>
<td>oht-tahn-tah</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>novanta</td>
<td>noh-vahn-tah</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cento</td>
<td>chen-toh</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Numbers from 200 to 900

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Italian</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>duecento</td>
<td>dooh-eh-chehn-toh</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trecento</td>
<td>treh-chehn-toh</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quattrocento</td>
<td>kwaht-troh-chehn-toh</td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cinquecento</td>
<td>cheen-kweh-chehn-toh</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seicento</td>
<td>sey-chehn-toh</td>
<td>600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>settecento</td>
<td>seht-teh-chehn-toh</td>
<td>700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ottocento</td>
<td>oht-toh-chehn-toh</td>
<td>800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>novecento</td>
<td>noh-veh-chehn-toh</td>
<td>900</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
Part I: Getting Started

Table 4-1 (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Italian</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Higher numbers</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mille</td>
<td>mee-leh</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duemila</td>
<td>dooh-eh-mee-lah</td>
<td>2,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>un milione</td>
<td>oohn mee-lyoh-neh</td>
<td>1,000,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>due milioni</td>
<td>dooh-eh mee-lyoh-nee</td>
<td>2,000,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>un miliardo</td>
<td>oohn mee-lyahr-doh</td>
<td>1,000,000,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Common usage for numbers that denote the centuries are:

Manzoni scrisse nell’Ottocento. (mahn-zoh-nee skrees-seh nehl-oht-toh-chehn-toh). (Manzoni wrote in the 1800s.)

Il Rinascimento fu nel ‘400 e ‘500 (nel Quattrocento e nel Cinquecento). (eel ree-nahsh-ee-mehn-toh fooh hehl kwah-troh-chehn-toh eh nehl cheen-kwehchehn-toh.) (The Renaissance was in the 15th and 16th centuries — literally, 1400s and 1500s.)

Times of Day and Days of the Week

Arranging your social life — whether you want to go to a performance or invite someone to a party — requires knowing the days of the week and times of the day. Table 4-2 gives you the days of the week and the abbreviations for them.

You don’t capitalize the days of the week or the months in Italian as you do in English.

Table 4-2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Italian/Abbreviation</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>domenica/do.</td>
<td>doh-meh-nee-kah</td>
<td>Sunday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lunedì/lun.</td>
<td>looh-neh-dee</td>
<td>Monday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>martedì/mar.</td>
<td>mahr-teh-dee</td>
<td>Tuesday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mercoledì/mer.</td>
<td>mehr-koh-leh-dee</td>
<td>Wednesday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>giovedì/gio.</td>
<td>joh-veh-dee</td>
<td>Thursday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>venerdì/ven.</td>
<td>veh-nehr-dee</td>
<td>Friday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sabato/sab.</td>
<td>sah-bah-toh</td>
<td>Saturday</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 4: Getting Your Numbers and Time Straight

Here are terms for today, tomorrow, day after tomorrow, and yesterday: **oggi** (oj-jee), **domani** (doh-mah-nee), **dopodomani** (doh-poh-doh-mah-nee), and **ieri** (yeh-ree).

There’s a great song, “Domani il 21 aprile” that most of Italy’s greatest contemporary singers put together in support of the people of Abruzzo after the earthquake of 2009. You can do an online search for the title of the song, and sing along with it. This is a fun way to practice your pronunciation!!

**Talkin’ the Talk**

Note the following teacher/student exchange in Italian 101:

**Teacher:** Se oggi è lunedì, che giorno è domani?
seh oj-jee eh looh-neh-dee keh johr-noh eh doh-mah-nee
If today is Monday, what day is tomorrow?

**Student:** Domani è martedì.
doh-mah-nee eh mahr-teh-dee
Tomorrow is Tuesday.

**Teacher:** Bravo. Oggi è giovedì: che giorno è domani?
brah-voh. ohj-jee eh joh-veh-dee keh johr-noh eh doh-mah-nee
Good job. Today is Thursday: what day is tomorrow?

**Student:** Domani è venerdì.
doh-mah-nee eh veh-nehr-dee
Tomorrow is Friday.

Now the teacher is talking to her colleagues.

**Colleague:** Quando parti per le vacanze?
kwahn-doh pahr-tee pehr leh vah-kahn-zeh
When are you leaving for vacation?

**Teacher:** Sabato, dopodomani.
sah-bah-toh doh-poh-doh-mah-nee
Saturday, day after tomorrow.

You may find the Italian expression for “the day before yesterday” interesting. It is **l’altro ieri** (lahl-troh yeh-ree), which literally means “the other yesterday.” Some of the ways you might use these expressions are:
Part I: Getting Started

Il concerto è martedì sera. (eel kohn-chehr-toh eh mahr-teh-deh seh-rah) (The concert is on Tuesday evening.)

Dov’eri ieri pomeriggio? (doh-veh-reh yeh-reh poh-meh-ree-joh) (Where were you yesterday afternoon?)

Il concerto c’è stato l’altro ieri. L’hai perso! (eel kohn-chehr-toh cheh stah-toh lahl-troh yeh-reh lah-y pehr-soh) (The concert was the day before yesterday. You missed it!)

Using the Calendar and Making Dates

Table 4-3 lists the months that you need in order to plan a vacation, organize your life, remember your friends’ birthdays, and also talk about your favorite holidays and seasons.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 4-3 Months</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Italian</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gennaio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>febbraio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>marzo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aprile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maggio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>giugno</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>luglio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agosto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>settembre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ottobre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>novembre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dicembre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Here is a useful rhyme that most Italians learn some version of. This might help you to remember and pronounce some of the months and numbers. You can listen and repeat as much as you want!

Trenta giorni ha novembre con aprile, giugno e settembre. Di ventotto ce n’è uno. Tutti gli altri ne han trentuno.
Chapter 4: Getting Your Numbers and Time Straight


(Thirty days have November, April, June, and September. With 28 there is but one. All the rest have thirty-one.)

Making dates

To ask for the date you say:

Che giorno è oggi? (keh joehr-noh eh ohj-jee) (What is the date today?/What day is today?) This is also the same way to ask for the day. Or

Quanti ne abbiamo oggi? (kwahn-tee neh ahh-byah-moh ohj-jee) (What is today’s date?) Here is an important difference between saying the date in English and in Italian. The word order is reversed in Italian. To say the date you use this order: è (eh) (it’s) + il (eel) (the)+ number + month + (year, if necessary). Here’s a sample.

Oggi è il dieci febbraio duemilaundici. (ohj-jee eh eel dzech-cheh fehb-brah-yoh dooh-eh-mee-laah-oohn-dee-chee) (Today is February 10, 2011.)

To ask when something is occurring, just use the word quando (kwahn-doh) (when).

Quando parti per la Sicilia? (kwahn-doh pahr-tee pehr lah see-cheel-ee-ah) (When are you leaving for Sicily?)

... and to answer

Parto l’8 agosto. (pahr-toh loht-toh ah-gohns-toh) (I’m leaving August 8th.)

Or to ask when someone was born:

Quando sei nata? (kwahn-doh sey nah-tah) (When were you born?)

... and to respond

Sono nata il sette novembre millenovecentosessantuno. (sohn-noh nah-tah eel sehht-teh noh-vehn-breh meel-leh-noh-vehn-chehn-toh-sehhs-sahn-tooh-noh) (I was born in ‘61.)

Note: I gave the past participle a feminine ending nata. If you’re speaking to or about a male, the word should be nato (ending in the “o”.)
**Telling time**

When you write the time in Italian, you go from 1.00 to 24.00 (or 00.00). But generally when you speak, you use just 1 to 12, and if there’s a doubt about a.m. or p.m., you can add **di mattina** (dee maht-tee-nah) (*in the morning*), **di pomeriggio** (dee poh-meh-ree-joh) (*in the afternoon*) or **di sera** (dee seh-rah) (*in the evening*).

**Asking for the time**

You can ask for the time in two interchangeable ways:

1. **Che ora è?** (keh oh-rah eh) (*What time is it?*)
2. **Che ore sono?** (keh oh-reh soh-noh) (*What time is it?*)

Another way of asking politely for the time follows:

**Scusi, mi può dire l'ora, per favore?** (skooh-zee mee pwoh dee-reh loh-rah pehr fah-vooh-reh) (*Excuse me, can you please tell me the time?*)

If the hour is **singular**, you answer with the singular verb:

**È l'una.** (eh looh-nah) (*It's one o'clock.*)  
**È mezzanotte.** (eh medz-ah-noht-teh) (*It's midnight.*)

If the time is plural (i.e., more than one), just change your verb from “è” (eh) (*it is*) to “sono” (soh-noh) (*they are,* literally, to reflect the plural **ore** [oh-rah] — hours.)

**Sono le due.** (soh-noh leh dooh-eh) (*It's two o'clock.*)

**Sono le diciotto.** (soh-noh leh deech-oht-toh) (*It's six p.m.*)

Did you notice the use of military time in the previous example? In Italy, the 24-hour clock is used all the time, from movie times to plane and train schedules.

You can also add on when necessary some specifics, such as the examples that follow:

**e un quarto** (eh oohn kwahr-toh) (*a quarter past*)
e mezzo (e mehdz-oh) (half past)

e tre quarti (eh treh kwahr-tee) (three-quarters past)

e tredici (eh treh-dee-chee) (thirteen past)

**Asking what time something begins**

Of course, sometimes you’d like to take the conversation about time a little farther. Frequently we ask what time something begins. Just add the preposition “a” onto the above questions and answers for telling time. Look here:

**A che ora inizia la partita?** (ah keh oh-rah ee-neets-ee-yah lah pahr-tee-tah) (What time does the game begin?)

And to answer . . .

**All’una.** (ahl-looh-nah) (At one.)

**Alle dieci.** (ahl-leh dyeh-chee) (At ten.)

**A mezzogiorno.** (ah medz-oh-johr-noh) (At noon.)

(Note that the preposition “a” contracts with the definite article that precedes the number.)

Let’s take a look at some of these terms in everyday usage.

---

**Using the 24-hour clock**

All schedules and posted time in Italy use a 24-hour clock, from trains and planes, to movies to concerts. It’s a good idea to review how the 24-hour clock works, especially when you’re at a train or bus station. The word for clock and watch is **orologio** (oh-roh-loh-joh). So from midnight to 12:00 noon the hours are the same, but at 1:00 p.m. it becomes 13 hours, or **le tredici** (leh treh-dee-chee). 2:00 p.m. becomes **le quattordici** (leh kwaht-tohr-dee-chee), and so on.

So let’s say you arrive at the train station and want to know what time the trains heading down to Naples are. Here are some options: 6:37 (**le sei e trentasette**) (leh sey eh trehn-tah-seht-teh) (6:37 a.m.); 17:23 (**le diciassette e ventitrè**) (leh deech-ahs-seht-teh eh vehn-tee-treh) (5:23 p.m.). And the same system goes for shop and museum hours, buses, and movie and theater times.
Part I: Getting Started

Talkin’ the Talk

Giancarlo and Daniele, two Roman university students, are in the piazza chatting about a concert tomorrow being held at the Circus Maximus.

Giancarlo: **Sai a che ora c’è il concerto dei Pink Floyd domani?**

Do you know what time the Pink Floyd concert is tomorrow?

Daniele: **Certo! Inizia alle 10 di sera.**

Of course! It starts at 10:00 p.m.

Giancarlo: **A proposito, che ore sono adesso?**

By the way, what time is it now?

Daniele: **Sono le due e mezzo in punto.**

It’s 2:30 on the dot.

Giancarlo: **O dio! Sono in ritardo per l’esame!**

Oh God! I’m late for the exam!

Chatting about the Weather

Whenever you’re in conversational trouble and don’t know what to say, you can always talk about the weather: “It’s very hot today, isn’t it?” Or, you can ask, “Is Spring your rainy season?” Talking about the weather can save your conversation in many situations!

Because the weather is such an important topic, you must be armed with the necessary vocabulary. In this section, we talk about the **quattro stagioni** (kwaht-troh stah-joh-nee) (**four seasons**).
Chapter 4: Getting Your Numbers and Time Straight

Weather wise

Italy is a fortunate country, at least as far as weather is concerned. During at least three of the four seasons, it has a mild climate and gets a lot of sun.

The summers are for the most part warm — sometimes too hot. The winters can be very cold, except for primarily in the mountains of north and central Italy, but as far south as Calabria.

Summer in the cities is generally terribly hot, so most Italians take their vacation in August and flee to cooler places: the sea or the lakes or the mountains. As a matter of fact, in August, it is hard to find actual residents in the big cities. The only people you find there are likely to be tourists and those Italians who have to work.

The fact that both the famous concertos by Antonio Vivaldi (ahn-toh-nee-oh vee-vahl-dee) and an oh-so-good pizza are named Quattro stagioni is no accident. Both are subdivided into four parts, and each part refers to one season.

✓ primavera (pree-mah-veh-ra) (spring)
✓ estate (ehs-tah-teh) (summer)
✓ autunno (ou-tohn-noh) (autumn; fall)
✓ inverno (in-vehr-noh) (winter)

Talkin’ the Talk

Mr. Brancato and Ms. Roe, seatmates on a plane, are talking about the weather.

Ms. Roe: Le piace Milano? leh pyah-cheh mee-lah-noh
Do you like Milan?

Sig. Brancato: Si, ma non il clima. see mah nohn eel klee-mah
Yes, but not its climate.
Ms. Roe: Fa molto freddo?  
  fah mohl-toh frehd-doh  
  Is it very cold?

Sig. Brancato: In inverno si.  
  een een-vehr-noh see  
  In winter it is.

Ms. Roe: E piove molto, no?  
  eh pyoh-veh mohl-toh noh  
  And it rains a lot, doesn’t it?

Sig. Brancato: Si, e c’è sempre la nebbia.  
  see eh cheh sehm-preh lah nehb-bee-ah  
  Yes, and there is always fog.

Ms. Roe: Com’è il clima a Palermo?  
  kohm-eh eel klee-mah ah pah-lehr-moh  
  What’s Palermo’s climate like?

Sig. Brancato: Temperato, mediterraneo.  
  tehm-peh-rahtoh meh-dee-tehr-raht-neh-oh  
  Temperate, Mediterranean.

Ms. Roe: Non fa mai freddo?  
  nohn fah mahy frehd-doh  
  Is it never cold?

Sig. Brancato: Quasi mai.  
  kwah-zee mahy  
  Almost never.

An expression that shows a difference between cultures is: Una rondine non fa primavera (ooh-nah-rohn-dee-neh nohn fah pree-mah-veh-rah) (One swallow does not a summer make). Note the difference; in English, the expression refers to summer; in Italian it refers to spring. This difference may be due to the fact that the birds come earlier in Italy and later to other countries.

**Talkin’ the Talk**

Our friends Il signor Brancato and Ms. Roe, airplane seatmates, are still talking about the weather.
Ms. Roe: E l'estate a Milano com’è?  
E lehs-tah-teh ah mee-lah-noh cohm-eh  
What’s the summer like in Milan?

Sig. Brancato: Molto calda e lunga.  
mohl-toh kahl-dah eh loohn-gah  
Very hot and long.

Ms. Roe: E la primavera?  
eh lah pree-mah-veh-rah  
And the spring?

Sig. Brancato: La mia stagione preferita.  
lah mee-ah stah-joh-neh preh-feh-ree-tah  
My favorite season.

Ms. Roe: Davvero?  
dahv-veh-roh  
Really?

Sig. Brancato: Si, perché è mite.  
see pehr-keh eh mee-teh  
Yes, because it’s mild.

Ms. Roe: Come l’estate in Canada.  
koh-meh lehs-tah-teh een kah-nah-dah  
Like the fall in Canada.

When you’re talking about the weather, the following expressions, which are very idiomatic, will make you sound like a heritage speaker!

✓ Fa un caldo terribile! (fah oohn kahl-doh tehr-ree-beh-leh) (It’s terribly hot!)  
✓ Oggi il sole spacca le pietre! (ohj-jee eel soh-leh spahk-kah leh pyeh-treh) (The sun today is breaking the stones!)  
✓ Fa un freddo cane! (fah oohn frehd-doh kah-neh) (It’s terribly cold!)  
✓ Fa un freddo/un caldo da morire! (fah oohn frehd-doh/oon kahl-doh dah moh-ree-reh) (It’s deadly cold/warm!)

Da morire (dah moh-ree-reh) (deadly) is a typical expression used for emphasis in Italian. You can use it in all kinds of situations: For example, sono stanco da morire (soh-noh stahn-koh dah moh-ree-reh) (I’m dead tired) or ho una sete da morire (oh ooh-nah seh-teh dah moh-ree-reh) (I’m so thirsty I could die).
Back in the plane, there is more small talk about the weather as the plane goes in for its landing.

**Voice**

Signore e Signori!
see-nyoh-reh eh see-nyoh-ree

over the loudspeaker:

Ladies and gentlemen!

**Sig. Brancato:** Che succede?

kee sooh-keh-deh

What’s up?

**Voice:**

Stiamo atterrando a Milano Malpensa.

stee-ah-moh aht-tehr-rahn-doh ah mee-laah-noh mahl-pehn-sah

We’re landing now at Milan Malpensa.

**Sig. Brancato:** Meno male!
meh-noh mah-leh

Thank goodness!

**Voice:**

Il cielo è coperto.
eel cheh-loh eh koh-pehr-toh

The sky is overcast.

**Ms. Roe:**

Come al solito!

koh-meh ahl soh-lee-toh

As usual!

**Voice:**

E la temperatura è di cinque gradi.

eh lah tehm-peh-rah-tooh-rah eh dee cheen-kweh grah-dee

And the temperature is five degrees.

You probably know that in Europe the Celsius scale is used to measure temperature. So, in the preceding dialogue, “five degrees” converts to 41 degrees Fahrenheit.
Chapter 4: Getting Your Numbers and Time Straight

Words to Know

- **come al solito** (koh-meh ahl soh-lee-toh) as usual
- **umido** (ooh-mee-doh) humid
- **tempo incerto** (tehm-poh een-chehr-toh) uncertain weather
- **nebbia** (nehb-bee-ah) fog
- **mite** (mee-teh) mild
- **visibilità** (vee-zee-bee-lee-tah) visibility
- **gradi** (grah-dee) degrees
- **piove** (pyoh-veh) It’s raining

**Piove sul bagnato** (pyoh-veh soohl bah-nyah-toh) (Literally: *it rains on the wet*) is an idiomatic expression that Italians use when something positive happens to someone who doesn’t really need it. For example, if a millionaire wins the lottery, you may say **piove sul bagnato** to indicate your feeling that you should have won instead.

There’s a lovely song about rain, called “Piove,” by Jovanotti. Find the song online, listen to it, and sing along to practice your Italian!!

**Familiarizing Yourself with the Metric System**

The whole world uses the metric system, with the exception of the United States, Liberia, and Burma, so it’s a good idea to review this very common system of measurement. You’ll need it to understand directions, order bread and cheese at a market, understand your pharmacy prescription, and even figure out how to make your favorite Italian dishes if you’re watching Italianfoodnet.com.
Length and Distance

Measures of length go up incrementally as follows. I'm only putting the main ones in, and you can find scores of conversion sites on-line if you'd like to take this farther:

- **millimetro** (meel-lee-meh-troh) (millimeter); **centimetro** (chehn-tee-meh-troh) (centimeter); **metro** (meh-troh) (meter); **chilometro** (kee-loh-meh-troh) (kilometer)

To ask how far something is, you may say, “Quanto dista il Colosseo?” (kwahn-toh dees-tah eel koh-lohs-sey-oh) (How far is the Colosseum?)

A typical response could be: “Duecento metri a destra.” (dooh-eh-chehn-toh meh-tree ah dehs-trah) (200 meters on the right.)

Weight

If you’re worried about how much weight you’re gaining, you can easily pop into a pharmacy in Italy and weigh yourself on one of their scales. (This usually costs **cinquanta centesimi** (cheen-qwahn-tah chehn-teh-zee-mee) (50 cents). You will get your weight in **chili** (kee-lee) (kilos), which you then have to multiply by 2.2, if you’re from the United States and the above-mentioned other two countries. Similarly, if you decide you need to buy some very expensive dried **funghi porcini** (foohn-gee pohr-kee-nee) (porcini mushrooms) or **tartufi** (tahr-tooh-lee) (truffles), you will ask for those by weight, in this case, **grammi** (grahm-mee) (grams).

So, incrementally, measures of weight go as follows:

- **milligrammo** (meel-lee-grahm-moh) (milligram); **grammo** (grahm-moh) (gram); **ettogrammo** (eht-toh-grahm-moh) (hectogram); **chilogrammo** (kee-loh-grahm-moh) (kilogram); **quintale** (kwin-tah-leh) (quintal); **tonnellata** (tohn-nehl-lah-tah) (ton).

Then there are the **millilitro** (meel-lee-troh) (milliliter) and **litro** (lee-troh) (liter) with **mezzo litro** (medz-zoh lee-troh) (half liter) also thrown in here for those individual-serving water bottles.

Talkin’ the Talk

Sarah, an American high school student with two years of Italian, is doing a home stay with an Italian family in Castellaneta this year. Here is a piece of her first dinner conversation with her new host family: They are getting to know each other. Is she glad she learned her numbers!
Host Mom: Sarah, quanti fratelli hai?
sah-rah kwahn-tee frah-tehl-lee ahy
Sara, how many brothers and sisters do you have?

Sarah: Ho un fratello e due sorelle.
oh oohn frah-tehl-loh eh dooh-eh soh-rehl-leh
I have one brother and two sisters.

Host Mom: Quanti anni hanno?
kwahn-tee ahn-neh ahn-noh
How old are they?

Sarah: Mio fratello David ha dodici anni.
mee-oh frah-tehl-loh David ah doh-dee-chee ahn-neeh
My brother David is 12.
Mia sorella Rebecca ne ha diciannove, e mia sorella
Naomi ne ha 21.
mee-ah soh-rehl-lah Rebecca neh hah deech-ahn-noh-
veh eh mee-ah soh-rehl-lah Naomi neh ah
vehn-tooh-noh.
My sister Rebecca is 19 and my sister Naomi is 21.

Host Mom: E quando è il tuo compleanno?
eh kwahn-doh eh eel tooh-oh kohm-pleh-ahn-noh
And when is your birthday?

Sarah: Il ventidue maggio.
eel vehn-tee-dooh-eh mahj-joh
May 22.

Host Mom: Quanto dista casa tua da New York?
kwahn-toh dees-tah cah-sah tooh-ah dah New York?
How far is your house from New York?

Sarah: Centoventi chilometri più o meno.
chehn-toh-vehn-tee kee-loh-meh-tree pyooh oh
meh-noh
120 kilometers, more or less.
O che bel cane! Che razza è?
oh keh behl kah-neh. keh rats-tsah eh
Oh, what a beautiful dog! What kind of dog is he?

Host Mom: è un pastore marammiano.
eh oohn pahs-toh-reh mah-rehm-mah-noh
He’s a Maremma Shepherd.

Sarah: Quanto pesa?
kwahn-toh peh-zah
How much does he weigh?
Host Mom:  **Cinquanta chili.**  
cheen-*kwaht*-nah *kee*-lee  
50 kilos.

---

**Words to Know**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Italian Word</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a proposito</td>
<td>ah proh-<em>poh</em>-zee-toh</td>
<td>by the way</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anni</td>
<td>ahn-nee</td>
<td>years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chilo</td>
<td>kee-loh</td>
<td>kilo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compleanno</td>
<td>kohm-pleh-<em>ahn</em>-noh</td>
<td>birthday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>giorno</td>
<td>johr-noh</td>
<td>day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mese</td>
<td>meh-zeh</td>
<td>month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numero</td>
<td>nooh-mehr-oh</td>
<td>number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pastore</td>
<td>pahs-toh-reh</td>
<td>shepherd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quanti</td>
<td>kwahn-tee</td>
<td>how many</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quando</td>
<td>kwahn-doh</td>
<td>when</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quanto</td>
<td>kwahn-toh</td>
<td>how much</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Take a look at this picture and name the four seasons. For a more challenging task, name the months that comprise each of the seasons. See Appendix D for the answer key.
“Honey, can you look in the phrase book and tell me how ‘scrambled’ is pronounced in Italian?”

By Rich Tennant
In this part . . .

These chapters help you with everyday activities, such as:

- Doing household chores
- Asking directions
- Eating and drinking, Italian style
- Shopping for clothes and shoes
- Going to concerts, museums, and other cultural events
- Making and taking phone calls
- Enjoying some outdoor recreation

So choose your interest and put your Italian into action!
Chapter 5

Casa dolce casa
(Home Sweet Home)

In This Chapter
▶ Looking for an apartment
▶ Decorating your home
▶ Cleaning your house
▶ Navigating the kitchen

This chapter introduces you to the different vocabulary and situations associated with the house, from renting an apartment to furnishing it to setting the table and eating in it. Just as Italy leads the way in the fashion industry, so too does it enjoy a well-deserved reputation for its fine furnishings and interior spaces.

This chapter walks you through some essential household chores like cleaning and setting the table, and supplies you with the vocabulary for some everyday utensils and appliances. I even give you a quick cooking lesson for some pasta later in the chapter.

Ordering Ordinals

When giving and receiving directions to your home as well as when talking about the different floors of a building, you need a command of numeri ordinali (nooh-meh-ree ohr-dee-nah-lee) (ordinal numbers). Because ordinal numbers are adjectives, they agree with the noun they describe. For example, you use the feminine forms when referring to via (vee-ah) or strada (strah-dah) (street), which are feminine nouns, and the masculine form when talking about a piano (pyah-noh) (floor). Table 5-1 includes the ordinal numbers in the singular masculine form followed by the singular feminine form.
Table 5-1  Ordinal Numbers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Italian</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>il primo/la prima</td>
<td>eel pree-moh/lah pree-mah</td>
<td>the first</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il secondo/la seconda</td>
<td>eel seh-kohn-doh/lah seh-kohn-dah</td>
<td>the second</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il terzo/la terza</td>
<td>eel tehr-tsah/lah tehr-tsah</td>
<td>the third</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il quarto/la quarta</td>
<td>eel kwahr-tah/lah kwahr-tah</td>
<td>the fourth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il quinto/la quinta</td>
<td>eel kween-tah/lah kween-tah</td>
<td>the fifth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il sesto/la sesta</td>
<td>eel sehs-tah/lah sehs-tah</td>
<td>the sixth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il settimo/la settima</td>
<td>eel seht-tee-moh/lah seht-tee-mah</td>
<td>the seventh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l’ottavo/l’ottava</td>
<td>loht-tah-vah/lah loht-tah-vah</td>
<td>the eighth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il nono/la nona</td>
<td>eel noh-nah/lah noh-nah</td>
<td>the ninth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il decimo/la decima</td>
<td>eel deh-chee-mah/lah deh-chee-mah</td>
<td>the tenth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il tredicesimo/la tredicesima</td>
<td>eel treh-deeh-cheeh-zee-moh</td>
<td>the thirteenth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il ventesimo/la ventesimo</td>
<td>eel vhehn-teh-zee-moh</td>
<td>the twentieth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il quarantottesimo/la quarantottesima</td>
<td>eel qwah-rahn-toht-teh-zee-moh</td>
<td>the forty-eighth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

After tenth, you take the whole number, drop the final vowel, and add esimo/a/e/i (ehz-ee-moh/ah/eh/ee).

These examples show you how to use ordinal numbers in sentences:

È la terza strada a sinistra. (eh lah tehr-tsah strah-dah ah see-nees-trah) (It’s the third street on the left.)

Abitiamo al nono piano. (ah-bee-tyah-moh ahl noh-noh pyah-noh) (We live on the ninth floor.)

Non so se abitino all’undicesimo o al dodicesimo piano. (nohn soh seh ah-bee-tee-moh ahl-loohn-deeh-cheeh-zee-moh oh ahl doh-deeh-cheeh-zee-moh pyah-noh) (I don’t know if they live on the eleventh or twelfth floor.)

All Italian buildings begin on the pianterreno (pyahn-tehr-eh-noh) or ground floor. So the first floor (il primo piano) (eel pree-moh pyah-noh) corresponds to a North American second floor, a second floor (il secondo piano) (eel seh-kohn-doh pyah-noh) corresponds to a North American third floor, and so on.
Inhabiting Your Home

Italians usually speak of la casa (lah kah-zah) (the house; the home), even though they often mean l’appartamento (lahp-pahr-tah-mehn-toh) (the apartment). Italians of all social strata live in apartment buildings in small towns and large cities rather than in single-family dwellings or in the suburbs. Houses can be rented as monolocali (moh-noh-loh-kah-lee) (studio apartments), bilocali (bee-loh-kah-lee) (two-room apartments), or as an appartamento with a specified number of camere da letto (kah-meh-reh dah leht-toh) (bedrooms).

Hunting for an apartment

When you’re looking for an apartment or a house to rent for the summer, you need to know about the rooms in the house and the size of the apartment. The size is given in square meters.

You can find an apartment or a house on your own through newspaper annunci (ahn-noohn-chee) (advertisements), or you can turn to un’agenzia immobiliare (ooohn-ah-jehn-tsee-ah eem-moh-bee-lyah-reh) (a real estate agency) for help. You can also find housing by searching online.

You need to know if the casa is ammobiliata (ah-moh-beel-yah-tah) (furnished), as most short-term rentals are. If you’re renting for the long term, many times the house will be completely empty, devoid of even a fridge. L'aria condizionata (lah-ree-ah kohn-deets-ee-ohn-ah-tah) (air conditioning) is an important feature to look for in the summer months, although many places don’t have it.
These words can help you specify your wishes concerning the number and types of rooms and as well as location and amenities.

- **l’ascensore** (lah-shehn-soh-reh) (*the elevator*)
- **l’angolo cottura** (lahn-goh-loh koht-tooh-rah) (*cooking area, such as in a studio apartment*)
- **il bagno** (eel bah-nyoh) (*the bathroom*)
- **il balcone** (eel bahl-koh-neh) (*the balcony*)
- **la camera da letto** (lah kah-meh-rah dah leht-toh) (*the bedroom*)
- **la cantina** (lah kahn-tee-nah) (*the cellar*)
- **la cucina** (lahk kooh-chee-nah) (*the kitchen*)
- **la doccia** (lah doch-chah) (*the shower*)
- **la finestra** (lah fee-nehs-trah) (*the window*)
- **il garage** (eel gah-raj) (*the garage*)
- **la mansarda** (mahn-sahr-dah) (*the attic*)
- **la piscina** (lah pee-shee-nah) (*the pool*)
- **il soggiorno** (eel sohj-johr-noh) (*the living room*)
- **la stanza** (lah stahn-tsah) (*the room*)
- **la sala da pranzo** (lah sah-lah dah prahn-zoh) (*the dining room*)
- **lo studio** (loh stooh-dee-oh) (*the office or study*)
- **la vasca da bagno** (lah vahs-kah dah bahn-yoh) (*the bath tub*)

Using the verb “to rent” may be somewhat confusing. The confusion comes from this: As in English, both **i padroni di casa** (ee pah-droh-nee dee kah-sah) (*landlords*) and **gli inquilini** (lyee een-kwee-lee-nee) (*tenants*) use the verb **affittare** (ahf-feet-tah-reh) (*to rent*). To avoid misunderstandings, landlords sometimes say **dare in affitto** (dah-reh een ahf-feet-toh) and tenants use **prendere in affitto** (prehn-deh-reh een ahf-feet-toh). Other useful verbs for these types of actions might include: **subaffittare** (soohb-ahf-feet-tah-reh) (*to sublet*), **traslocare** (trahs-loh-kah-reh) (*to change houses*), and **trasferirsi** (trahs-feh-reer-see) (*to move from one city to another*).
Talkin’ the Talk

Flaminia is looking for an apartment, and Pietro helps her read through the newspaper ads. After a few minutes, Pietro thinks he’s found something interesting.

Pietro: Affittasi appartamento zona centro. 
ah-feet-tah-see ahp-pahr-tah-mehn-toh dzoh-nah chehn-troh 
Apartment for rent, central area.

Flaminia: Continua! 
kohn-tee-nooh-ah 
Go on!

Pietro: Due stanze, balcone, garage. 
dooh-eh stahn-tseh bahl-koh-neh gah-rahj 
Two rooms, balcony, garage.

Flaminia: Perfetto! 
pehr-feht-toh 
Perfect!

Pietro: Tranquillo, in Via Treviso. 
trahn-kweel-loh een vee-ah treh-vee-zoh 
Quiet, on Treviso Street.

Flaminia: Chiamo subito. Non è molto centrale. 
kyah-moh sooh-bee-toh nohn eh mohl-toh chehn-trah-leh 
I’ll call immediately. It’s not very central.

Pietro: No, ma costa sicuramente meno. 
noh mah kohs-tah see-kooh-rah-mehn-teh meh-noh 
No, but it’s surely cheaper.

Flaminia: È vero. 
eh vee-roh 
It’s true!

Pietro: Chiama! 
kyah-mah 
Call!
When you see a newspaper ad that interests you, reacting immediately is always best — Chi prima arriva macina (kee pree-mah ahr-ree-vah mah-chee-nah) (First come first served.) You don’t want to hear Mi dispiace, è già affittato (mee dees-pyah-cheh eh ahf-feet-tah-toh) (I'm sorry, it’s already rented.)

You may want to know the following words when searching for an apartment (and any other time you are considering making a purchase). Caro (kah-roh) means “expensive,” and economico (eh-koh-noh-mee-koh) means “cheap,” although Italians seldom use the word economico. Rather, most people say costa poco (kohs-tah poh-koh) (it costs little) or non è caro (nohn eh kah-roh) (it’s not expensive). When you want to compare costs, you say costa meno (kohs-tah meh-noh) (it costs less) or costa di più (kohs-tah dee pyooh) (it costs more). Other questions you might want to ask include: A che piano è? (ah keh pyah-noh eh) (What floor is it on?) and Cè l’ascensore? (cheh lah-shehn-soh-reh) (Is there an elevator?)

Talkin’ the Talk

Flaminia calls the number given in the ad to find out more about the apartment.

Landlord: Pronto! prohn-toh
Hello!

Flaminia: Buongiorno, chiamo per l’ annuncio. Quant’è l’affitto? bwohn-johr-noh kyah-moh pehr lahn-noohn-choh kwahn-teh lah-fit-toh
Good morning! I’m calling about the ad. How much is the rent?

Landlord: 600 euro al mese. sehy-chehn-toh eh-ooh-roh ahl meh-zeh
Six hundred euros per month.

Flaminia: Riscaldamento e acqua sono compresi? rees-kahl-dah-mehn-toh eh ahk-wah soh-noh kohm-preh-zee
Are heat and water included?

Landlord: No, sono nelle spese di condominio. noh soh-noh nehl-leh speh-zeh dee kohn-doh-mee-nee-oh
No, they are included in the maintenance.
Flaminia:  Sono alte?
          soh-noh ahl-teh
Are they high?

Landlord:  Dipende dal consumo, come l’eléctricità.
          dee-pehn-deh dahl kohn-sooh-moh koh-meh
          leh-leht-tree-chee-tah
It depends on your consumption, the same
          as electricity.

Flaminia:  Quando lo posso vedere?
          kwahn-doh loh pohs-soh veh-deh-reh
When can I see it?

Landlord:  Subito, se vuole.
          sooh-bee-toh seh vwoh-leh
Immediately, if you want.

You’ll probably have many other questions if you decide to rent an apartment. Table 5-2 lists some of the more common questions, and some possible answers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Questions</th>
<th>Possible Answers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>È occupato? eh ohk-kooh-pah-toh Is it occupied?</td>
<td>No, è libero. noh eh lee-beh-roh No, it’s vacant. Si, per il momento. see pheehr eel moh-mehn-toh Yes, at the moment. È libero fra sei mesi. eh lee-beh-roh frah say meh-zee. It will be vacant in six months.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bisogna lasciare un deposito? bee-zoh-nyah lah-shah-reh oohn deh-poh-zee-toh Is it necessary to put down a deposit?</td>
<td>Si, un mese d’affitto. see oohn meh-zeh dahf-feet-toh Yes, one month’s rent. Si, la cauzione see lah kow-tsee-oh-neh. Yes, we require a security deposit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paghi molto per la casa? pah-gee mohl-toh pehr lah kah-sah Do you pay a lot for your house?</td>
<td>No, l’affitto è veramente basso. noh lahf-feet-toh eh veh-rah-mehn-teh bahs-soh No, the rent is really low.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Sprucing up your apartment

When you finally find an apartment, you probably want to furnish it beautifully. The following dialogues show you some Italians talking about their furniture.

Talkin’ the Talk

Valerio has found a new, non ammobiliato (nohn ahm-moh-bee-lyah-toh) (unfurnished) apartment. His friend Eugenia is asking him what he needs.

Valerio: Ho trovato un appartamento! Devo comprare dei mobili.
oh troh-vah-toh oohn ahp-pahr-tah-mehn-toh deh-voh kohm-prah-reh deh moh-bee-lee
I just found an apartment! I have to buy some furniture.

Eugenia: Tutto?
tooht-toh
(Do you need) everything?

Valerio: No, per la camera da letto il letto e l’armadio.
noh pehr lah kah-meh-rah dah leht-toh eel leht-toh eh lahr-mah-dee-oh
No, for the bedroom a bed and a wardrobe.

Eugenia: Nient’altro?
nee-ehntahl-troh
Anything else?

Valerio: Ho due comodini e una cassettiera.
oh dooh-eh koh-moh-dee-nee eh ooh-nah kahs-seht-tyeh-rah
I have two bedside tables and a chest of drawers.

Eugenia: E per il soggiorno?
eh pehr eel sohj-joehr-noh
Do you have furniture for the living room?

Valerio: Ho una poltrona. Mi mancano ancora il divano e un tavolino.
oh ooh-nah pohl-troh-nah mee mahn-kah-noh ahn-koh-rah eel dee-vah-noh eh oohn tah-voh-lee-noh
Only one chair. I still need a couch and a coffee table.
La signora Giorgetti wants to buy secondhand furniture. She reads an interesting ad:

**Vendesi** (*vehn-deh-see*) *(For sale)*: **tavolo e due sedie** *(tah-voh-loh eh dooh-eh seh-dee-eh)* *(table and two chairs)* **stile Liberty** *(stee-leh lee-behr-tee)* *(Liberty style)*

“Quello che cercavo!” *(kwehl-loh keh chehr-kah-voh)* *(“Just what I was looking for!”)*, she exclaims. She immediately calls the number on the ad. Of course, she needs answers to some questions:

**Sono autentici?** *(soh-noh ou-tehn-tee-chee)* *(Are they authentic?)*

**Sì, comprati ad un’ asta.** *(see kohm-prah-tee ah oohn-ahs-tah)* *(Yes, [they were] bought at an auction.)*

**Sono in buono stato?** *(soh-noh een bwoh-noh stah-toh)* *(Are they in good condition?)*

**Venga a vederli!** *(vehn-gah ah veh-dehr-lee)* *(Come and see them!)*

**Furnishing your new pad**

Table 5-3 divides the different pieces of **i mobili** *(ee moh-bee-lee)* *(furniture)* and other items according to the rooms.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 5-3 Room Furniture Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>il soggiorno/il salotto</strong> <em>(eel soj-johr-noh (eel sah-loht-toh)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>il divano</strong> <em>(eel dee-vah-noh)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>la poltrona</strong> <em>(lah pohl-troh-nah)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>il tappeto</strong> <em>(eel tahp-peht-toh)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>lo scaffale</strong> <em>(loh skahf-fah-leh)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>la cucina</strong> <em>(lah kooh-chee-nah)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>il frigorifero</strong> <em>(eel free-goh-ree-fehr-oh)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>il grembiule</strong> <em>(el grehm-byooh-leh)</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
### Table 5-3 (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>la cucina (lah kooh-chee-nah)</th>
<th>the kitchen</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>la lavastoviglie (lah lah- vah-stoh-veel-yeh)</td>
<td>the dishwasher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il lavello (eel lah-vehl-loh)</td>
<td>the sink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le sedie (leh seh-dee-eh)</td>
<td>the chairs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il tavolo (eel tah-voh-loh)</td>
<td>the table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la credenza (lah creh-dehn-zah)</td>
<td>the credenza</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i pensili (ee pehn-see-lee)</td>
<td>cabinets</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>la camera da letto (lah kah- meh-rah dah leht-toh)</th>
<th>the bedroom</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>il letto (eel leht-toh)</td>
<td>bed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il comodino (eel koh-moh-dee-noh)</td>
<td>nightstand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l’armadio (lahr-mah-dee-oh)</td>
<td>armoire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il comò (eel koh-moh)</td>
<td>dresser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i cuscini (ee kooh-shee-nee)</td>
<td>pillows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la lampada (lah lahm-pah-dah)</td>
<td>lamp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il lenzuolo/le lenzuola (eel lehn-zwoh-lo/leh lehn-zwoh-lah)</td>
<td>sheet/sheets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le tende (leh tehn-deh)</td>
<td>curtains</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>il bagno (eel bahn-yoh)</th>
<th>bathroom</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Il bidet (eel bee-deh)</td>
<td>bidèt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la tazza (lah tats-sah)</td>
<td>toilet bowl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la doccia (lah doch-chah)</td>
<td>shower</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l’asiugamano/gli asciumagnani (lah-shooh-gah-mah-noh) (lyee ah-shooh-gah-mah-nee)</td>
<td>towel/s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Il lavandino (eel lah-vahn-dee-noh)</td>
<td>sink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la doccia (lah doch-chah)</td>
<td>shower</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la vasca da bagno (lah vahs-kah dah bahn-yoh)</td>
<td>bathtub</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Words to Know

| accanto   | ahk-kahn-toh  | next to       |
| davanti a | dah-vahn-tee ah | in front of   |
| dietro    | dee-eh-troh  | behind       |
| sopra     | soh-prah     | on top of    |
| sotto     | soht-toh     | under        |
| di lato   | dee lah-toh  | on its side  |
| dentro    | dehn-troh    | inside       |
| fuori     | fwoh-ree     | outside      |

Housekeeping in style

Italians do love their elettrodomestici (eh-leht-troh-doh-mehs-tee-chee) (household appliances), and there are many sleek Italian brands for these things. Dryers are very rare in Italy because of the enormous amount of electricity they consume, but many households now have dishwashers. Some essential elettrodomestici include:

- l’aspirapolvere (lahs-pee-rah-pohl-veh-reh) vacuum cleaner
- la lavatrice (lah lah-vah-tree-cheh) washing machine
- la lavastoviglie (lah lah-vah-stoh-veel-yeh) the dishwasher
- il frullatore (eel froohl-ah-toh-reh) blender
- il tostapane (eel tohs-tah-pah-neh) toaster
- il frigorifero (eel free-goh-ree-fehr-oh) the refrigerator
- i fornelli (ee fohr-nehl-lee) stove-top (burners)
- il forno (eel fohr-noh) oven
- il microonde (eel mee-kroh-ohn-deh) microwave oven
A mother and son are preparing for dinner. She asks him to set the table and sweep the floor in the *sala da pranzo* (*sah- lah dah prahn-zoh*) (dining room) before their guests arrive.

**Mamma:**  
Salvatore, per favore, passa la scopa prima che arrivino gli ospiti.  
sahl-vah-toh-reh pehr fah-voh-reh *pahs*-sah lah *skoh*-pah pree-mah keh ahr-ree-vee-noh lyee ohs-pee-tee  
Salvatore, please sweep before the guests arrive.

**Salvatore:**  
Va bene, mamma.  
vah *beh*-neh *mahm*-mah  
Okay, Mom.

Che altro?  
keh *ahl*-troh  
What else?

**Mamma:**  
Apparecchia il tavolo, caro.  
ahp-pahrek-kyah eel *tah*-voh-loh *kah*-roh  
Set the table, dear.

**Salvatore:**  
Cosa ci metto?  
koh-zah chee *meht*-toh  
What should I put out?

**Mamma:**  
Metti la tovaglia con i limoni con i suoi tovaglioli.  
*meht*-tee lah toh-vah-lyah kohn ee *lee*-moh-nee kohn ee swoi toh-vahl-yoh-lee  
Put out the tablecloth with the lemons and the matching napkins.

**Salvatore:**  
Quali piatti?  
kwhah-lee *pyah-t tee*  
What dishes?

**Mamma:**  
Quelli di Faenza, il piano e il fondo.  
kwehl-lee dee fahy-enz-ah eel *pyah*-noh eh eel *fohn*-doh  
The ones from Faenza, the flat ones and the bowls.

**Non dimenticare forchette, coltelli, e cucchiai per il brodetto.**  
nohn dee-mehn-tee-cah-reh fohr-keht-teh kohl-tehl-lee eh koohk-kyahy pehr eel broh-deht-toh  
Don’t forget forks, knives and spoons for the fish stew.
Salvatore: Mamma, Non bastano i bicchieri per l’acqua.
Mamma: Non importa, li ho qui nella lavastoviglie.

Aggiungiamo anche i bicchieri da vino. Grazie.

Words to Know

| apparecchiare | ahp-pahr-ehk-kyah-reh | to set the table |
| bicchiere/i | beek-kyeh-reh/ee | glass/glasses |
| coltello/i | kohl-tehl-loh/ee | knife/knives |
| cucchiaio/chucchiai | koohk-kyahy-oh/ee | spoon/s |
| il (piatto) fondo | eel fohn-doh | bowl (for soup or pasta) |
| forchetta/e | fohr-keht-tah/eh | fork/s |
| il (il piatto) piano | eel pyah-noh | flat dish |
| piatto/i | pyaht-toh/ee | dish/dishes |
| scopa | skoh-pah | broom |
| sparecchiare | spah-rehk-kyah-reh | to clear the table |
| tovaglia | toh-vaht-yah | table-cloth |
| tovagliolo/i | toh-vaht-yoh-loh/lee | napkin/s |
Did you know that some of the most beautiful ceramics are produced all over Italy? Many are hand-painted works of art unto themselves. Some towns well-known for their ceramics include Faenza (Emilia Romagna), Deruta (Umbria), Vietri (Amalfi Coast), and Caltagirone (Sicily). It might be hard to go into one of these towns and not buy some ceramics to bring back home.

**Cooking and cleaning**

If you love to *cucinare* (kooh-chee-nah-reh) (*cook*) you will certainly have fun buying your ingredients in an Italian market or supermarket. Maybe you’re enrolled in an Italian cooking school in Tuscany this summer. But even if you’re not in Italy and like to practice your Italian by listening to Italian cooking channels, you’re going to need some essential kitchen words.

---

**Talkin’ the Talk**

Listen to the following recipe by Amedeo, chef for the *Italiani in cucina* food network. This is only part of the recipe, but enough to get you started on some important kitchen terminology.

Amedeo: **Buongiorno e benvenuti a “Italiani in cucina.” Oggi prepariamo le penne all’arrabbiata per quattro persone.**

*bwohn johr-noh eh behn-veh-nooh-tee a ee-tahl-ee-ah-nee een kooh-chee-nah ohj-jee preh-pah-ree-ahh-moh leh pehn-neh ahl-lahr-rahb-byah-tah pehr kwahht-troh pehr-soh-neh*

Hello, and welcome to Italians in the Kitchen. Today we will be preparing penne all’arrabbiata for four people.

Gli ingredienti sono:

*lyee een-greh-deh-ehn-tee soh-noh*

The ingredients are:

*500 grammi di pomodoro*  
*cheen-kweh-chehn-toh grahm-mee dee*

poh-moh-doh-roh

500 grams of tomatoes
Mezzo chilo di penne
*medz-oh kee-loh deh pehn-neh*
Half a kilo of penne

Un cucchiaio di peperonicino
*oohn koohk-kyahy-oh deh pe-pehr-ohn-chee-noh*
One tablespoon of hot pepper

Olio d’oliva extra vergine
*ohl-yoh doh-lee-vah ehxs-trah vehr-jee-neh*
Extra-virgin olive oil

Quattro spicchi di aglio
*kwaht-troh speek-kee deh ahl-yoh*
Four cloves of garlic

Un mazzetto di prezzemolo
*oohn mats-tseht-toh deh prehts-ehm-oh-loh*
A small bunch of parsley

Inoltre, avrete bisogno di:
*eem-ohl-treh ah-vreh-teh bee-zoh-nyoh deh*
Furthermore, you will need:

una pentola grande per la pasta
*ooh-nah pehn-toh-lah grahn-dah pehr lah pahs-tah*
A large pot for the pasta

una padella grande per la salsa
*ooh-nah pah-dehl-lah pehr lah sahl-sah*
A large pan for the sauce

Sale e pepe
*sah-leh eh peh-peh*
Salt and pepper

Inanzitutto fai bollire una pentola grande di acqua per la pasta.
*eem-ahn-zee-tooht-toh fahy bohl-lee-reh ooh-nah pehn-toh-lah grahn-deh deh ahk-wah pehr lah pahs-tah*
First of all, put a large pot of water for the pasta on to boil.
Doing household chores

Italians do like to keep a spic and span house. I don’t know anyone who likes to clean house, but if you’ve found an Italian roommate and you’re going to be dividing the chores, you may as well know how to say some of these things.

Talkin’ the Talk

Jenny and Lucia are two new roommates who have just moved in together while attending the University of Bologna. They are dividing the household chores, or faccende di casa (fahch-chehn-deh dee kah-za).

Jenny: Allora, come vogliamo dividere le faccende di casa?
ahl-loh-rah koh-meh vohl-yah-moh dee-vée-deh-reh leh fach-chehn-deh dee kah-za
So how should we divide the chores?

Lucia: Facciamo a settimane alternate.
fach-chah-moh ah seh-tee-mah-neh ahl-tehr-nah-teh
Let’s do alternating weeks.

Jenny: Una buon’idea.
ooh-nah bwohn-ee-dey-ah
Good idea.

Questa settimana io porto fuori la spazzatura e pulisco il bagno e la cucina.
kwehs-tah seh-tee-mah-nah ee-oh pohr-toh
fwoh-ree lah spats-ah-tooh-rah eh pooh-lees-koh
eel bahn-yoh
This week I’ll bring out the garbage and clean the bathroom and kitchen.

Lucia: Ed io passo la scopa e l’aspirapolvere e spolvero tutta la casa.
ehd ee-oh pahs-soh lah skoh-pah eh lahss-pée-rah-pohl-veh-reh eh spoohl-veh-roh tooht-tah lah kah-zah
And I’ll sweep, vacuum, and dust the whole house.
# Words to Know

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Camera</th>
<th>kah-meh-rah</th>
<th>Room</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lavare i pavimenti</td>
<td>lah-vah-reh ee pah-vee-mehn-tee</td>
<td>to wash the floors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mettere in ordine</td>
<td>meht-teh-reh een ohr-dee-neh</td>
<td>to straighten up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ognuno</td>
<td>ohn-yooh-noh</td>
<td>Each person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passare l’aspirapolvere</td>
<td>pahs-sah-reh lahs-pee-rahl veh-reh</td>
<td>to vacuum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passare la scopa</td>
<td>pahs-sah-reh lah skoh-pah</td>
<td>to sweep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Portare fuori la spazzatura</td>
<td>pohr-tah-reh fwoh-ree lah spats-ah-tooh-rah</td>
<td>to take out the garbage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulire</td>
<td>pooh-lee-reh</td>
<td>To clean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spolverare</td>
<td>spohl-veh-rah-reh</td>
<td>To dust</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
This is an easy one! Identify the various rooms and items marked with a solid, numbered line with their Italian names. For extra credit, keep on naming as many items as you can! See Appendix D for the answer key.
Chapter 6
Where Is the Colosseum?
Asking Directions

In This Chapter
▶ Asking for directions
▶ Giving directions
▶ Understanding directions

Have you ever been lost in a foreign city or country? If so, you realize how helpful it is when you know enough of the native language to be able to ask for directions. Knowing the language also enables you to understand the answer. In this chapter, we give you some helpful conversational tips that make it easier to find your way around.

Finding Your Way: Asking for Specific Places

When asking for directions, it’s always polite to start your question with one of the following expressions (which are friendly forms of the imperative or command tense):

**Mi scusi.** (mee skoo-h-zee) (*Excuse me, you singular, formal*)

**Scusi.** (skoo-h-zee) (*Excuse me, you singular, formal*)

**Mi scusino.** (mee skoo-h-zee-noh) (*Excuse me, you plural, formal*)

**Scusa.** (skoo-h-zah) (*Excuse me, you singular, informal*)

**Scusate.** (skoo-h-zah-teh) (*Excuse me, you plural, informal*)

or

**Per favore.** (pehr fah-voh-reh) (*Please.*)

**Un’informazione.** (oohn een-for-mahs-yoh-neh) (*I need some information.*)
Then you can continue with your questions, something like the following:

✓ **Dov’è il Colosseo?** (doh-veh eel koh-lohs-seh-oh) (*Where is the Colosseum?*)

✓ **È questa via Garibaldi?** (eh kwehs-tah vee-ah gah-ree-bahl-dee) (*Is this via Garibaldi?*)

✓ **Per la stazione?** (pehr lah stah-tyoh-neh) (*How do I get to the station?*)

✓ **Può indicarmi la strada per il centro?** (pwoh een-dee-kaehr-mee lah strah-dah pehr eel chehn-troh) (*Can you show me the way downtown?*)

✓ **Dove siamo adesso?** (doh-veh see-ah-moh ah-dehs-soh) (*Where are we now?*)

✓ **Mi sono perso. Dov’è il duomo?** (mee soh-noh pehr-soh. doh-veh eel dwoh-moh) (*I’m lost; where is the cathedral?*)

✓ **È qui vicino La Fontana di Tevi?** (eh kwee-chee-noh lah fohn-tah-nah dee treh-vee) (*Is the Fountain of Trevi nearby?*)

Some possible answers, and not in any particular order (mix and match according to context!), to the preceding questions are:

✓ **Si è proprio qui vicino!** (see eh proh-pree-oh kwee vee-chee-noh) (*Yes, it is very close!*)

✓ **Segua la strada principale fino al centro.** (seh-gwah lah strah-dah preen-chee-pah-leh fee-noh ahl chehn-troh) (*Follow the main street to the center of the city.*)

✓ **Vada sempre dritto.** (vah-dah sehm-preh dreek-toh) (*Go straight ahead.*)

✓ **Dopo il semaforo giri a destra.** (doh-poh eel seh-mah-foh-roh jee-ree-ah ah dehs-trah) (*After the traffic light, turn right.*)

✓ **È in fondo a sinistra.** (eh een fohn-doh ah see-nees-trah) (*It’s at the end, on the left side.*)

✓ **È vicino alla posta.** (eh vee-chee-noh ahl-lah pohs-tah) (*It’s next to the post office.*)

✓ **Attraversi il ponte, poi c’è una piazza e li vede.** (aht-trah-vehr-see eel pohn-teh poi cheh ooh-nah pyahnts-tsah eh lee loh veh-deh) (*Cross the bridge, then there’s a square and there you see it.*)

✓ **È la terza strada a sinistra.** (eh lah teh-rah-tsah strah-dah ah see-nees-trah) (*It’s the third street on the left.*)

✓ **È dopo il terzo semaforo a destra.** (eh doh-poh eel tehrt-soh seh-mah-foh-roh ah dehs-trah) (*It’s after the third light, on the right.*)

✓ **Ha sbagliato strada.** (ah sbah-lyah-toh strah-dah) (*You’re on the wrong road.*)
Anna Maria and Robert are looking for the Trevi Fountain. They are on Rome’s via del Corso, and stop to ask a Carabiniere (a type of police officer) for directions. Note that here the Carabiniere has used the Loro polite imperative form because he is speaking to two other adults whom he doesn’t know.

Anna Maria:  
Scusi, è qui vicino La Fontana di Trevi?  
skooh-zee eh kwee vee-chee-noh lah fohn-tah-nah deh treh-vee  
Excuse, me, is the Fountain of Trevi nearby?

Carabiniere:  
Sì, è proprio qui vicino! Si girino a destra in  
Via delle Muratte e proseguano per all’incirca  
200 metri.  
see eh proh-pree-oh kwee vee-chee-noh. see gee-ree-noh ah dehs-trah een vee-ah dehl-leh mooh-raht-teh eh proh-seh-gwah-noh pehr ahlleen-cehr-cah dooh-eh chehn-toh meh-tree  
Why yes, it’s very close. Take a right at via delle Muratte and then keep going for about 200 meters.

Anna Maria:  
Molte grazie.  
mohl-teh grah-tsee-eh  
Many thanks.

Carabiniere:  
Non c’e di che.  
nohn cheh dee keh  
Don’t mention it.

Mapping the quarters and following directions

Four orientations you already know are the cardinal points of the compass: north, south, east, and west. The four directions are especially helpful to know when you use a map. The following are i quattro punti cardinali (ee kwaht-troh poohn-tee kahr-dee-nah-lee) (the four cardinal points):

✔ nord (nohrd) (north)
✔ est (ehst) (east)
✓ sud (soohd) (south)
✓ ovest (oh-vehst) (west)

You may hear the directions used in sentences like the following:

✓ Trieste è a nord-est. (tree-ehs-teh eh ah nohrd-ehst) (Trieste is to the northeast.)
✓ Napoli è a sud. (nah-poh-lee eh ah soohd) (Naples is to the south.)
✓ Roma è a ovest. (roh-mah eh ah oh-vehst) (Rome is to the west.)
✓ Bari è a sud-est. (bah-ree eh ah soohd-ehst) (Bari is to the southeast.)

Some lovely city centers, such as the ones in Verona and Ravenna, are closed off to traffic, so you really need to go around by foot. You need to know how to orient yourself in relation to people and buildings when following or giving directions. Italians also frequently use meters to describe distances on foot:

✓ davanti a (dah-vaahn-tee ah) (in front of)
✓ dietro a (dee-eh-troh ah) (behind)
✓ vicino a (vee-chee-noh ah) (beside; next to)
✓ di fronte a (dee-frohn-teh ah) (opposite)
✓ dentro (dehn-troh) (inside)
✓ fuori (fwoh-ree) (outside)
✓ sotto (soht-toh) (under; below)
✓ sopra (soh-prah) (above)

You also need to know relationships between distance and la direzione (lah dee-reh-tysoh-neh) (the direction):

✓ dritto (dreet-toh) (straight)
✓ sempre dritto (sehm-preh dreet-toh) (straight ahead)
✓ fino a (fee-noh ah) (to; up to)
✓ prima (pree-mah) (before)
✓ dopo (doh-poh) (after)
✓ a destra (ah dehs-trah) (on the right)
✓ a sinistra (ah see-nees-trah) (on the left)
✓ dietro l’angolo (dee-eh-troh lahn-goh-loh) (around the corner)
✓ all’angolo (ahl-lahn-goh-loh) (at the corner)
✓ all’incrocio (ahl-leen-kroh-choh) (at the intersection)
More vocabulary you can use for giving and receiving directions:

- **la calle** (lah kahl-leh) *(narrow Venetian street; term found only in Venice)*
- **il largo** (eel lahr-goh) *(wide square)*
- **il marciapiede** (eel mahr-chah-pyeh-deh) *(sidewalk)*
- **la piazza** (lah pyahts-tsah) *(square)*
- **il ponte** (eel pohn-teh) *(bridge)*
- **il sottopassaggio** (eel soht-toh-pahs-sahj-joh) *(underpass)*
- **la strada** (lah strah-dah) *(road; street)*
- **la via** (lah vee-ah) *(road; street)*
- **la via principale** (lah vee-ah preen-chee-pah-leh) *(main street)*
- **il viale** (eel vee-ah-leh) *(parkway; avenue)*
- **il vicolo** (eel vee-koh-loh) *(alley; lane)*

---

**Talkin’ the Talk**

Laurie is visiting Florence from Oregon and has just finished a mid-morning coffee break in Piazza della Repubblica. She asks the man standing near her how to get to the post office.

Laurie: **Scusi, dov’è l’ufficio postale?** skoooh-zee doh-veh loohf-feech-oh poh-stah-leh
Excuse me, where is the post office?

Enzo: **È dietro l’angolo, là, sotto i portici. L’accompagno?** eh dee-eh-troh lahn-goh-loh lah soht-toh ee pohr-tee-ehh. lah-kohm-pahn-yoh
It’s around the corner, over there there, underneath the porticoes. Shall I accompany you?

Laurie: **Grazie, No Grazie, vado da sola.** grah-tsee-ehh. noh grants-ee-eh vah-doh dah soh-lah
Thank you. No thank you, I can go by myself.

---

**La strada** and **la via** are synonymous, but you always use **via** when the name is specified:

- **È una strada molto lunga.** *(eh ooh-nah strah-dah mohl-toh loohn-gah)*
  *(It’s a very long road.)*
- **Abito in via Merulana.** *(ah-bee-toh een vee-ah meh-rooh-lah-nah)*
  *(I live in Via Merulana.)*
I thought you might want to know the translation and pronunciation of a famous Italian proverb you may have heard:

*Tutte le strade portano a Roma.* *(tooht- teh leh strah-deh pohr-tah-noh ah roh-mah) (All roads lead to Rome.)*

**Talkin’ the Talk**

Mary is in Bologna *(boh-loh-nyah)* for the first time. She has visited the city and walked a lot, and now she wants to go back to the train station. Because she can’t remember the way, she asks an elderly man.

Mary:  
Scusi?  
*scooh-zee*  
Excuse me?

Man:  
Si?  
*see*  
Yes?

Mary:  
Dov’è la stazione centrale?  
doh-veh lah stah-tsyoh-neh chehn-trah-leh  
Where is the central station?

Man:  
Prenda la prima a destra.  
*prehn*-dah lah pree-mah ah dehs-trah  
Take the first right.

Mary:  
Poi?  
*poi*  
Then?

Man:  
Poi la terza a sinistra.  
poi lah tehr-tsah ah see-nees-trah  
Then the third left.

Mary:  
Si?  
*see*  
Yes?

Man:  
Poi la seconda, no la prima . . .  
poi lah seh-kohn-dah noh lah pree-mah  
Then the second, no the first . . .
Mary:    Grazie: Prendo un taxi!
        grah-tsee-ea prehn-doh oohn tah-ksee
Thank you: I'll take a taxi!

**Words to Know**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Italian</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>la strada principale [f]</td>
<td>lah strah-dah preen-chee-pah-leh</td>
<td>main street</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il semaforo [m]</td>
<td>eel seh-mah-foh-roh</td>
<td>traffic light</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il ponte [m]</td>
<td>eel pohn-teh</td>
<td>bridge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la piazza [f]</td>
<td>lah pyahts-tsah</td>
<td>square</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il centro [m]</td>
<td>eel chehn-troh</td>
<td>downtown; city center</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la stazione [f]</td>
<td>lah stah-tyoeh-neh</td>
<td>station</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il duomo [m]</td>
<td>eel dwoh-moh</td>
<td>cathedral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l’ufficio postale [f]</td>
<td>loh-fee-choh pohs-tah-leh</td>
<td>post office</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la rotonda (f)</td>
<td>lah roh-tohn-dah</td>
<td>rotary</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Verbs on the Move**

You need to know certain verbs when trying to understand directions. Some of the verbs you’ll find handy for finding your way include:

- ✔ **andare** (ahn-dah-reh) (to go)
- ✔ **girare a destra/a sinistra** (jee-rahe-reh ah dehs-trah/ah see-nee-trah) (to turn right/left)
**Part II: Italian in Action**

- **prendere** (prehn-deh-reh) (to take)
- **proseguire** (proh-seh-gwee-reh) (to go on)
- **seguire** (seh-gwee-reh) (to follow)
- **tornare/indietro** (tohr-nah-reh/een-deh-eh-troh) (to go back)

Imperatives are useful verb forms to know in a variety of situations, including when you’re trying to get around in unfamiliar territory. This list shows the informal verb form (tu), the formal verb form (Lei), the informal pl. form (voi) and the formal plural form (Loro). Check out Chapter 2 for help on deciding to use formal or informal forms.

Appendix A provides you with the conjugations of some regular and irregular verbs.

- **Va/Vada/Andate/Vadano!** (vah/vah-dah/ahn-dah-teh/vah-dah-noh) (Go!)
- **Gira/Giri/Girate/Girino!** (jee-rah/jee-ree/jee-rah-teh/jee-ree-noh) (Turn!)
- **Prendi/Prenda/Prendete/Prendano!** (prehn-dee/prehn-dah/prehn-deh-teh/prehn-dah-noh) (Take!)
- **Prosegui/Prosegua/Proseguite/Proseguano!** (proh-seh-gwee/proh-seh-gwah/proh-seh-gwee-teh/proh-seh-gwah-noh) (Go on!)
- **Segui/Segua/Seguite/Seguano!** (seh-gwee/seh-gwah/seh-gwee-teh/seh-gwah-noh) (Follow!)
- **Torna/Torni/Tornate/Tornino!** (tohr-nah/tohr-nee/tohr-nan-teh/tohr-nee-noh) (Go back!)
- **Attraversa/Attraversi/Attraversate/Attraversino!** (aht-trah-vehr-sah/aht-trah-vehr-see/aht-trah-vehr-sah-teh/aht-trah-vehr-see-noh) (Cross!)

Notice that the endings of these verbs vary, apparently without any consistent pattern. These aren’t typing mistakes — they’re determined by the ending of the infinitive form of the verb (-are, -ere, or -ire), and also whether or not these verbs are regular or irregular. The easiest way about this is to simply believe us and memorize the verbs and their endings. You may want to know how near or far you are from your destination. Some typical questions and responses are:

- **Quant’è lontano?** (kwahn-teh lohn-tah-noh) (How far is it?)
- **È molto lontano?** (eh mohl-toh lohn-tah-noh) (Is it very far?)
- **Quanto dista?** (kwahn-toh dees-tah) (How far is it?)
- **Saranno cinque minuti.** (sah-rah-noh cheen-kweh mee-nooh-tee) (About five minutes.)
Talkin’ the Talk

Jenny and Lucy are visiting Rome and would like to walk to their favorite pizzeria in Trastevere from the converted monastery where they are staying. They ask the woman at the front desk how to get there.

Jenny:  

Scusi, un’informazione, per favore.
skoo-oh-ze-ee oohn een-fohr-ahm-tyoh-neh pehreh
fah-veh-ree
Excuse me, we’d like some information, please.

Woman:  

Prego!
preh-goh
How can I help you?

Jenny:  

Quanto dista la pizzeria Ai marmi?
kwoahn-tyoh deez-tah lah peets-tseh-ree-ah ah
mah-rr-tyeh
How far is the pizzeria Ai marmi?

Woman:  

È vicino, potete andarci a piedi facilmente.
eh vee-chee-tyoh poh-teh-tyeh ahn-dahr-tyeh ah
pyeht-deh fah-cheel-mehn-tyeh
It’s close, you can get there easily on foot.
Woman: Quando uscite dall’albergo girate a destra, e all’incrocio girate ancora a destra. Proseguite in Viale Trastevere per all’incirca 100 metri e vedrete la pizzeria a sinistra.

Lucy: Scusi, non ho capito, può ripetere più lentamente, per favore?

Woman: Certo! Allora, esci dall’albergo e giri a destra. Va bene?

What to say when you don’t understand

Occasionally, maybe frequently, you may not understand the directions someone gives you. For those times, you need some useful polite expressions to ask the other person to repeat their directions.

✔ Come, scusi? (kah-meh skoooh-zee) (I beg your pardon?) (formal)

✔ Come, scusa? (kah-meh skoooh-zah) (I beg your pardon?) (informal)

✔ Mi scusi, non ho capito. (mee skoooh-zee nohn oh kah-pee-toh) (I’m sorry, I didn’t understand.)

✔ Può ripetere più lentamente, per favore? (pwoh ree-neh-teh-reh pyooh lehn-tahmehn-teh pehr fah-vooh-reh) (Can you please repeat it more slowly?)

When someone does you a favor — explaining the way or giving you directions — you probably want to thank him or her, and that’s the easiest task: Mille grazie! (mee-leh grah-tsee-eh) (Thank you very much!)
Chapter 6: Where Is the Colosseum? Asking Directions

Words to Know

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Italian</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>numero [m]</td>
<td>nooh-meh-roh</td>
<td>number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minuto [m]</td>
<td>mee-nooh-toh</td>
<td>minute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lentamente</td>
<td>lehn-tah-mehn-teh</td>
<td>slowly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>autobus [m]</td>
<td>ou-toh-boohs</td>
<td>bus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fermata [f]</td>
<td>fehr-mah-tah</td>
<td>bus stop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>macchina [f]</td>
<td>mahk-kee-nah</td>
<td>car</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Locations You May Be Looking For

When you’re searching for a specific place, these sentences can help you ask the right questions.

✓ Mi sa dire dov'è la stazione? (mee sah dee-reh doh-veh lah stah-tyoh-neh) (Can you tell me where the station is?)

✓ Devo andare all’aeroporto. Quale strada devo prendere? (deh-veh ahn-dah-reh ahl-lah-eh-roh-pohr-toh. kwah-leh strah-dah dey-veh prehn-deh-reh) (I have to go to the airport. What road should I take?)

✓ Sto cercando il teatroValle. (stoh cheh-rah-kahn-doh eel teh-ah-troh vahl-leh) (I’m looking for the Valle theater.)

✓ Dov’è il cinema Astoria, per favore? (doh-veh eel chee-neh-mah ahst-toh-ree-ah pehr fah-veh-reh) (Where is the Astoria cinema, please?)

✓ Come posso arrivare al Museo Etrusco? (koh-meh pohs-soh ahr-ree-veh-reh ahl mooh-zeh-oh eh-trooh-skoh) (How can I get to the Etruscan Museum?)

✓ La strada migliore per il centro, per favore? (lah strah-dah mee-lyoh-reh pehr eel chehn-troh pehr fah-veh-reh) (The best way to downtown, please?)

✓ Che chiesa è questa? (keh kyeh-zah eh kwehs-tah) (What church is this?)
Part II: Italian in Action

✓ Quale autobus va all’ospedale? (*kwah-leh ou-toh-boohs vah ahl-lohs-peh-dah-leh*) *(Which bus goes to the hospital?)*

✓ Come faccio ad arrivare all’università? (*koh-meh fach-choh ahd ahr-ree-vah-reh ahl-looh-nee-vehr-see-tah*) *(How can I get to the university?)*

**Talkin’ the Talk**

Peter wants to meet with a friend at a restaurant on via Torino. After getting off the bus, he asks a girl for directions.

Peter: *Scusa?*

  *skoooh-zah*

  Excuse me?

Girl: *Dimmi.*

  *deem-mee*

  Yes, can I help you?.

Peter: *Sto cercando via Torino.*

  *stoh chehr-kahn-doh vee-ah toh-ree-noh*

  I’m looking for via Torino.

Girl: *Via Torino!?*

  *vee-ah toh-ree-noh*

  Via Torino!?

Peter: *È qui vicino, no?*

  *eh kwee vee-chee-noh noh*

  It’s close to here, isn’t it?

Girl: *No, è lontanissimo.*

  *noh eh lohn-tah-nee-see-moh*

  No, it’s very far away.

Peter: *Oddio, ho sbagliato strada!*

  *ohd-dee-oh oh sbah-lyah-toh strah-dah*

  Oh, heavens, I went the wrong way!

Girl: *Devi prendere il 20 verso il centro.*

  *deh-vee prehn-deh-reh eel veehn-teh vehr-soh eel chehn-troh*

  You have to take the [bus number] 20 to the city center.
**Talkin’ the Talk**

Amy Jo is spending her junior year abroad in Florence, and living with a family near the Boboli Gardens. She is at the Piazza Duomo and has to meet her roommate Oona at the Uffizi Gallery, but she is a little disoriented. (See Figure 6-1.) She asks a young street musician how to get there.

Amy Jo: *Scusa, un’informazione, per favore. Sono un po’ persa.*

Excuse me, I need some information please: I’m a little lost.

Musician: *Dimmi!*

Shoot!

Amy Jo: *Come posso arrivare alla Galleria degli Uffizi?*

How can I get to the Uffizi Gallery?


It’s not far. Just go straight down Via dei Calzaiuoli until you get to the Piazza della Signoria. Look around when you get there.

Amy Jo: *Quanti minuti ci vogliono a piedi?*

How many minutes away is it on foot?

Musician: *Una decina.*

About 10.
Amy Jo: Grazie!

grah-tsee-eh

Thank you!
**Words to Know**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Italian</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a destra</td>
<td>ah dehs-trah</td>
<td>to the right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a sinistra</td>
<td>ah see-nees-trah</td>
<td>to the left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stazione [f]</td>
<td>stah-tsyoh-neh</td>
<td>station</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aeroporto [m]</td>
<td>ah-eh-roh-pohr-toh</td>
<td>airport</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teatro [m]</td>
<td>teh-ah-troh</td>
<td>theater</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cinema [m]</td>
<td>chee-neh-mah</td>
<td>cinema</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chiesa [f]</td>
<td>kyeh-zah</td>
<td>church</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ospedale [m]</td>
<td>ohs-peh-dah-leh</td>
<td>hospital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ponte (m)</td>
<td>pohn-teh</td>
<td>bridge</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Fun & Games 1

Take a look at Figure 6.1, the map of Florence’s city center, and provide the following information. See Appendix D for the answer key.

1. Palazzo Rucellai is in via _________________________.
2. Two bridges on this map are the __________________ and the ____________________.
3. The river that runs through Florence is called the ____________________.
4. A building that is attached to the Galleria degli Uffizi is the ____________________.
5. The Duomo sits on what two piazzas? ________________________________.
6. The roads running alongside the Arno have what word in common in their names? ________________________________
7. ___________________________ looks like the main piazza in Florence’s center.
In This Chapter
▶ Eating, Italian style
▶ Ordering at the bar
▶ Reserving a table and paying for your meal
▶ Getting three meals a day (at least)
▶ Shopping for food

You are probably familiar with a good amount of Italian food, such as spaghetti, ravioli, espresso, pizza, and pasta. Reading the sections in this chapter, you’ll find a lot of information about food and drink, from marketing to dining out. This chapter invites you to take a closer look at some of the variations that make Italian food so famous. “Buon appetito!” (bwohn ahp-peh-tee-toh)! (Enjoy!)

Eating, Italian Style

Italians have three main meals: la (prima) colazione (lah pree-mah koh-lah-tsyoh-neh) (breakfast), il pranzo (eel prahn-zoh) (lunch), and la cena (lah cheh-nah) (dinner). Uno spuntino (ooh-noh spoohn-tee-noh) (a snack) is taken when you’re hungry between main meals. La merenda (lah meh-rehn-dah) is snack-time that most children enjoy daily.

Drinking, Italian Style

This section talks about many sorts of drink, starting, obviously, with good Italian coffee, but covering also water, tea, and some spirits.
Expressing your love for espresso

You may have to order an espresso at your favorite coffee emporium back home, but in Italy, you get the same drink by asking the barista (bah-rees-tah) or il cameriere (eel kah-meh-ryeh-reh) (the waiter) for just un caffè (oohn kahl-feh) (a coffee).

Italy’s national drink: Espresso

Use the following terms exactly as you see them when ordering your coffee at the bar (caffè), and you will definitely be understood!

✓ Un Caffè Hag (oohn kahf-feh ahg) is a popular brand of instant decaffeinated coffee — every Italian knows it.
✓ Un caffè (kahf-feh): When you order caffè, you automatically get an espresso.
✓ Un caffè ristretto (ree-streh-toh): Very strong and concentrated espresso.
✓ Un caffè doppio (dohp-pyoh): Double espresso.
✓ Un caffè lungo (loohn-goh): Espresso with more water to make it less concentrated.
✓ Un caffè corretto (kohr-reht-toh): Espresso with a bit of cognac or other liquor.
✓ Un cappuccino (kahp-pooh-chee-noh): Espresso with frothed milk.
✓ Un caffè latte (kahf-feh-laht-teh): Espresso with plenty of milk.
✓ Un caffè macchiato (mahk-kyah-toh): Espresso with a touch of milk.
✓ Un latte macchiato (laht-teh mahk-kyah-toh): Hot milk with just a touch of espresso.

✓ Un caffè americano (kahf-feh ah-meh-ree-kah-neh): American coffee but stronger — this type of coffee has become a new fashion.
✓ Un caffè decaffeinato (deh-kahf-feh-ee-nah-toh): Decaffeinated coffee.
✓ Un caffè d’orzo (kahf-feh dohr-zoh): Coffee substitute made from germinated, dried, and roasted barley. You can have it strong or light.
✓ Caffè freddo/shakerato (kahf-feh frehd-doh/sheh-keh-rah-toh): Iced espresso shaken like a martini with cane syrup and ice

And here are some tips to help you order your Italian coffee.

✓ Super-size coffee portions don’t exist in Italy, and there is one size for a cappuccino and a caffelatte.
✓ Italians generally have their coffee while standing at the bar. The concept of coffee “to go” is one used primarily by tourists.
✓ Italians don’t drink cappuccino after breakfast (11ish at the latest)
✓ And beware! A latte is precisely what it says — milk. If you’re hankering for a glass of warm milk, say “Un bicchiere di latte tiepido (oohn bee-kyeh-reh dee laht-teh tyeh-pee-doh).
Chapter 7: Food Glorious Food — and Don’t Forget the Drink

In addition to *caffè*, you can enjoy a nice cup of *cioccolata calda* (chohk-kohl-lah-tah kahl-dah) (*hot cocoa*; cold chocolate milk doesn’t exist in Italy); *tè or tè freddo* (the frehd-doh) (*cold or iced tea*); *infusi* (een-fooh-zee) (*herbal teas*); with a *camomilla* (kah-moh-nee-lah), the perfect bed-time infusion; *succhi di frutta* (soohk-kee dee frooht-tah) (*fruit juices*); *spremute* (spreh-moo-tee) (*fresh-squeezed fruit juice*) and a wide selection of water (*ah-kuh*).

Not many Italians anywhere in Italy drink tap water. Most Italians drink *acqua minerale* (ah-kuh mee-neh-rah-leh) (*mineral water*), which can be *acqua gassata/gasata* (ah-kuh gas-sah-tah/gah-zah-tah) (*sparkling water*) also called *acqua frizzante* (ah-kuh freez-zahn-tah), or *acqua liscia or naturale* (ah-kuh lee-shah or nah-tooh-rahn-leh) (*still water*).

In *estate* (ehs-tah-teh) (*summer*), you will seek *ghiaccio* (gyahch-choh) (*ice*) wherever you go because most bars will part with only one small piece.

When you order a drink in Italy, you may need to specify how much you want, such as a whole bottle, a carafe, or just a glass. Use the following words:

✓ *Una bottiglia di...* (ooh-nah boht-tee-lyah dee) *(A bottle of...)*
✓ *Un bicchiere di...* (ohn beek-kyeh-reh dee) *(A glass of...)*
✓ *Una caraffa di...* (ooh-nah kah-rahf-dee) *(A carafe of...)*
✓ *Mezzo litro di...* (mehdz-oh lee-troh dee) *(half a liter of...)*
✓ *Un quartinodi...* (oohn kwahr-tee-noh-dee) *(a quarter of a liter)*

The last three terms are generally reserved for the house wine and beer.

When do you pay for your drinks in an Italian coffee bar? It depends. Normally, you have your coffee or whatever first and pay afterward. In little Italian bars, where just one or two people work behind the bar, you simply tell the cashier what you had and pay then. In bigger bars, and especially in large cities with many tourists, you first pay at the register, get a sales slip called a *scontrino* (skohn-tree-noh), and take that sales slip over to the *barista*.

**Beverages with even more of a kick**

Italy is also famous for its *vini* (vee-nee) (*wines*) and other fermented beverages, like the popular after-dinner drinks limoncello (lee-mohn-chehl-loh) and grappa (*grahp*-pah). Each region has its own many varieties of wine, so make certain you try some of the wines of the regions you visit.
Talkin’ the Talk

Friends eating a casual meal in a trattoria (traht-tohr-ee-ah) are ordering wine to have with their meal. They are in Tuscany and have ordered **pappa al pomodoro** (paeh-pah ahl poh-moh-doh-roh) (a Tuscan bread soup) and one **bistecca alla fiorentina** (bee-stehk-kah ahl-lah fyohr-ehn-tee-nah) (a huge steak) for two or more people.

Server: **Ecco la lista dei vini.**
ehk-koh lah lees-tah dey vee-neeh
Here’s the wine list.

Laura: **Che cosa ci consiglia?**
keh koh-za chee kohn-see-lyah
What do you recommend?

Server: **Abbiamo un ottimo Chianti della casa.**
ahb-byah-moh oohn oht-tee-moh kee-ahn-tee dehl-lah kah-sah
We have some great house Chianti.

Silvio: **Prendiamo un po’ di vino rosso, allora, con la bistecca.**
prehn-dyah-moh oohn poh dee vee-noh rohs-soh ahl-loh-rah kohn lah bee-stehk-kah
Let’s get some red wine, then, to have with our steak.

Laura: **Si, Quello della casa?**
see. kwehl-loh dehl-lah kah-sah
Yes. The house wine?

Silvio: **Perfetto!**
pehr-feht-toh
Perfect!

In Italy, the **aperitivo** (ah-pehr-ah-tee-voh), or before-dinner drink, is usually taken at the bar, either standing or seated at a **tavolino** (tah-voh-lee-noh) (small table). **Campari** and **prosecco** (a dry sparkling wine) are two major aperitivi, but you can also get alcohol-free aperitivi like **un Crodino** or **un Sanbitter**. The aperitivo is frequently served with a delectable assortment of free munchies.
Teresa and Laura are meeting around 7:00 p.m. before going out to dinner. They are at a table outdoors.

Server (Remo):  
**Ditemi!**
*dee-teh-mee*
How can I help you?

Teresa:  
**Io prendo un Bitter Campari con una fetta di arancia.**
*ee-oh prehn-doh oohn bee-tehr kahm-pah-ree kohn ooh-nah feht-tah dee ah-rahn-chah*
I’ll have a Campari with a slice of orange

Laura:  
**Per me un prosecco, grazie.**
*pehr meh oohn proh-sehk-koh grah-tsee-eh*
For me a prosecco, thank you.

Remo:  
**Altro?**
*a hl-troh*
Anything else?

Teresa:  
**Avete delle noccioline?**
*ah-veh-teh dehl-leh noch-choh-lee-neh*
Do you have any peanuts?

Remo:  
**No, mi dispiace, sono finite.**
*noh mee dees-pyah-cheh soh-noh fee-nee-tek*
I’m sorry, we’re all out.

You may prefer to get a birra (*beer-rah*) (*beer*) grande or piccola (*grahn*-deh or *peeh*-koh-lah), either in a bottiglia (*boht-lee-yah*) (*bottle*) or alla spina (*ahl-lah spee-nah*) (*draft beer*).

**The Start and End of Dining Out**

One of the more enjoyable (if potentially fattening) ways to explore a new culture is to sample the native cuisine. People interested in Italian cuisine are lucky — Italian-style restaurants are plentiful in North America. You can eat in a pizza joint, or enjoy a traditional, multi-course meal in a classy...
restaurant. And, if you’re fortunate enough to actually travel to Italy, your taste buds are in for a real treat! Just be aware that pizza and pasta are different in Italy than in the United States.

This section discusses the beginning and endings of meals — from making reservations to paying the tab.

Making reservations

Unless you’re going to a pizzeria or the **trattoria** (traht-toh-ree-ah) *(little restaurant)* down the street, you may need to reserve a table in a nice Italian restaurant.

**Talkin’ the Talk**

Mr. Di Leo calls for reservations at his favorite restaurant.

**Waiter:** *Pronto. Ristorante Roma.*  
prohn-toh rees-toh-rahn-teh roh-mah  
Hello! Roma Restaurant.

**Sig. Di Leo:** *Buonasera. Vorrei prenotare un tavolo.*  
bwoh-nah-seh-rah vohr-rey preh-noh-tah-reh oohn  
tah-voeh-loh  
Good evening! I would like to reserve a table.

**Waiter:** *Per stasera?*  
pehr stah-seh-rah  
For this evening?

**Sig. Di Leo:** *No, per domani.*  
noh pehr doh-mah-nee  
No, for tomorrow.

**Waiter:** *Per quante persone?*  
pehr kwahn-teh pehr-soh-neh  
For how many people?

**Sig. Di Leo:** *Per due.*  
pehr dooh-eh  
For two.

**Waiter:** *A che ora?*  
ah keh oh-rah  
At what time?
Chapter 7: Food Glorious Food — and Don’t Forget the Drink

Sig. Di Leo: Alle nove.
ahl-leh noh-veh
At nine.

Waiter: A che nome?
ah keh noh-meh
In whose name?

Sig. Di Leo: Di Leo.
dee leh-oh
Di Leo.

---

**Words to Know**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Italian</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tavolo [m]</td>
<td>tah-voh-loh</td>
<td>table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cameriere [m]</td>
<td>kah-meh-ryeh-reh</td>
<td>waiter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>domani [m]</td>
<td>doh-mah-nee</td>
<td>tomorrow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prenotazione [f]</td>
<td>preh-noh-tsyoh-neh</td>
<td>reservation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stasera [f]</td>
<td>stah-seh-rah</td>
<td>this evening</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Paying for your meal**

You don’t need to use cash in all restaurants. There are many, mostly higher-end ones, where you can pay with your credit card, too.

No one tips in Italy; truly, not even in an elegant restaurant. You always pay pane e coperto, (pah-neh eh koh-pehr-toh), a cover or service charge, just to sit down,

When you want the bill il conto (eel kohn-toh) you ask the server “to bring” it to you. She will never bring it to you unless you ask for it. Use the verbs portare (pohr-tah-reh) or fare (fah-reh) and say:

**Ci porta/fa il conto, per favore?** (chee pohr-tah eel kohn-toh perh fah-voh-reh) *(Will you please bring us the bill?)* *(formal)*

Or simply

**Il conto, per favore!** (eel kohn-toh pehr fah-voh-reh) *(The bill please.)*
Having Breakfast

Your first meal of the day is always **la prima colazione** (lah pree-mah koh-lah-tyoh-neh) (**breakfast**).

Some Italians begin the day with **un caffè** (ohn kahl-fee) (**espresso**) at home, but many stop for breakfast in **un bar** (ohn bahr) on their way to work. Breakfast consists of coffee and **una pasta** (ooh-nah pahs-tah) (**a pastry**), which can be **salata** (sah-lah-tah) (**savory**), **semplice** (sehm-plie-cheh) (**plain**) or filled with **marmellata** (mahr-mehl-tah-tah) (**jam**), **crema** (kreh-mah) (**custard**), or **cioccolato** (chohk-koh-lah-toh) (**chocolate**).

**Talkin’ the Talk**

The man behind the counter in a coffee bar in Italy is called **il barista** (eel bah-rees-tah) (**the barman**).

**Barista:**  
Buongiorno!  
bwohn-joehr-noh  
Good morning!

**Sig. Zampieri:**  
Buongiorno! Un caffè e una pasta alla crema per favore.  
bwohn-joehr-noh oohn kahl-fee eh ooh-nah pahs-tah ahl-lah kreh-mah pehr fah-voh-reh  
Good morning! One espresso and a custard pastry please.

**Barista:**  
Qualcos’altro?  
qwahl-kohs-ahl-troh  
Anything else?
Eating Lunch

Italians do *il pranzo* (eel *prahn*-zoh) lunch differently from many other countries. The traditional courses are:

- **antipasto** (ahn-tee-pahs-toh) (*appetizer*): Usually served hot and cold, *antipasti* vary from region to region.
- **primo piatto** (pree-moh pyaht-toh) (*first course*): Although this comes after the antipasto, it is still called a first course: The *primo* consists of all kinds of *pasta* (pahs-tah) (*pasta*), *risotto* (ree-zoht-toh) (*risotto*), or *minestra* (mee-nehs-trah) (*soup*).
- **il secondo** (eel seh-kohn-doh) (*the second course*): This generally consists of *carne* (kahr-neh) (*meat*) or *pesce* (peh-sheh) (*fish*), prepared in a wide variety of ways.
- **contorni** (kohn-tohr-nee) (*side dishes*): Vegetables may be ordered separately.
- **il dolce** (eel dohl-cheh) (*the dessert*): Last, but certainly not least, dessert may be *un dolce* (oohn dohl-cheh) (*a sweet*), *frutta fresca* (froot-tah frehs-kah) (*fresh fruit*), or *una macedonia* (ooh-nah mah-chen-doh-nee-ah) (*fruit salad*).

Figure 7-1 shows a typical Italian lunch menu.

The verb *prendere* (prehn-deh-reh) (literally: to take, but here, to have) is the verb to use when talking about food and drinks.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conjugation</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>io prendo</td>
<td>ee-oh prehn-doh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu prendi</td>
<td>tooh prehn-deh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lui/lei prende</td>
<td>looh-ee/ley prehn-deh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noi prendiamo</td>
<td>noi prehn-dee-ah-moh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voi prendete</td>
<td>voi prehn-deh-teh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loro prendono</td>
<td>loh-roh prehn-doh-noh</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Pasta usually means durum wheat made with flour and water. The different types include: *spaghetti* (spah-geht-tee) (*spaghetti*), *bucatini* (booh-kah-tee-nee) (thick, tube-like *spaghetti*), *penne* (pehn-neh) (short, cylinder-shaped pasta shaped to a point at each end), *fusilli* (fooh-zeel-lee) (spiral-shaped pasta), *rigatoni* (ree-gah-toh-nee) (short, cylinder-shaped, and grooved pasta), and so on.

On the other hand, *pasta fresca* (pahs-tah frehs-kah) (*fresh pasta*) means *pasta all'uovo* (pahs-tah ahl-lwoh-voeh) (*egg noodles*), also called *pasta fatta in casa* (pahs-tah fah-tah een kah-sah) (*home made pasta*). These are *tagliatelle* (tah-lyah-tehl-leh) (flat noodles), *fettuccine* (feht-toohch-chee-neh) (narrow, flat noodles), and *tonnarelli* (tohn-nah-rehl-lee) (tubular noodles), to mention just a few.

Incidentally, when you have a bite of pasta, you should make sure that it is *al dente* (ahl dehn-teh) (Literally: *to the tooth*. It means that the pasta is a little hard so that you really need to use your teeth!)
The following conjugation shows you the polite form of the verb volere (voh-leh-reh) (to want). You have another verb for when you’re being polite: “to like.” Italian, however, uses a conditional to express politeness.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conjugation</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>io vorrei</td>
<td>ee-oh vohr-ray</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu vorresti</td>
<td>too vohr-rehs-tee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lui/lei vorrebbe</td>
<td>loo-ee/ley vohr-rehb-beh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noi vorremmo</td>
<td>noi vohr-rehm-moh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voi vorreste</td>
<td>voi vohr-rehs-teh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loro vorrebbero</td>
<td>loh-roh vohr-rehb-beh-roh</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Enjoying Dinner

Italians often have la cena (lah cheh-nah) (supper) at home, but they also eat out. In this chapter, you are also introduced to the different types of eateries available to you. Supper time varies throughout the peninsula; for example, restaurants in Venice stop serving dinner earlier than those in Rome, where you can go as late as 9 or 10 p.m.
Talkin’ the Talk

A group of friends gather at a local pizzeria for dinner. Their exchanges are quite informal.

Sandra: Che cosa prendiamo?
keh koh-zah prehn-dee-ah-moh
What should we have?

Laura: Non lo so! Guardiamo il menù.
nohn loh soh gwahr-dee-ah-moh eel meh-nooh
I don’t know! Let’s look at the menu.

Silvio: Avete fame?
ah-veh-teh fah-meh
Are you hungry?

Laura: Ho fame; prendo una pizza margherita.
oh fah-meh prehn-doh ooh-nah peet-tsah
mahr-gehrr-ee-tah
I’m hungry; I’m getting a pizza margherita.

Sandra: Io non tanto.
ee-oh nohn tahn-toh
I’m not so hungry.

Silvio: Allora cosa prendi Sandra?
ahl-loh-rah koh-zah prehn-dee sahn-drah
So what are you going to have, Sandra?

Sandra: Vorrei qualcosa di leggero.
voehr-rey kwahl-koh-zah dee lehj-jeh-roh
I’d like something light.

Un’insalatona.
onn-een-sah-lah-toh-nah
A big salad.

Silvio: Poco originale . . .
pohk-koh oh-ree-jee-nah-leh
Kind of boring . . .

Most Italian pizzerias have a wide range of pizzas. They are individual servings. You can also get pasta and salads there, and afterwards a dessert.
You have certainly heard of Italian gelato (jeh-lah-toh) (ice cream). Go for the gelato artigianale (jeh-lah-tee ahr-tee-jah-nah-lee) (homemade ice cream — made in a gelateria (jeh-lah-teh-ree-ah). You can have it in a cono (koh-noh) (cone) or a coppetta (kohp-pee-tah) (cup). You also have to decide on the gusto (goohs-toh) (flavor) and size, which usually goes according to euros or according to palline (pahl-lee-neh) (scoops).

Talkin’ the Talk

Laura and Silvio stop for some ice cream.

Server: Prego?
preh-goh
What would you like?

Laura: Due coni, per favore.
dooh-eh koh-neeh pehr fah-vooh-reh
Two ice cream cones, please.

Server: Da quanto?
dah kwahn-toh
What size?

Silvio: Uno da due euro, e l’altro da 1 euro e 50.
oohn-oh dah dooh-eh eh-ooh-roh eh lahl-troh
dah oohn eh-ooh-roh eh cheen-qwahn-tah
One two-euro size and one for 1½ euros.

Server: Che gusti?
keh goohs-tee
Which flavors?

Silvio: Fragola e limone.
frah-goh-lah eh lee-moh-neh
Strawberry and lemon.

Server: Prego. E Lei?
preh-goh eh ley
Here you are. And you?

Laura: Crema, cioccolato, coco, e noce.
kreh-mah chohk-koh-lah-toh kohk-koh eh noh-cheh
Custard, chocolate, coconut, and walnut.
Silvio: 3 euro e 50?
treh eh-oooh-roh eh cheen-qwahn-tah
Three and a half euros?

Server: Si, grazie. Ecco lo scontrino.
See, grats-ee-eh ehk-koh loh skohn-tree-noh
Yes, thanks. Here’s the receipt.

In a gelateria, you can also find frullati (froohl-tee) (mixed fruit juice), frappé (frahp-pee) (which can be a fruit milk shake or a frozen fruit shake), and lo yogurt (frozen yogurt).

Shopping for Food

Many people do their marketing in a supermercato (sooh-pehr-mehr-kah-toh) (supermarket) even if there are other places to get it. But most Italian cities have specialty shops, starting with the alimentari (ah-lee-mehn-tah-ree), where you can get many items . . . everything from latte (laht-tee) (milk) to toilet paper (kahr-tah ee-jeh-nee-kah) carta igienica. These shops, with their specific selection of goods, provide the personal attention often lacking in supermarkets.

Al macellaio (ahl mah-chehl-lahy-oh) (at the butcher’s)

From the butcher shop you might select items like the following:

✓ agnello (ah-nyehl-loh) (lamb)
✓ coniglio (koh-nee-lyoh) (rabbit)
✓ maiale (mah-yah-leh) (pork)
✓ manzo (mahn-zoh) (beef)
✓ pollo (pohl-loh) (chicken)
✓ vitello (vee-tehl-loh) (veal)
✓ bistecca (bees-tehk-kah) (steak)
Chapter 7: Food Glorious Food — and Don’t Forget the Drink

**Pesce (fish) (peh-sheh)**

Not all restaurants serve fresh fish. To be sure, the better restaurants offer fresh (not frozen) fish, and this is usually listed as a special of the day. Getting fresh fish certainly depends on the region, such as if you’re close to the sea or not. If you are in doubt about the fish a restaurant offers, it’s better to ask someone local for a recommendation. Better safe than sorry!

*Dove si può mangiare il pesce fresco? (doh-veh see pwoh mahn-jah-reh eel peh-sheh frehs-koh) (Where can we eat fresh fish?)*

Some common types of fish, depending on the region, include:

- **acciughe fresche** (ahch-chooh-geh frehs-keh) (*fresh anchovies*)
- **calamari** (kah-lah-mah-ree) (*squid*)
- **seppia** (sehp-pee-ah) (*cuttlefish*)
- **branzino** (brahn-zee-noh) (*sea bass*)
- **orata** (oh-rah-tah) (*sea bream*)
- **merluzzo** (mehr-loot-tsoh) (*cod*)
- **polpo/polipo** (pohl-poh poh-lee-poh) (*octopus*)
- **pesce spada** (peh-sheh spah-dah) (*swordfish*)
- **sogliola** (soh-lyoh-lah) (*sole*)
- **spigola** (spee-goh-lah) (*snapper*)
- **tonno fresco** (tohn-noh frehs-koh) (*fresh tuna*)
- **frutti di mare** (frooht-tee dee mah-reh) (*shell fish*)
- **cozze** (koht-tseh) (*mussels*)
- **vongole** (voht-goh-leh) (*clams*)
- **gamberetti** (gahm-beh-reht-tee) (*small shrimp*)
- **gamberi** (gahm-beh-ree) (*prawns*)

Common simple preparations are **al forno** (ahl-for-noh) (*baked*), **alla griglia** (ahl-lah greel-yah) (*grilled*), and **in padella** (een pah-dehl-lah) (*in the skillet*).
At the panetteria (breadshop)

In a panetteria (pah-neht-tee-ah) (breadshop), you can try all sorts of different kinds of pane (pah-neh) (bread), as well as some oven-baked dolci (dohl-chee) (sweets).

In some Italian breadshops, you can also find pizza al taglio (peet-tsah ahl tah-lyoh) (slices of pizza) and focaccia (foh-ka-chah), and pay according to weight.

Talkin’ the Talk

Sig.ra Belli: Ha del pane biologico? ah dehl pah-neh bee-oh-loh-jee-koh  Do you have any organic bread?

Baker: Ho dei panini, o questo tipo Matera, tutti cotti nel forno a legna. oh dey pah-nee-nee oh kwehs-toh tee-poh mah-teh-rah tooht-tee kot-tee nehl foehr-noh ah lehn-yah  I have these rolls or this Matera-style one all baked in our wood-burning oven.

Aig.ra Belli Mi dà quello rustico per favore. mee dah kwehl-loh rooh-stee-koh peh fah-voh-reh I’ll take that hard-crust one please.

Quant’è? kwahhn-teh  How much is it?

Baker: 3 euro e 50 centesimi. treh eh-ooh-roh eh cheen-qwahn-tah chehn-tehz-ee-mee  Three euros and 50 cents.

Sig.ra Belli Grazie e arrivederla. grats-ee-eh eh ahr-ree-veh-dehr-lah  Thank you, and good-bye.
Chapter 7: Food Glorious Food — and Don’t Forget the Drink

Baker: Desidera?
to another deh-zee-deh-rah
customer: What would you like?

Paolo: Un pezzo di pizza al pomodoro.
oohn peht-tsoh dee peet-tsah ahl poh-moh-doh-rah
A piece of pizza with tomatoes.

Baker: Così va bene?
koh-zee vah beh-neh
Is this okay?

Paolo Un po’ più grande, per favore.
oohn poh pyooh grahn-deh pehr fah-voh-reh
A little bigger please.

Baker Così?
koh-zee
Like this?

Items are priced according to weight, usually by chilo (kee-loh) (kilo). You know that when you hear un etto (oohn eht-toh), it means 100 grams. Mezz’etto (meht-tseht-toh) is 50 grams, because mezzo (meht-tsoh) means “half.” Likewise, a mezzo chilo (meht-tsoh kee-loh) is half a kilo. Meat, fish, fruits, cheese, cold cuts and vegetables are sold by weight.

Table 7-1 lists common fruits and vegetables that you might find at an open-air farmer’s market.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Italian/Plural</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>albicocca/albicocche [f]</td>
<td>ahl-bee-kohk-kah/-keh</td>
<td>apricot/s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ananas [m]</td>
<td>ah-nah-nahs</td>
<td>pineapple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arancia/arance [f]</td>
<td>ah-rahn-chah/-cheh</td>
<td>orange/s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>asparago/i [m]</td>
<td>ah-spah-rah-goh/-jee</td>
<td>asparagus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>banana/e [f]</td>
<td>bah-nah-nah/-neh</td>
<td>banana/s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>broccoli [m]</td>
<td>brohk-koh-lee</td>
<td>broccoli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carota/e [f]</td>
<td>kah-roh-tah/-teh</td>
<td>carrot/s</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
### Table 7-1 (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Italian/Plural</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cavolo/i [m]</td>
<td>kah-voh-loh/-lee</td>
<td>cabbage/s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ciliegia/e [f]</td>
<td>chee-lee-eh-jah/-jeh</td>
<td>cherry/cherries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cocomero/i [m]</td>
<td>koh-koh-meh-roh/-ree</td>
<td>watermelon/s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fico/fichi [m]</td>
<td>fee-koh/-kee</td>
<td>fig/s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fragola/e [f]</td>
<td>frah-goh-lah/-leh</td>
<td>strawberry/strawberries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fungo/funghi [m]</td>
<td>fohn-goh/-gee</td>
<td>mushroom/s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>limone/i [m]</td>
<td>lee-moh-neh/-nee</td>
<td>lemon/s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mela/e [f]</td>
<td>meh-lah/-leh</td>
<td>apple/s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>melanzana/e [f]</td>
<td>meh-lahn-zah-neh/-neh</td>
<td>eggplant/s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>melone/i [m]</td>
<td>meh-loh-neh/-nee</td>
<td>melon/s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peperone/i [m]</td>
<td>peh-peh-roh-neh/-nee</td>
<td>pepper/s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pera/e [f]</td>
<td>peh-rah/-reh</td>
<td>pear/s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pesca/pesche [f]</td>
<td>peh-sah/-keh</td>
<td>peach/es</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pomodoro/i [m]</td>
<td>poh-moh-doh-roh/-ree</td>
<td>tomato/es</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pompelmo/i [m]</td>
<td>pohm-pehl-moh/-mee</td>
<td>grapefruit/s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prugna/e [f]</td>
<td>prooh-nyah/-nyeh</td>
<td>plum/s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spinaci [m]</td>
<td>spee-nah-chee</td>
<td>spinach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uva [f]</td>
<td>ooh-vah</td>
<td>grapes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zucchino/i [f/m]</td>
<td>dzoohk-kee-noh/-nee</td>
<td>zucchini</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## The typical Italian market

You may recognize typical Italian markets from a vacation or maybe from watching a film. Some of them seem to be made exclusively for tourists, but Italians themselves use them. You may think that haggling and bargaining are common at Italian markets, but this is not true. You can certainly try it with a leather jacket at the market in a big city like Florence, but it’s better to leave it alone when buying food items.
We talk a lot about food in this chapter. To reward ourselves at the end, we allow ourselves a really good fruit shake. Fill in the Italian for the following various fruits. See Appendix D for the answer key. Have fun!

1. pineapple _ _ _ _ _ 
2. cherry _ _ _ _ _ _ 
3. grape _ _ _ 
4. pear _ _ _ 
5. watermelon _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ 
6. strawberry _ _ _ _ _ _ 

Fun & Games
Chapter 8
Shopping, Italian Style

In This Chapter
▶ Shopping at department stores and boutiques
▶ Getting the right size
▶ Finding colors, materials, and accessories to suit you
▶ Trying on shoes

Italy is famous throughout the world for its fashion, *la moda* (lah *moh*-dah), as well as for its *stilisti* (stee-leeetee) (*designers*)—such as *Armani* (ahr-*mah*-nee) and *Valentino* (vah-lehn-tee-noh). You might suddenly feel inspired to shop, and what better place to shop than in Italy! In Italian, a famous brand is called *la griffe* (lah *greef*) (a French word) or *la firma* (lah *feer*-mah) that means literally “the signature.” So to say that a good is “signed” (designed) by a famous stylist we say that it is *griffato* (greet-fah-toh) or *firmato* (feer-mah-toh)—“signed.”

Clothing Yourself

Shopping can be an informative and fun way to learn about a culture because of the ways that colors and fabrics differ. For example, you can always tell what color is in fashion and how careful Italians are about wearing ironed clothes just by walking down a city street. In Italy, you can explore lots of boutiques and designer shops, as well as numerous department stores.

Deciding between department stores and boutiques

North Americans have access to huge *centri commerciali* (chehn-tree kohm-mehr-chah-lee) (*shopping malls*), where you really can find everything. In Italy, people shop in *grandi magazzini* (grahn-deeh mah-gaht-dzee-nee) (*department stores*), which are tiny compared to American ones. The biggest Italian department stores are *Coin* (koh-ehn), *Upim* (oooh-peem), and *Rinascente* (ree-nah-neh-ehn-teh). All three carry a variety of items; however,
many Italians prefer to shop in smaller, privately owned stores where service is key (and where there is little to no browsing and self-service).

Incidentally, what’s shopping in Italian? They say **fare la spesa** (*fah-reh la speh-zah*) when you buy food, and **fare spese** and **fare lo shopping** (*fah-reh loh shohlp-peeng*) for everything else. Good news is that you only have to conjugate the verb **fare**. (See Chapter 2 and Appendix A for this verb conjugated).

In some places, you will notice some elementary signs — like the one over the door reading **uscita di sicurezza** (*ooh-shhee-tah dee see-kooh-reht-tsah*) (*emergency exit*) — can be very useful. Some of these are:

✓ **entrata** (*ehn-trah-tah*) (*entrance*)
✓ **uscita** (*ooh-shhee-tah*) (*exit*)
✓ **spingere** (*speen-jeh-reh*) (*to push*)
✓ **tirare** (*tee-rah-reh*) (*to pull*)
✓ **orario di apertura** (*oh-rah-ree-oh deh-ehr-tooh-rah*) (*business hours*)
✓ **aperto** (*ah-ehr-toh*) (*open*)
✓ **chiuso** (*kyooh-zoh*) (*closed*)
✓ **la scala mobile** (*lah skah-laah moh-beh-leh*) (*escalator*)
✓ **l’ascensore** (*lah shehn-soh-reh*) (*elevator*)
✓ **la cassa** (*lah kahs-sah*) (*cash register*)

Italian stores offer a great variety of products and still maintain an air of typical Italian style. Prices are clearly labeled in euros. Often, during **saldi** (*sahl-dee*) and **svendite** (*zvehn-deh-teh*) (*sales*), the **il prezzo** (*eel preht-tsoh*) (*price*) on the label is already reduced, but you may find tags reading **saldi alla cassa** (*sahl-dee ah-uhh kahs-sah*) (*reduction at the cash register*).

Following are some signs pointing to the various **reparti** (*reh-pahr-tee*) (*departments*) or individual boutiques.

✓ **abbigliamento da donna/ da uomo** (*ahb-bee-lyah-mehn-toh dah dohn-nah/woh-moh*) (*women’s/men’s wear*)
✓ **intimo donna** (*een-tee-moh dohn-nah*) (*ladies’ intimate apparel*)
✓ **intimo uomo** (*een-tee-moh woh-moh*) (*men’s intimate apparel*)
✓ **accessori** (*ahch-chehs-soh-ree*) (*accessories*)
✓ **profumeria** (*proh-fooh-meh-ree-ah*) (*perfumery; here you can buy shampoo, barrettes, creams, makeup, and other related items*).
✓ **casalinghi** (*kah-sah-leen-gee*) (*housewares*)
✓ **biancheria per la casa** (*byahn-keh-ree-ah pehr lah kah-sah*) (*household linens and towels*)
Talkin’ the Talk

Here, a clerk is kept busy giving directions for various departments.

Sig.ra Verdi: Sto cercando l’abbigliamento da bambino.
sto chehr-kahn-doh lahb-bee-lyah-mehn-toh
dah bahm-bee-noh
I’m looking for children’s wear.

Clerk: Al secondo piano.
ahl seh-kohn-doh pyah-noh
On the second floor.

Sig. Marchi: Dove devo andare per ritirare un paio di pantaloni?
doh-veh deh-voh ahn-dah-reh pehr ree-tee-rah-reh
ohn pah-yoh dee pahn-tah-loh-nee
Where should I go to pick up a pair of trousers?

Clerk: Deve rivolgersi al commesso del reparto uomo.
deh-veh ree-voohl-jehr-see ahl kohm-mehs-soh dehl
reh-pahr-toh woh-moh
You need to see the clerk in the men’s department.

Anna: Dove sono i camerini, per favore?
doh-veh soh-noh ee kah-meh-ree-nee pehr
fah-voohl-reh
Where are the fitting rooms, please?

Clerk: Vede l’uscita di sicurezza? I camerini sono sulla sinistra.
veh-deh looh-shee-tah dee see-kooh-reht-tsah ee
kah-meh-ree-nee soh-noh soohl-lah see-nee-tah
Do you see the emergency exit there? The fitting
rooms are to the left.

Avere bisogno di (ah-veh-reh bee-zoh-nyoh dee) (to need) is a frequent
expression in Italian. You use it in any kind of store. See Chapter 2 and
Appendix A for the common verb avere (to have). The form that you use
as a speaker goes like this:

Ho bisogno di . . . (oh bee-zoh-nyoh dee) (I need . . .)

When you’re in a store and have a question or need some advice, you turn to
la commessa [f] (lah kohm-mehs-sah) or il commesso [m] (eel kohm-mehs-soh)
(the sales clerk) and say, Mi può aiutare, per favore (mee pwoh ah-yoohl-
tah-reh pehr fah-voohl-reh) (Can you help me, please?) Of course, if you’re just
looking and a salesperson asks, “Desidera?” (deh-zee-deh-rah) (Can I be of
help? Can I help you?), you can answer, “Posso dare un’occhiata?” (pohs-soh
dah-reh oohn-ohk-kyah-tah) (Is it all right if I just look?)
# Words to Know

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Italian Word</th>
<th>English Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vestiti [m]</td>
<td>clothes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abito [m]</td>
<td>suit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>camicetta [f]</td>
<td>blouse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>camicia [f]</td>
<td>shirt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cappotto [m]</td>
<td>coat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>completo [m]</td>
<td>outfit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>costume da</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bagno [m]</td>
<td>bathing suit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>giacca [f]</td>
<td>jacket; sports jacket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gonna [f]</td>
<td>skirt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impermeabile [m]</td>
<td>raincoat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jeans [m]</td>
<td>jeans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maglia [f]</td>
<td>sweater</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maglietta [f];</td>
<td>T-shirt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pantaloni [m]</td>
<td>pants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tailleur [m]</td>
<td>skirt or pants and jacket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vestito [m]</td>
<td>dress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>piccolo</td>
<td>small</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grande</td>
<td>large</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Sizing up Italian sizes

You know the problem: Whenever you go to another country, and this is particularly true in Europe, the sizes — called taglie (tah-lyeh) or misure (mee-zooch-reh) in Italy — change and you never know which one corresponds to yours. Table 8-1 helps you with this problem by giving you the most common sizes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 8-1 Clothing Sizes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Italian Size</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Women's dress sizes</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Men's suit sizes</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In Italy you won’t have any difficulties with sizes like S, M, L, and XL because they are used the same way: S for small, M for medium, L for large, and XL for extra large. Beware, though, that an Italian L seems to correspond to a North American S.

Talkin’ the Talk

Giovanna has found the skirt she’s been looking for. She asks the saleswoman if she can try it on.

Giovanna: **Posso provare questa gonna?**
poohs-soh proh-vah-reh kwehhs-tah gohn-nah
May I try on this skirt?

Saleswoman: **Certo. Che taglia porta?**
chehr-toh keh tah-lyeh pohr-tah
Sure. What size do you wear?
Part II: Italian in Action

Giovanna: La quarantadue. 
lah kwah-rahnt-doo-eh 
Forty-two.

Saleswoman: Forse è un po’ piccola. 
fohr-seh eh oohn poh peek-koh-lah 
Perhaps it’s a little bit too small.

Giovanna: Me la provo. 
meh lah proh-voh 
I’ll try it on.

Giovanna returns from the dressing room.

Saleswoman: Va bene? 
vah beh-neh 
Does it fit?

Giovanna: È troppo stretta. Ha una taglia più grande? 
eh trohp-poh streht-tah ah ooh-nah tah-lyah pyooh grahn-deh 
It’s too tight. Do you have it in a larger size?

Saleswoman: Nella sua taglia solo blu. 
nehl-lah sooh-ah tah-lyah soh-loh blooh 
In your size, only in blue.

Talking definitely and indefinitely

When you’re shopping for something, even if you’re looking for something as specific as a blue skirt, you don’t say, “I’m looking for the blue skirt.” Instead, you say that you’re looking for a blue skirt, where the a is an indefinite article showing that you don’t have a specific object in mind.

You use exactly the same construction in Italian: I’m looking for a blue skirt becomes “Sto cercando una gonna blu.” (stoh cher-kahn-doh ooh-nah gohn-nah blooh), and una here is your indefinite article: the indefinite articles correspond to the English a and an. In Italian the article has to match the gender of the word: Feminine words, which usually end with -a, use una and un’ and masculine words (which usually end with o) use un or uno.
Coloring your words

Of course, knowing some colori (koh-loh-ree) (colors) is important. We want to make life a little easier for you, so we put the most common colors in Table 8-2. Some colors agree in number and gender, some agree only in number, and some are invariable! The following table is organized accordingly (with the first set agreeing in number and gender).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 8-2</th>
<th>Colors</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Italian</strong></td>
<td><strong>Pronunciation</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color adjectives that agree in number and gender (o/a/i/e/i)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rosso</td>
<td>rohs-soh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>giallo</td>
<td>jahl-loh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>azzurro</td>
<td>ahd-dzoohr-roh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bianco</td>
<td>byahn-koh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grigio</td>
<td>gree-joh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nero</td>
<td>neh-roh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color adjectives that agree only in number (e/i)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verde</td>
<td>vehr-deh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color adjectives that never change, invariable!</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>marrone</td>
<td>mahr-roh-neh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rosa</td>
<td>roh-zah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beige</td>
<td>beh-jeh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blu</td>
<td>blooh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arancione</td>
<td>ah-rahn-choh-neh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>viola</td>
<td>vee-oh-lah</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Talkin’ the Talk

Matteo is looking for a new suit for the summer.

Salesman: La posso aiutare?
   lah pohs-soh ah-yooh-tah-reh
   *May I help you?*
Part II: Italian in Action

Matteo:  
Sil Cerco una giacca sportiva blu . . .
see chehr-koh ooh-nah jak-kah spoehr-tee-vah blooh
Yes. I’m looking for a casual blue jacket . . .

. . . con i pantaloni bianchi di lino
kohn ee pahn-tah-loh-nee biahn-kee dee lee-noh
. . . and also some white linen pants.

Salesman:  
Benissimo. Ecco . . . Provi questi
behn-ees-see-moh ehk-koh proh-vee kwehs-tee
Very well. Here you are . . . try these on.

Matteo returns with a smile on his face.

Salesman:  
Va bene?
vhah beh-neh
Okay?

Matteo:  
Si, mi vanno bene. Li prendo.
see mee vahn-noh beh-neh lee prehn-doh
Yes, they fit me well. I’ll take them.

Words to Know

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>camoscio</td>
<td>kah-moh-shoh</td>
<td>suede</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cotone</td>
<td>koh-toh-neh</td>
<td>cotton</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fodera</td>
<td>foh-deh-rah</td>
<td>lining</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lana</td>
<td>lah-nah</td>
<td>wool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lino</td>
<td>lee-noh</td>
<td>linen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pelle</td>
<td>pehl-leh</td>
<td>leather</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seta</td>
<td>seh-tah</td>
<td>silk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>velluto</td>
<td>vehl-looh-toh</td>
<td>velvet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>viscosa</td>
<td>vees-koh-zah</td>
<td>rayon</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Accessorizing**

Of course, you want to complement your outfit with beautiful accessorì (ahch-chehs-soh-ree) (*accessories*) to give it that final touch. We list some of them to give you an impression of the variety:

- berretto (beh-reht-toh) (*cap*)
- borsa (bohr-sah) (*bag*)
- calze (kahl-tseh) (*stockings*)
- cappello (kahp-pehl-loh) (*hat*)
- cintura (cheen-too-rah) (*belt*)
- collant (kohl-lahn) (*tights/pantyhose*)
- cravatta (krah-vaht-tah) (*tie*)
- guanti (gwahn-tee) (*gloves*)
- ombrello (ohm-brehl-loh) (*umbrella*)
- sciarpa (shahr-pah) (*scarf*)

If you want to go shopping and ask for one of these accessories, you could do it like this:

**Talkin’ the Talk**

Giovanni wants to buy a scarf for his wife. He asks the sales clerk for help.

**Giovanni:** Vorrei una sciarpa rossa.
voehr-ray ooh-nah shahr-pah rohs-sah
*I’d like a red scarf.*

**Sales clerk:** Ne abbiamo una bellissima, di cachemire.
neh ahb-bee-ah-moh ooh-nah behl-lees-see-mah
dee kahsh-meer
*We have a very beautiful cashmere one.*

È in saldo.
eh een sahl-doh
*It’s on sale.*

**Giovanni:** Sono scontati questi guanti viola?
soh-noh skohn-tah-tee kwehs-tee gwahn-tee
vee-oh-lah
*Are these purple gloves on sale?*
Sales clerk: Si.
see
Yes.

Stepping out in style

Oh yes, this is important stuff. You know that Italy is the leader in the shoe industry. You won’t believe what good taste Italians have in scarpe (skahr-peh) (shoes). You may just find the shoes of your dreams, whether they be a regular paio di scarpe (pah-yoh dee skahr-peh) (pair of shoes), pantofole (pahn-toh-toh-leh) (slippers), sandali (sahn-dah-lee) (sandals), or stivali (stee-vah-lee) (boots).

When you try on footwear, some words you may need to use are:

✓ stretta/e/o/i (streht-tah/teh/toh/tee) (tight)
✓ larga/ghe/go/ghi (lahr-gah/geh/goh/gee) (loose)
✓ corta/e/o/i (kohr-tah/theh/toh/tee) (short)
✓ lunga/ghe/go/ghi (loohn-gah/geh/goh/gee) (long)

You may notice that Italian uses numero (nooh-meh-roh) (number) to talk about shoes, but taglia (tah-lyah) or misura (mee-sooh-rah) (size) to talk about clothes.

Table 8-3 shows women’s shoe sizes and their conversions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 8-3</th>
<th>Women’s Shoe Sizes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>US and Canada</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>35.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5</td>
<td>36.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>37.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.5</td>
<td>38.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.5</td>
<td>39.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.5</td>
<td>40.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
If you have seen the pair of shoes of your dreams in *vetrina* (een veh-tree-nah) *(in the shop window)* and you’d like to try them on, you can follow Michela’s example:

Michela:  
*Posso provare le scarpe esposte in vetrina?*  
May I try on a pair of shoes in the window?

Saleswoman:  
*Quali sono?*  
*Which ones?*

Michela:  
*Quelle blu, a destra.*  
*Those blue ones there, on the right.*

Saleswoman:  
*Che numero porta?*  
*Which size do you wear?*

Michela:  
*Trentasette.*  
*Thirty-seven.*

Saleswoman:  
*Ecco qua. Un trentasette . . . sono strette?*  
*Here we are. A 37 . . . Are they tight?*

Michela:  
*No. Sono comodissime.*  
*No. They are very comfortable.*

Michela:  
*Quanto vengono?*  
*How much do they cost?*

Saleswoman:  
*Novanta euro.*  
*Ninety euros.*
I give you a lot of information and vocabulary about clothes shopping in this chapter. See how many articles of clothing you can identify on the following couple. See Appendix D for the answer key.
Chapter 9
Having Fun Out on the Town

In This Chapter
▶ Having fun in Italy
▶ Enjoying movies, art, theater, and other forms of entertainment
▶ Giving and receiving invitations

Doing the town is always fun. In general, Italians are sociable people who enjoy having a good time. You see them having espressos together al bar (ahl bahr) (in the bar) or drinks at night in piazza (een pyaht-tsah) (on the public square). Most Italians love to go out in the evening, crowding the streets until late at night.

Italy is a popular vacation destination, and Italian cities have a great variety of cultural offerings, from the numerous local fairs and sagre (sah-greh) (town celebrations relating to harvest, wild boar, or saints, for example) to open-air festivals and music events to city-wide celebrations. The variety is endless, and fun is guaranteed. The festivals relating to saints are for the santo patrono (sahn-toh pah-troh-noh) (patron saint). The sagre are to celebrate agricultural products. These two things are different.

In this chapter, I give you a lot of information you need to take in cultural attractions and socialize.

Acquiring Culture

No matter where you live or where you travel, most major cities have a weekly pubblicazione (poohb-blee-kah-tsoh-neh) (publication) listing information about upcoming events. These publications include dates, descriptions, and time schedules for theaters, exhibitions, festivals, films, and so on. They also provide tips for shopping and restaurants.

In smaller towns without weekly magazines, you may see events announced on posters. You can also find information in the local newspapers.
Of course, newspapers aren’t your only source of information about things to do and see. Asking the following questions can get you answers you want.

- **Cosa c’è da fare di sera?** *(koh-zah cheh dah fah-reh dee seh-rah)* *(Are there any events in the evenings?)*
- **Può suggerirmi qualcosa?** *(pwoh soohj-jeer-mee kwahl-koh-zah)* *(Can you recommend something to me?)*
- **C’è un concerto stasera?** *(cheh oohn kohn-chehr-toh stah-seh-rah)* *(Is there a concert tonight?)*
- **Ci sono ancora posti?** *(chee soh-noh ahn-koh-rah pohs-tee)* *(Are there any seats left?)*
- **Dove si comprano i biglietti?** *(doh-veh see kohn-prah-noh ee bee-lyeht-tee)* *(Where can we get tickets?)*
- **Quanto vengono i biglietti?** *(kwahn-toh vehn-goh-noh ee bee-lyeht-tee)* *(How much are the tickets?)*
- **A che ora comincia lo spettacolo?** *(ah keh oh-rah koh-meen-chah loh speht-tahk-koh-loh)* *(What time does the show begin?)*
- **Non c’è niente di più economico?** *(nohn cheh nee-ehn-teh dee pyooh eh-koh-noh-mee-koh)* *(Isn’t there anything cheaper?)*

**Talkin’ the Talk**

Arturo works at a theater. He is bombarded with questions from patrons before the show.

**Sig. Paoli:**  
**Quando comincia lo spettacolo?**  
*kwahn-doh koh-meen-chah loh speht-tahk-koh-loh*  
When does the show start?

**Arturo:**  
**Alle sette e mezza.**  
*ahl-leh seht-teh eh mehd-dzah*  
At half past seven.

**Erika:**  
**A che ora finisce lo spettacolo?**  
*ah keh oh-rah fee-nee-sheh loh speht-tahk-koh-loh*  
What time is the show going to end?

**Arturo:**  
**Verso le dieci.**  
*vehr-soh leh dyeh-chee*  
About ten p.m.

**Erika:**  
**C’è un intervallo?**  
*cheh oohn een-tehr-vahl-loh*  
Is there an intermission?
Chapter 9: Having Fun Out on the Town

Arturo:  Si, tra il secondo e il terzo atto.
see trah eel seh-kohn-doh eh eel teh-tsoh aht-toh
Yes, between the second and third acts.

**Words to Know**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Italian</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a che ora?</td>
<td>ah keh oh-rah</td>
<td>what time?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quando?</td>
<td>kwahn-doh</td>
<td>when?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dove?</td>
<td>doh-veh</td>
<td>where?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>divertente</td>
<td>dee-veh-tehn-teh</td>
<td>fun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>biglietto [m]</td>
<td>bee-lyeh-toh</td>
<td>ticket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spettacolo [m]</td>
<td>speht-tah-koh-loh</td>
<td>show</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cominciare</td>
<td>koh-meen-chah-reh</td>
<td>to start</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finire</td>
<td>fee-nee-reh</td>
<td>to end</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Italian films**

It’s well known that Italy produces a great number of films, and there are many Italian directors who are famous throughout the world: Fellini, Rossellini, Bertolucci, De Sica, and Nanni Moretti, to name a few. Some of their works are considered classics of Italian culture, and I highly recommend them to you. Other contemporary directors to look for include Giuseppe Tornatore, Gabriele Salvatores, Francesca Archibugi, and Emanuele Crialese.

*La dolce vita* and *La strada* are among Fellini’s masterpieces. The dramatic and moving *Roma, città aperta* (Open City) is one of Rossellini’s most significant movies. To complete the image of the Italian cinema between 1948 and 1957, you need to include De Sica’s *Ladri di biciclette* (*The Bicycle Thief*). Bertolucci belongs to a subsequent period and is known for his *Il conformista* (*The Conformist*) whereas Moretti’s *Caro diario* and *La stanza del figlio* made big contributions to disseminating Italian culture abroad in the 1990s.

Then we have Roberto Benigni, who not only directed one of the most successful “foreign” films of modern times but won an Academy Award for acting in *La vita è bella* — *Life is Beautiful*. 
Going to the movies

Going al cinema (ahl chee-neh-mah) (to the movies) is a popular activity almost everywhere. In Italy, American films usually are doppiati (dohp-ryah-tee) (dubbed) into Italian. On the other hand, why not go to an original Italian film? Doing so provides you with a good opportunity to polish your Italian.

Some special questions for the movies include:

✔ Andiamo al cinema? (ahn-dyah-moh ahl chee-neh-mah) (Shall we go to the movies?)
✔ Cosa danno? (koh-zah dahn-noh) (What's playing?)
✔ Dove lo danno? (doh-veh loh dahn-noh) (Where is [the movie] being shown?)
✔ È in lingua (versione) originale? (eh in leen-gwah [vehr-see-ohn-neh] oh-ree-je-neh-leh) (Is the film in the original language?)
✔ Dov'è il cinema Trianon? (doh-veh eel chee-neh-mah tree-ah-nohn) (Where is the Trianon cinema?)

Often saying the name of the movie theater is sufficient, for example, Dov'è il Trianon? (doh-veh eel tree-ah-nohn) (Where is the Trianon?)

Talkin’ the Talk

Ugo and Bianca are two Fellini fans. Ugo wants to go to the movies and asks his girlfriend Bianca if she feels like going with him.

Ugo: Andiamo al cinema? 
ahn-dyah-moh ahl chee-neh-mah
Shall we go to the movies?

Bianca: Che film vuoi vedere?
keh feelm vwoi veh-deh-reh
Which movie would you like to see?

Ugo: La dolce vita, naturalmente.
lah dohl-cheh vee-tah nah-tooh-rahl-mehn-teh
La dolce vita, of course.

Bianca: Oh, l’ho visto solo tre volte!
oh loh vees-toh soh-loh treh vohl-teh
Oh, I've only seen it three times!

Dove lo danno?
doh-veh loh dahn-noh
Where is it being shown?
Chapter 9: Having Fun Out on the Town

Ugo: Al Tiziano, qui vicino.
ahl tee-tsee-ah-noh kwee vee-chee-noh
At the Tiziano, nearby.

Bianca: A che ora comincia?
ah keh oh-rah koh-meen-chah
What time does it start?

Ugo: Esattamente fra cinque minuti!
eh-zaht-tah-mehn-teh frah cheen-kweh-mee-nooh-tee
In exactly five minutes!

Bianca: Cosa aspettiamo?
koh-zah ahs-peht-tyah-moh
What are we waiting for?

Italian movie theaters used to be rather small, showing only one movie at a time. Now virtually all large Italian cities have big *multisala* (moohl-tee-sah-lah) (*multiplex*) cinemas, with many screens.

**Talkin’ the Talk**

Films are an interesting topic of conversation. Here is a typical dialogue between two friends, Chiara and Alberto.

Chiara: Hai visto l’ultimo film di Salvatores?
ahy veez-toh loohl-tee-moh feelm deh sahl-vah-toh-rez
Have you seen the new Salvatores film?

Alberto: Ancora no, e tu?
ahn-koh-rah noh eh tooh
Not yet, and you?

Chiara: Si, ieri sera.
see yeh-ree seh-rah
Yes, last night.

Alberto: Com’è?
koh-meh
How is it?

Chiara: L’attore principale è bravissimo!
laht-toh-reh preen-chee-pah-leh eh brah-vees-see-moh
The lead actor is really good!
Part II: Italian in Action

Alberto: Ma dai! Lo dici perché è bello!  
mah dahy loh dee-cheh pehr-keh eh behl-loh  
Come on! You say that because he's good looking!

Chiara: E allora? E il film è così divertente!  
eh ahl-loh-rah eh eel feelm eh koh-zee  
dee-vehr-keh-neh  
So what? And the movie is so amusing!

Alberto: L’ultimo film di Salvatores era così serio.  
loohl-tee-moh feelm dee sahl-vah-toh-reh eh-raah  
koh-zee seh-ree-oh  
Salvatores’ last film was so serious.

Words to Know

Chi è il regista?  
kee eh eel  
reh-jees-tah  
Who is the director?

Chi sono gli attori?  
kee soh-noh lyee  
aht-toh-reh  
Who’s starring?

attore [m]  
aht-toh-reh  
actor

regista [f/m]  
reh-jees-tah  
director

trama [f]  
trah-mah  
plot

scena [f]  
sheh-nah  
scene

Going to the theater

The language of the theater and the cinema is very similar. Of course, when you attend a play, opera, or symphony performance, there is a variety of seats. For example, you can sit in the platea (plah-teh-ah) (orchestra) i palchi (pahl-kee) (box seats) or il loggione (eel lohj-oh-neh) (the gallery), which used to be called la piccionaia (lah peech-choh-nah-yah) (Literally: the pigeonhouse) because it is high up.
Talkin’ the Talk

In the following dialogue, Eugenio wants to know whether seats are available for a certain performance of a play he wants to see. He’s speaking on the phone with the person at the theater box office.

Ticket
Agent: Pronto?
prohn-toh
Hello?

Eugenio: Buongiorno. È il Teatro Valle?
bwohn-johr-noh eh eel teh-ah-tro vahl-leh
Good morning. Is this the Valle Theater?

Ticket
Agent: Sì. Mi dica.
see mee dee-kah
Yes. Can I help you? (Literally: Tell me.)

Eugenio: Vorrei prenotare dei posti.
voehr-rey preh-noh-taehr dey poohs-tee
I’d like to reserve some seats.

Ticket
Agent: Per quale spettacolo?
pehr kwah-leh speht-tah-koh-loh
For which performance?

Eugenio: Aspettando Godot, domani sera.
ahs-peht-tahn-doh goh-doh doh-mah-nee seh-rah
Waiting for Godot, tomorrow evening.

Ticket
Agent: Mi dispiace: È tutto esaurito.
mee dees-pyeh-cheh eh tooht-toh eh-zouh-ree-toh
I’m sorry: It’s sold out.

Eugenio: Ci sono repliche?
chee soh-noh reh-pleh-keh
Are there other performances?

Ticket
Agent: L’ultima è dopodomani.
looohl-tee-mah eh doh-poh-doh-mah-nee
The last one is the day after tomorrow.
Did you notice that the title of the play, *Waiting for Godot*, has no preposition in Italian? In English, you wait for someone, but Italians say “waiting somebody” — *aspettare qualcuno* (ahs-peht-tah-reh kwahl-kooh-noh). You may also hear *ti aspetto* (tee ahs-peht-toh) (*I’m waiting for you*).

### Talkin’ the Talk

Eugenio asks his friends about changing the date they see the play and then calls the box office again.

**Voice:**  
*Pronto?*  
*prohn-toh*  
Hello?

**Eugenio:**  
*Ho telefonato due minuti fa.*  
*oh teh-leh-foh-nah-toh dooh-eh meh-nooh-tee fah*  
I called two minutes ago.

**Voice:**  
*Si, mi dica!*  
*See mee dee-kah*  
Yes, how can I help you?

**Eugenio:**  
*Si, vorrei prenotare tre posti per dopodmani*  
*see vohr-ray preh-noh-tah-reh treh pohs-tee pehr doh-poh-doh-mah-nee*  
Yes, I’d like to reserve three seats for day after tomorrow.

**Voice:**  
*Che posti desidera?*  
*keh pohs-tee deh-zee-deh-rah*  
Which seats would you like?

**Eugenio:**  
*Non troppo cari.*  
*nohn trohp-poh kah-ree*  
Not too expensive.

**Voice:**  
*La platea costa trentadue Euro.*  
*lah plah-teh-ah kohs-tah trehn-tah-dooh-eh eh-ooh-roh*  
The orchestra is thirty-two euros.
Chapter 9: Having Fun Out on the Town

Eugenio: **Ci sono tre posti centrali?**
chee soh-noh treh pohs-tee chehn-trah-lee
Are there three middle seats?

Voice: **Un momento . . . si, tre posti nella quindicesima fila.**
oohn moh-mehn-toh see tre pohs-tee nehl-lah
kween-dee-veh-h-zee-mah fee-lah
*Just a moment . . . yes, three seats in row 15.*

Paga con Bancomat o con carta di credito?
pah-gah kohn bahn-koh-maht oh kohn kahr-tah
dee kreh-dee-toh
Will you pay with a debit card or a credit card?

Eugenio: **Bancomat, per favore.**
bahn-koh-maht pehr fah-voh-reh
Debit card, thank you.

If you come to Italy, you can catch an opera by Verdi, Puccini, or Rossini in wonderful theaters such as Milan’s **La Scala** (lah skah-lah), Naples’s **San Carlo** (sahn kahr-loh), and the theaters of Florence and Palermo. In the summer months, try to check out theater festivals (which include a wide variety of repertoires and venues citywide), like the famous Ravenna Festival. You can also see outdoor operas in Verona, at the old Roman **Arena** (ah-reh-nah). Following are some phrases concerning performances:

- **la danza classica/moderna/contemporanea** (lah dahn-zah klaahs-see-kah/moh-dehr-nah/kohn-tehm-poh-rah-neh-ah) (**classical/modern/contemporary dance**)
- **lo spettacolo** (loh speht-tah-koh-loh) (**the show; the performance**)
- **la prova generale pubblica** (lah proh-vah jeh-neh-rah-leh poohb-blee-kah) (**public dress rehearsal**)
- **la replica** (lah reh-plee-kah) (**repeat performance**)
- **il matinée** (eel mah-tew-neh) (**matinee**)
- **lo spettacolo pomeridiano** (loh speht-tah-koh-loh poh-meh-ree-dyah-noh) (**afternoon performance**)

Some theaters don’t accept telephone reservations; you can only “reserve at the box office” — **prenotazione al botteghino** (preh-noh-tah-tee-yoh-neh ahl boht-teh-gee-noh). You can pay for the tickets and either pick them up immediately or before the performance begins.
**Going to a museum**

Here are some of the most frequented museums with the richest collections: the **Uffizi** (oohf-fee-tsee) Gallery in Florence; **La Galleria Borghese** (lah gahl-leh-ree-ah bohr-geh-seh) and the **Musei Vaticani** (mooh-zeh-ee vah-tee-kah-nee) in Rome; the Peggy Guggenheim Collection in Venice; and **Il Museo della Scienza e della Tecnica** (eel mooh-zeh-oh dehl-lah shehn-zah eh dehl-lah tehk-nee-kah) in Milan. Every two years there is also the **Biennale di Venezia** (bee-ehn-nah-lee deh veh-nee-ets-ee-ah) where you can view the work of many well-known contemporary international artists.

**Talkin’ the Talk**

Take a look at this dialogue between two friends who are about to go **al museo** (ahl mooh-zeh-oh) (**to the museum**).

Luisa:  
**Ciao, Flavia, dove vai?**
chou flah-vee-ah doh-veh vahy
Hello, Flavia, where are you going?

Flavia:  
**Ciao! Alla mostra di Caravaggio.**
chou ahl-lah mohs-trah dee kah-rah-vaj-joh
Hello! To the Caravaggio exhibit.

Luisa:  
**Ma dai: ci vado anch’io!**
mah dahy chee vah-doh ahn-kee-oh
You don’t say! I’m going there too!

Flavia:  
**Allora andiamo insieme!**
ahl-loh-rah ahn-dyeh-moh een-syeh-meh
In that case, let’s go together!

Luisa:  
**Certo! Viene anche Janet.**
chéehr-toh vyeeh-neh ahn-keh jah-neht
Sure! Janet is coming also.

Flavia:  
**La conosco?**
lah koh-nohs-koh
Do I know her?

Luisa:  
**Si, la mia amica americana.**
see lah mee-ah ah-mee-kah ah-meh-ree-kah-nah
Yes, my American friend.
Chapter 9: Having Fun Out on the Town

Flavia: Dove avete appuntamento?  
doh-veh ah-veh-teh ahp-poohn-tah-mehn-toh  
Where are you meeting?

Luisa: Davanti al museo.  
dah-vahn-tee ahl mooh-zeh-oh  
In front of the museum.

Going to a local festival

In this chapter’s introduction I refer to the many local sagre (sah-greh) (fairs) and festivals you can find in Italy especially during the spring, summer, and fall. The themes of these fairs vary, ranging from the ones that are political in origin such as La festa di l’Unità (lah fehs-tah dee looh-nee-tah) (a left-leaning newspaper) to the ones that are nature-related: La sagra del cinghiale (lah sah-grah dehl cheen-gyah-leh) (the wild-boar festival) and La sagra del pesce azzurro (lah sah-grah dehl peh-sheh adz-zooh-roh) (the Blue Fish Fair) are two that come to mind. Do drop in if you find one because these are often the perfect venues for experiencing local culture and homemade food.

Talkin’ the Talk

Paola tries to convince Martino to visit the cathedral.

Paola: Lo sai che oggi c’è la Sagra dell’uva a Bertinoro?  
loh sahy keh oy-jee cheh lah sah-grah dehl-looh-vah ah behr-teen-oh-roh  
Did you know that today there is the grape festival in Bertinoro?

Martino: Divertente! O facciamoci un salto!  
deer-vehr-tehn-teenth oh fahch-chah-moh-chee oohn sahl-toh  
What fun! Oh, Let’s stop by!

Paola: Partiamo subito?  
pahr-tyah-moh soo-bee-toh  
Shall we leave right away?

Martino: Si, perché no?  
see pehr-keh noh  
Yes, why not?
Paola: In quel paese fanno anche degli ottimi cappelletti!
in kwehl pah-eh-zeh fahn-noh dehl-yee oht-tee-mee
kahp-pehl-leht-tee
They make great cappelletti in that town.

Martino: Ottimo, così ci fermiamo a cena.
oht-tee-moh koh-zee cheh fehr-mee-ah-moh ah
cheh-nah
Great! This way we can stay for supper.

**Going to a concert**

If you’re interested in music, you will certainly be able to hear some in Italy, from the Umbria (oohm-bree-ah) Jazz Festival to the Festival dei due mondi (fehs-tee-vahl dey dooh-eh mohn-dee) in Spoleto to your favorite Italian cantautore (kahhn-tou-toh-reh) (singer–songwriter).

Italy is full of old and beautiful churches and cathedrals where musicisti (mooh-zee-chees-tee) (musicians) often present classical music concerts. You can also hear concerts in other places — sometimes in the center of a city in a piazza.

**Talkin’ the Talk**

La signora and il signor Tiberi are reading the morning paper. Suddenly, la signora Tiberi cries out:

Sig.ra Tiberi: Guarda qui!
gwahr-dah kwee
Look here!

Sig. Tiberi: Che c’è?
keh cheh
What’s up?

Sig.ra Tiberi: Martedì c’è Pollini a Roma!
mahr-teh-dee cheh pohl-lee-nee ah roh-mah
Pollini is in Rome on Tuesday!

Sig. Tiberi: Tiene un concerto?
tyeh-neh oohn kohn-chehr-toh
Is he going to give a concert?
Sig.ra Tiberi:  
**Si, al Conservatorio.**
see ahl kohn-sehr-vah-toh-ree-oh
Yes, at the Conservatory.

Sig. Tiberi:  
**Sarà tutto esaurito?**
sah-rah tooht-toh eh-zou-ree-toh
Will it already be sold out?

Sig.ra Tiberi:  
**Forse no!**
fohr-seh noh
Maybe not!

Sig. Tiberi:  
**Vai al botteghino?**
vahy ahl boht-teh-gee-noh
Are you going to the box office?

Sig.ra Tiberi:  
**Prima telefono.**
pree-mah teh-leh-foh-noh
I’m going to call first.

---

Maurizio Pollini is an internationally famous Italian pianist. We do hope that signor and signora Tiberi find two tickets for this event. **Buona fortuna!** (bwoh-nah fohr-tooh-nah) (Good luck!)

---

**Words to Know**

- **musica** [f]  
  mooh-zee-kah  
  music

- **concerto** [m]  
  kohn-chehr-toh  
  concert

- **esaurito**  
  eh-zou-ree-toh  
  sold out

- **piano(forte)** [m]  
  pee-ah-noh(fohr-teh)  
  piano

- **museo** [m]  
  mooh-zeh-oh  
  museum

- **insieme**  
  een-syeh-meh  
  together
Maybe you know a musician or someone who plays an instrument in his or her leisure time. You are probably curious about some things, such as:

- **Che strumento suoni?** (keh strooh-mehn-toh swoh-nee) *(Which instrument do you play?)*

  - *Suono il violino.* (swoh-noh eel vee-oh-lee-noh) *(I play the violin.)*

- **Dove suonate stasera?** (doh-veh swoh-nah-teh stah seh-rah) *(Where are you playing tonight?)*

  - *Suoniamo al Blu Notte.* (swoh-nyah-moh ahl blooh noht-teh) *(We play/We’re playing at the Blu Notte.)*

- **Chi suona in famiglia?** (kee swoh-nah in fah-mee-lyah) *(Who in the family plays?)*

  - *Suonano tutti.* (swoh-nah-noh tooht-tee) *(All of them play.)*

## Inviting Fun

Getting or giving *un invito* (oohn een-vee-toh) *(an invitation)* is always a pleasurable experience. A party *(una festa)* (ooh-nah fehs-tah) is a good opportunity to meet new people. In Italian, the verb *invitare* (een-vee-tah-reh) frequently means to treat someone to something. For example, if someone says “*Posso invitarti a teatro?*” (pohs-soh een-vee-tahr-tee ah teh-ah-troh) *(May I invite you to the theater?)*, it means that the person is going to make the arrangements and pay for you.

The following expressions are other ways to suggest an activity:

- **Che ne pensa di andare a Roma?** *(formal)* (keh neh pehn-sah dee ahn-dah-reh ah roh-mah) *(What do you think of going to Rome?)*

- **Che ne dici di uscire stasera?** *(informal)* (keh neh dee-eh-chee dee ooh-shee-reh stah seh-rah) *(What do you say about going out tonight?)*

- **Andiamo in piscina!** (ahn-dyah-moh in pee-shee-nah) *(Let’s go to the swimming pool!)*

- **Mangiamo una pizza!** (mahn-jah-moh ooh-nah peet-tsah) *(Let’s eat a pizza!)*

- **Perché non andiamo a teatro?** (pehr-keh nohn ahn-dyah-moh ah teh-ah-troh) *(Why don’t we go to the theater?)*

You can see that suggesting an activity in Italian is not so different from the way you do it in English. You can ask **Perché non . . .** *(pehr-keh nohn) *(Why don’t we . . .)* or **Che ne pensi . . .** *(keh neh pehn-see) *(What do you think about . . .).*
Chapter 9: Having Fun Out on the Town

The word *perché* is special. I use it in this chapter to ask the question “why.” However, it can also mean “because.” A dialogue can go like this:

**Perché non mangi?** (pehr-keh nohn mahn-je) *(Why aren’t you eating?)*

**Perché non ho fame.** (pehr-keh nohn oh fah-meh) *(Because I’m not hungry.)*

---

**Talkin’ the Talk**

Guido has a new job. He’s very happy and wants to share his happiness with a couple of friends. He decides to *dare una festa* *(dah-reh ooh-nah fehs-tah) (have a party)* and tells his friend Caterina about it.

Guido: *Ho deciso!*  
*oh deh-chee-zoh*  
I’ve decided!

Caterina: *Cosa?*  
*koh-zah*  
What?

Guido: *Faccio una festa!*  
*fahch-choh ooh-nah fehs-tah*  
I’m giving a party!

Caterina: *Perché? Quando?*  
*pehr-keh kwahn-doh*  
Why? When?

Guido: *Per il mio nuovo lavoro. Sabato sera.*  
*pehr il mee-oh nwoh-voh lah-voh-voh sah-bah-toh seh-rah*  
For my new job. Saturday night.

Caterina: *Una festa con musica, ballo, birra??*  
*ooh-nah fehs-tah kohn mooh-zee-kah bahl-loh beer-rah*  
A party with music, dancing, and beer?

Guido: *Certo. Mi aiuti?*  
*chehr-toh mee ah-yoooh-tee*  
Certainly. Will you help me?

Caterina: *Come no!*  
*koh-meh noh*  
Of course!
Nowadays, you can issue and receive invitations any number of ways. You can receive an invitation by phone, by fax, via e-mail, or you may be asked by your ospite (ohs-pee-teh) (host) face to face.

**Talkin’ the Talk**

Guido will have a party at his house next Saturday. He calls Sara to invite her.

Sara:     Ciao Guido, come va?
           chou gwee-doh koh-meh vah
           Hi Guido, how are you?

Guido:    Molto bene! Sei libera sabato sera?
           mohl-toh beh-neh sey lee-beh-rah sah-bah-toh
           seh-rah
           Very well. Are you free Saturday night?

Sara:     È un invito?
           eh oohn een-vee-toh
           Is this an invitation?

Guido:    Si, alla mia festa.
           see ahl-lah mee-ah fehs-tah
           Yes, to my party.

Sara:     Fantastico! A che ora?
           fahn-tahs-tee-koh ah keh oh-rah
           Great! What time?

Guido:    Verso le nove.
           vehr-soh leh noh-veh
           About nine.

Sara:     Cosa posso portare? Il gelato va bene?
           koh-zah pohs-soh pohr-tahr-eh eel jeh-lah-toh
           vah beh-neh
           What can I bring? Is ice cream okay?

Guido:    Ottimo. Quello piace a tutti.
           oht-tee-moh kwahl-loh pyah-cheh ah tooht-tee
           Great. Everyone likes ice cream.

Sara:     Allora, d’accordo.Grazie!
           ahl-loh-rah dahk-kohr-doh grah-tsee-eh
           Okay then. Thanks!
Figure 9-1 shows the fax Guido sent to friends he couldn’t reach by phone.

Figure 9-1: A casual invitation, suitable for faxing.
Talkin’ the Talk

Both Franco and Emma have received Guido’s invitation. They are now talking about whether or not they will go to the party.

Franco:  
Vieni alla festa di Guido?
vyeh-nee ahl-lah fehs-tah dee gwee-doh
Are you going to Guido’s party?

Emma:  
No, mi annoio alle feste.
noh mee ahn-noi-oh ahl-leh fehs-teh
No, I get bored at parties.

Franco:  
Ti annoi?
tee ahn-noi
You get bored?

Emma:  
Si, non ballo e non bevo.
see nohn bahl-loh eh nohn beh-voh
Yes, I don’t dance and don’t drink.

Non mi diverto
nohn mee dee-vehr-toh
I don’t have fun.

Franco:  
Ma chiacchieri!
mah kyahk-kyeh-ree
But you do chat!

Emma:  
Si, ma senza musica di sottofondo.
see mah seh-n-zah mooh-zee-kah dee soht-toh-fohn-doh
Yes, but without background music.

Figure 9-2 is an example of a formal invitation to an opening of an exhibition by artist Elisa Catalini.
Chapter 9: Having Fun Out on the Town

Figure 9-2: The classic formal, engraved invitation.

LA SIGNORLA VOOSTRA È INVITATA
ALL’INAUGRAZIONE DELLA MOSTRA:
LAH SEE-NAH-REE AH VAHSTR AH EH EEB-VEH-TAH-TAH
AHL-LEEN OU-GOO-RAH-TSOH-NEH DEHL-LEAH MOH-STRA
YOU ARE INVITED TO THE OPENING OF THE EXHIBITION:

"RICORDI DI UNA VITA"
REE-KOUR-DEE DEE OOH-NAH VEE-TAH
"MEMORIES OF LIFE"

DIPINTI A Olio E SCULTURE DI
DEE KEEEN-TEE AH QH-LOOH EH SKOOL-TSOH-REH DEE
OIL PAINTINGS AND SCULPTURES BY
ELISA CATALINI
VENERDÌ 28 MARZO ALLE 19,30
VEH-NEHR-DEE VEE-HNT-OUT-TAH Mahr-TSOH AHL-LEH
DEE-CHAHN NOH-VEH EH TREN-TAH
FRIDAY, MARCH 28 AT 7:30 PM

GALLERIA ARTE & ARTE
GAH-LEH-REE-ALH AHR-TEH EH AHR-TEH
GALLERY ARTE & ARTE

VIA GABRIELLE SISTI 18
PIACENZA

L’ARTISTA SARÀ PRESENTE:
LAHR-TEEBS-TAH SAI-BAH PREH-ZEHN-TEH
THE ARTIST WILL BE PRESENT:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>invito [m]</td>
<td>een-vee-toh</td>
<td>invitation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>festa [f]</td>
<td>fehs-tah</td>
<td>party</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suonare</td>
<td>swoh-nah-reh</td>
<td>to play (a musical instrument)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perché</td>
<td>pehr-keh</td>
<td>why; because</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bere</td>
<td>beh-reh</td>
<td>to drink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ballare</td>
<td>bahl-lah-reh</td>
<td>to dance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Fun & Games

Now it’s your turn to invite an Italian friend to your party. Use the following words to fill in the blanks in this invitation. See Appendix D for answer key.
aspetto, dove, festa, invitato, ora, perche, sabato, verso

C’è una (1) _______ e tu sei (2) _______. (There’s a party and you’re invited.)

Quando? (3) _______ 24 luglio (When? Saturday, July 24.)

A che (4) _______? (5) _______ le 9. (What time? About 9 o’clock.)

(6) _______? A casa mia. (Where? At my place.)

(7) _______? Per festeggiare insieme! (Why? To celebrate together!)

Ti (8) _______. (I’ll be waiting for you.)

Buon divertimento! (Have a nice time!)
Chapter 10

Taking Care of Business and Telecommunicating

In This Chapter

▶ Phoning and texting
▶ Making reservations and appointments over the phone
▶ Getting through to the person you want and leaving messages
▶ Using the past tense

In this chapter you encounter expressions and phrases that relate to telephones and telecommunication — for example, how to behave when someone calls you and how to leave a message. In addition, I show you some samples of common phone dialogues.

Phoning Made Simple

**Pronto!** (*prohn*-toh) (*Hello!*) is the first thing you hear when you talk to an Italian on the phone. In most languages, you answer the phone with the same word you use for saying hello in person, but in Italian, you use **pronto** to say hello only on the phone.

You can answer the phone and say “**Pronto. Chi parla?**” (*prohn*-toh kee *pahr*-lah) (*Hello, who's speaking?*)

And a typical response might be “**Pronto! Sono Sabrina. C'è Stefano?**” (*prohn*-toh *soh*-noh *sah*-bree-nah *cheh* *steh*-fah-noh). (*Hello! This is Sabrina. Is Stefano there?*)

You can also say, “**Sono Susanna. Posso parlare con Michele per favore?**” (*soh*-noh *sooh*-sahn-nah *pohs*-soh *pahr*-lah-reh kohn mee-keh-leh pehr *fah*-voh-reh) (*This is Susan. May I please speak with Michael?*)
Connecting via cellphones, texts, and Skype

Italians love their *cellulari* (*chehl-looh-lah-ree* (*cellphones*), there’s no doubt about that. They were one of the first cultures to embrace full force the *telefonino* (*teh-leh-foh-nee-noh*) (*little phone*) back in the eighties, when they adopted this useful accessory as a fashion.

**Cellphones**

When you’re in Italy you need to have your own cell phone because public phones are hard to find and hotel phones are very expensive to use. If you take your phone with you from, say, the United States, make certain that it will work in Italy and that calls won’t cost you a mint. Of course, you can buy a phone when you get there. If you buy one, phone time can be purchased two ways at the local *tabaccaio* (*tah-bahk-kahy-oh*) (*tobacconist*). You can either purchase *una scheda telefonica* (*ooh nah skeh-dah teh-leh-foh-nee-ka*) (*phone card*), or you can ask the salesperson to charge your phone for you by putting on a specific number of minutes or euros. You can do the same thing at any branch of the phone store where you bought your cell phone.

**Text messaging**

Because Italians tend to text more frequently than make phone calls these days (because it is so much cheaper and also trendy), you should know how to say a couple of important things, such as “*messaggino*” (*mehs-sahj-jee-noh*) or “*sms*” (*ehs-seh-ehm-meh-ehs-seh*) (*text message*), and “*mandami un messaggino*” (*mahn-dah-mee oohn mehs-sahj-jee-noh*) (“*Text me. *” Literally: “Send me a text message.”)

**Using the Internet to connect**

All cities have their share of Internet stations, where you can pay a per-minute fee to use the Internet. All you have to ask is “*Posso usare l’Internet?*” (*pohs-soh ooh-zah-reh leen-tehr-neht*) (*May I use the Internet?*) whereupon you will be asked for *un documento* (*oohn dohk-ooh-mehn-toh*) (*identification*) and assigned to a computer station. There, you can Skype or e-mail to your heart’s content.

Here are a couple more useful phone phrases:

✔️ *Avete un telefono?* (ah-veh-tehn oohn teh-leh-foh-noh) (*Is there/Do you have a [public] telephone?*)

✔️ *Avete schede telefoniche?* (ah-veh-tehn skeh-deh teh-leh-foh-nee-keh) (*Do you sell phone cards?*)
Ha un recapito telefonico? (Ah oohn reh-kah-pee-toh teh-leh-foh-nee-koh) (Do you have a contact phone number?) (You might hear this when you go to change money at the bank.)

Qual è il suo/tuo numero di telefono? (Kwahl eh eel sooh-oh nooh-meh-roh dee teh-leh-foh-noh) (What is your phone number?)

---

**Talkin’ the Talk**

Giorgio is back in Naples again and decides to give an old friend of his a call.

Simona: **Pronto!** 
prohn-toh
Hello!

Giorgio: **Pronto, Simona?** 
prohn-toh see-moh-nah
Hello, Simona?

Simona: **Sì, chi parla?** 
see kee pahr-lah
Yes, who’s speaking?

Giorgio: **Sono Giorgio.** 
soh-noh johr-joh
It’s Giorgio.

Simona: **Che bella sorpresa!** 
keh behl-lah sohr-preh-zah
What a nice surprise!

Sei di nuovo a Napoli? 
sey dee nwoh-voh ah nah-poh-lee
Are you in Naples again?

Giorgio: **Sì, sono arrivato stamattina.** 
see soh-noh ahr-ree-vah-toh stah-maht-tee-nah
Yes, I arrived this morning.

Simona: **Ci vediamo stasera?** 
chee veh-dyah-moh stah-seh-rah
Are we going to meet tonight?

Giorgio: **Ti chiamo per questo!** 
tee kyah-moh pehr kwehs-toh
That’s why I’m calling!
In Italy, when you don’t know a **numero di telefono** (*nooh-meh-roh dee teh-leh-foh-noh*) (*phone number*), look it up in the **elenco telefonico** (*eh-lehn-koh teh-leh-foh-nee-kooh*) (*phone book*). If it’s a business number you can also look in the **pagine gialle** (*pah-nee-jee neh jahl-leh*) (*yellow pages*).

**Calling for business or pleasure**

Whether you want to find out what time a show starts, make a dental appointment, or just chat with a friend, the easiest way to accomplish any of these tasks is usually to pick up the telephone. This section takes you through the nuts and bolts of talking on the telephone.

**Talkin’ the Talk**

The following is a formal dialogue between two **signori** (*see-nyoh-ree*) (*gentlemen*) who have met only once.

**Sig. Palladino:** Pronto?  
*prohn-toh*  
Hello?

**Sig. Nieddu:** Pronto, il signor Palladino?  
*prohn-toh eel see-nyohr pahl- lah-dee-noh*  
Hello, Mr. Palladino?

**Sig. Palladino:** Si. Con chi parlo?  
*see kohn kee pahr-loh*  
Yes. Who am I speaking to?

**Sig. Nieddu:** Sono Carlo Nieddu.  
*soh-noh kahr-loh nee-ehd-dooh*  
This is Carlo Nieddu.

**Sig. Nieddu:** Si ricorda di me?  
*see ree-kohr-dah deh meh*  
Do you remember me?

**Sig. Palladino:** No, mi dispiace.  
*noh mee dees-pyah-cheh*  
I don’t, I’m sorry.

**Sig. Nieddu:** Il cugino di Enza.  
*eel kooh-jee-noh deh ehn-zah*  
Enza’s cousin.
Sometimes you call just to chat on the phone — **fare due chiacchiere al telefono** (*fah-reh dooh-eh kyahk-kyeh-reh ahl teh-leh-foh-noh*). But the person on the other end of the line may not be prepared for a lengthy chat.

When you are really busy and don’t even have one second to speak, you may need the following phrases. The first is informal, and the second is one you might use at work.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Italian Phrase</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ti posso richiamare più tardi?</strong></td>
<td><em>Can I call you back later?</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(<strong>Can I call you back later?</strong>)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>La posso richiamare fra mezz’ora?</strong></td>
<td><em>Can I call you back in half an hour?</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(<strong>Can I call you back in half an hour?</strong>)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Talkin’ the Talk**

On other occasions your call may be quite welcome, as Monica’s is this time:

**Monica:** *Ciao, mamma, ti disturbo?*  
*chou mahm-mah tee dees-toohr-boh*  
Hello, Mom. Am I disturbing you?

**Lucia:** *No, assolutamente.*  
*nah ahs-soh-looh-tah-mehn-teh*  
Not at all.

**Monica:** *Volevo sentire cosa fate per Pasqua.*  
*voh-leh-voh sehnh-tee-reh koh-sah fah-teh pehr*  
I wanted to hear what you were doing for Easter.

**Lucia:** *Andiamo tutti dalla nonna.*  
*aahn-dyah-moh toohht-tee dahl-lah nohn-nah*  
We’re all going to Grandma’s.

**Monica:** *Ottimo! Buon’idea.*  
*oht-tee-moh bwohn-ee-dee-ah*  
Great! Good idea!
Making Arrangements over the Phone

Making an appointment, reserving a table at a restaurant, ordering tickets for a concert are all activities you usually do by phone. In this section I introduce you to the Italian way to handle these matters.

Talkin’ the Talk

Mrs. Elmi calls her doctor’s office to make an appointment. She is speaking with the doctor’s nurse.

Sig.ra Elmi: **Buongiorno, sono la signora Elmi. Vorrei prendere un appuntamento.**
bwohn-johr-noh soh-noh lah see-nyoh-rah ehl-mee vohr-rehy prehn-deh-reh oohn ahp-poohn-tah-mehn-toh
Good morning, this is Ms. Elmi. I’d like to make an appointment.

Nurse: **È urgente?**
eh oohr-jehn-teh
Is it urgent?
Chapter 10: Taking Care of Business and Telecommunicating

Sig.ra Elmi: Purtroppo si.
poohr-trohp-poh see
Unfortunately, it is.

Nurse: Va bene alle quattro e mezza?
vah beh-nah ahl-leh kwaht-troh eh mehd-dzah
Today at four-thirty?

Sig.ra Elmi: Va benissimo, grazie.
vah beh-nnee-see-moh grah-tsee-eh
That’s great, thank you.

Nurse: Prego. Ci vediamo più tardi.
preh-goh chee vee-dah-moh pyoooh tahr-dee
You’re welcome. See you later.

The expression a domani (ah doh-mah-nee) (see you tomorrow) is a bit different in Italian, in that it doesn’t have a verb. In English, the verb see indicates that you will see the other person tomorrow. Italian is more concise; you say a domani — literally, “until tomorrow.”

**Asking for People and Getting the Message**

This section offers useful terminology about asking to speak to people and leaving messages. You know how often the person you want isn’t available, so you need to be comfortable getting a message across.

You’re familiar with the situation: You’re waiting for a call, but the telephone doesn’t ring. Then, you have to go out. When you get back, you want to know whether anyone called for you. You can ask that question several ways:

- **Ha chiamato qualcuno per me?** (ah kyah-mah-toh kwahl-kooh-noh pehr meh) (Has anybody called for me?)
- **Mi ha chiamato qualcuno?** (mee ah kyah-mah-toh kwahl-kooh-noh) (Did anybody call me?)
- **Mi ha cercato nessuno?** (mee ah chehr-kah-toh nehs-sooh-noh) (Has anybody looked for me?)
Leo wants to give Camilla a call, but she’s not home. Therefore, he leaves a message for her.

Leo:  Buongiorno, sono Leo. 
  bwohn-johr-noh soh-noh leh-oh  
  Good morning, this is Leo.

Voice:  Ciao Leo. 
  chou leh-oh  
  Hello, Leo.

Leo:  C’è Camilla? 
  cheh kah-meel-lah  
  Is Camilla in?

Voice:  No, è appena uscita. 
  noh eh ahp-peh-nah ooh-shee-tah  
  No, she’s just gone out.

Leo:  Quando la trovo? 
  kwahn-doh lah troh-voeh  
  When can I reach her?

Voice:  Verso le nove. 
  vehr-soh leh noh-veh  
  Around nine.

Leo:  Le posso lasciare un messaggio? 
  leh pohs-soh lah-shah-reh oohn mehs-sahj-joeh  
  Can I leave her a message?

Voice:  Come no, dimmi. 
  koh-meh noh deem-mee  
  Of course, tell me.

As you can see, there are different ways for asking for people as well as for saying that they’re not in and asking if you can leave a message. The informal dialogue above gives you one way of saying these things, and the dialogue that follows recasts the situation into a formal exchange.
Chapter 10: Taking Care of Business and Telecommunicating

Talkin’ the Talk

Mr. Marchi calls Mr. Trevi’s office to talk about an upcoming meeting. Mr. Trevi’s secretary picks up the phone.

Secretary: **Pronto?**

*prohn-toh*

Hello?

Sig. Marchi: **Buongiorno, sono Ennio Marchi.**

*bwohn-johr-noh soh-noh ehn-nee-oh mahr-kee*

Good morning, this is Ennio Marchi.

Secretary: **Buongiorno, dica.**

*bwohn-johr-noh dee-kah*

Good morning, can I help you?

Sig. Marchi: **Potrei parlare con il signor Trevi?**

*poh-trehy pahr-lah-reh kohn eel see-nyoh-reh treh-vee*

Can I speak to Mr. Trevi?

Secretary: **Mi dispiace, è in riunione.**

*mee dees-pyah-cheh eh een ree-oohn-yoh-neh*

I’m sorry, he’s in a meeting.

Sig. Marchi: **Potrei lasciargli un messaggio?**

*poh-trehy lah-shahr-lyee oohn mehs-sahj-joh*

May I leave him a message?

Secretary: **Certo. Prego.**

*chehr-toh preh-goh*

Of course. Go on . . .

Sometimes you don’t understand the name of the person you’re talking to and you have to ask for the spelling. If someone needs you to spell your name, you may hear either of the following questions:

🔹 **Come si scrive?** *(koh-meh-see skree-veh)* *(How do you write it?)*

🔹 **Può fare lo spelling?** *(pwoh fah-reh loh spelling)* *(Can you spell it?)*

Don’t worry too much about this; as long as you know the basic Italian alphabet in Chapter 1, you’ll be able to spell your name and town to anyone!
Words to Know

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Italian</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pronto</td>
<td>prohn-toh</td>
<td>hello</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chiacchierare</td>
<td>kyahk-kyeh-rah-reh</td>
<td>to chat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attenda in linea!</td>
<td>aht-tehn-dah een lee-neh-ah</td>
<td>Please hold!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chiamare</td>
<td>kyah-mah-reh</td>
<td>to call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chiamata [f]</td>
<td>kyah-mah-tah</td>
<td>call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>informazione [f]</td>
<td>een-fohr-mah-tyoh-neh</td>
<td>information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sorpresa [f]</td>
<td>sohr-preh-zah</td>
<td>surprise</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

What Did You Do Last Weekend? — Talking about the Past

Not all phone calls have to do with leaving messages, of course. One age-old reason for a phone conversation is so friends can catch up on each other’s lives. Imagine you had such a great time at the beach last weekend that you can’t wait to call and tell your best friend all about it. But to be able to communicate what you did, who you saw, and where you went, you first need to understand the Italian equivalent of the present perfect and simple past.

When you speak about something that happened in the past — for example, I have spoken — you mostly use the **passato prossimo** (pahs-sah-toh prohs-see-moh) in Italian, which corresponds to both the English present perfect and the simple past (*I spoke*).

The **passato prossimo** is a compound tense: It consists of more than one word, as in “I have heard.” Take a look at how it works in these examples:
**Ho ascoltato un CD.** (oh ahs-kohl-tah-toh oohn chee-dee) (*I have listened/listened to a CD.*)

**Sono andata alla spiaggia.** (soh-noh ahn-dah-tah ahl-lah spyahj-jah)  
(*I went to the beach.*)

The structure of the *passato prossimo* is similar to the present perfect. It is composed of the present tense of either the verb *avere* (ah-veh-reh) (*to have*) or *essere* (ehs-ser-reh) (*to be*) plus the past participle of the verb that describes what happened. In the preceding examples, *ascoltato* (ahs-kohl-tah-toh) (*listened*) is the past participle of *ascoltare* (ahs-kohl-tah-reh) (*to listen*), and *andata* (ahn-dah-tah) (*spoken*) is the past participle of *andare* (ahn-dah-reh) (*to go*).

In sum: helping verb *essere* or *avere* + past participle of verb (generally ending in *–ato, –uto, –ito* (ah-toh, ooh-toh ee-toh)). To form past participles, you take the infinitive of the verb, keep the stem, and add the ending.

**Lei** (ley) is the formal way of saying “you.” Use *lei* to address someone you don’t know well, or to whom you want to be polite.

So how do you know when to use *essere* or *avere* as your helping verb in the *passato prossimo*? Transitive verbs take *avere* and intransitive verbs take *essere*. Usage will be your guide, but basically all verbs like: to come, to go, to go in, to go out, to stay, to return, to be born and to die take *essere*.

Let’s start with transitive verbs, as shown in Table 10-1:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Avere +Past Participle</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>ho chiamato</em> (oh kyah-mah-toh)</td>
<td><em>I called/have called/I did call</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>hai chiamato</em> (ahy kyah-mah-toh)</td>
<td><em>you called/have called/you did call</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>ha chiamato</em> (ah kyah-mah-toh)</td>
<td><em>he/she called/ has called</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>abbiamo chiamato</em> (ahb-byah-moh kyah-mah-toh)</td>
<td><em>we called /have called</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>avete chiamato</em> (ah-veh-teh kyah-mah-toh)</td>
<td><em>you (pl.) called/have called</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>hanno chiamato</em> (ahn-noh kyah-mah-toh)</td>
<td><em>they called/have called</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some past participles are irregular and will come at the end of this section: They follow no rule, and simply have to be memorized. See Appendix A for more examples.
Table 10-2 provides you with some common regular past participles and also some very common irregular past participles of verbs that are conjugated with avere.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ascoltare (to listen)</td>
<td>ascoltato (listened)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comprare (to buy)</td>
<td>comprato (bought)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>telefonare (to phone)</td>
<td>telefonato (called)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conoscer (to meet, the first time)</td>
<td>conosciuto (met)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ricevere (to receive)</td>
<td>ricevuto (received)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>partire (to leave/depart)</td>
<td>partito (left/departed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dire (to say)</td>
<td>detto (said)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fare (to do)</td>
<td>fatto (done)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leggere (to read)</td>
<td>letto (read)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scrivere (to write)</td>
<td>scritto (written)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vedere (to see)</td>
<td>visto (seen)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Asking about last weekend is always a reason to call your friend to hear what he or she did.

**Talkin’ the Talk**

Rosa calls her best friend Tiziana to catch up on her weekend.

Rosa: Che cosa hai fatto questo fine settimana?
keh koh-zah ahy faht-toh kwehs-toh fee-neh seh-tte-ah-mah-nah
What did you do last weekend?

Tiziana: Ho conosciuto un uomo meraviglioso!
oh koh-noh-shooh-toh oohn woh-moh meh-rah-vee-ah-lyoh-zoh
I met a wonderful man!
Rosa:  
Racconta tutto!  
rahk-kohn-tah tooht-toh  
Tell me everything!

Tiziana:  
Sabato sono andata al mare.  
sah-bah-toh soh-noh ahn-dah-tah ahl mah-reh  
Saturday I went to the beach.

Rosa:  
Da sola?  
dah soh-lah  
Alone?

Tiziana:  
Si, e li ho incontrato Enrico.  
see eh lee oh een-kohn-trah-toh ehn-ree-koh  
Yes, and I met Enrico there.

Rosa:  
Per caso?  
pehr kah-zoh  
By chance?

Tiziana:  
No, me l’ha presentato Davide.  
noh meh lah preh-zehn-tah-toh dah-vee-deh  
No, David introduced me to him.

Now take a look at some intransitive verbs that take **essere** as their helping verb.

When the **passato prossimo** is compounded with the present tense of **essere** (to be), the past participle ends according to the subject: feminine singular -a, masculine singular -o, feminine plural -e, or masculine plural -i. Note the endings of the past participles in Table 10-3.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Essere + Past participle</strong></th>
<th><strong>Passato Prossimo with Essere</strong></th>
<th><strong>Translation</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>io sono uscita/o</td>
<td>(ee-oh soh-noh ooh-shee-tah/oh)</td>
<td>I went out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu sei uscita/o</td>
<td>(tooh sey ooh-shee-tah/oh)</td>
<td>You went out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lei/lui è uscita/o</td>
<td>(ley looh-ee eh ooh-shee-tah/oh)</td>
<td>He/she went out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noi siamo uscite/i</td>
<td>(noi see-ah-moh ooh-shee-teh/ee)</td>
<td>We went out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voi siete uscite/i</td>
<td>(voi see-eh-teh ooh-shee-teh/ee)</td>
<td>You went out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loro sono uscite/i</td>
<td>(loh-roh soh-noh ooh-shee-teh/ee)</td>
<td>They went out.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Do familiarize yourself well with the intransitive verbs in Table 10-4 that are always conjugated with *essere*, not only in the present perfect tense, but in any other compound tense in Italian.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>andare</em> (ahn-dah-reh) (to go)</td>
<td><em>andata/-o/-e/-i</em> (ahn-dah-tah/toh/teh/tee)</td>
<td>gone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>arrivare</em> (ahr-ree-vah-reh) (to arrive)</td>
<td><em>arrivata/-o/-e/-i</em> (ahr-ree-vah-tah/toh/teh/tee)</td>
<td>arrived</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>entrare</em> (ehn-trah-reh) (to enter)</td>
<td><em>entrata/-o/-e/-i</em> (ehn-trah-tah/toh/teh/tee)</td>
<td>entered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>partire</em> (pahr-tee-reh) (to leave)</td>
<td><em>partita/-o/-e/-i</em> (pahr-tee-tah/toh/teh/tee)</td>
<td>left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>venire</em> (veh-nee-reh) (to come)</td>
<td><em>venuta/o/e/I</em> (veh-nooh-tah/toh/teh/tee)</td>
<td>came</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>tornare</em> (tohr-nah-reh) (to return)</td>
<td><em>tornata/-o/-e/-i</em> (tohr-nah-tah/toh/teh/tee)</td>
<td>returned</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Discussing Your Job**

The world is getting smaller, and business contact with people in other countries is getting more common. Whether by phone, fax, or e-mail, it’s becoming more and more important to know how to communicate to business colleagues around the world. If you happen to have business contacts with Italian companies, knowing some basic Italian business vocabulary may be useful.

Italian has at least four words for “company” — *la compagnia* (lah kohm-pah-nyee-ah), *la ditta* (lah deet-tah) (which also means *the firm*), *l’azienda* (lah-dzehn-dah) and *la società* (lah soh-cheh-tah). These words are virtually interchangeable.

**L’ufficio** (loohf-fee-choh) is Italian for “office.” The following sentences give you a taste of the phrases you hear in **uffici** (oohf-fee-chee) (**offices**) everywhere:

✓ *La mia scrivania è troppo piccola.* (lah mee-ah skree-vah-nee-ah eh trohp-poh peek-koh-lah) (*My desk is too small.*)

✓ *È una grande società?* (eh ooh-nah grahn-deh soh-cheh-tah) (*Is it a big company?*)
✓ **Lavora per una piccola agenzia.** (lah-voh-rah pehr ooh-nah peek-koh-lah ah-jehn-tsee-ah) *(He works for a small agency.)*

✓ **Amo il mio lavoro.** (ah-moh eel mee-oh lah-voh-roh) *(I like my job.)*

**The human element**

Even if you are **libero professionista** *(lee-beh-roh proh-fehs-see-oh-nees-tah)* *(self-employed)*, chances are that your **lavoro** *(lah-voh-roh)* *(job)* puts you in contact with other people. All those people have titles and names, as the following short exchanges show:

✓ **Il mio capo è una donna.** *(eel mee-oh kah-poh eh ooh-nah dohn-nah)* *(My boss is a woman.)*

✓ **Hai un’assistente personale?** *(ahy ooh-nahs-sees-tehn-teh pehr-soh-nah-leh)* *(Do you have a personal assistant?)*

  *No, il nostro team ha un segretario.* *(noh eel nohs-troh team ah oohn seh-greh-tah-ree-oh)* *(No, our team has a secretary.)*

✓ **Dov’è il direttore?** *(doh-veh eel dee-reht-toh-reh)* *(Where is the director?)*

  *Nel suo ufficio.* *(nehl sooh-oh oohf-fee-choh)* *(In her office.)*

**Office equipment**

Even the smallest offices today utilize a wide variety of equipment. Many of these “technology” words are the same in Italian as they are in English: computer, fax, and e-mail are used and pronounced as they are in English, and the Italian for “photocopy” and “photocopier” are fairly intuitive — **fotocopia** *(foh-toh-koh-pee-ah)* and **fotocopiatrice** *(foh-toh-koh-pee-ah-tree-cheh)*, respectively.

The following sentences can help you develop your Italian office vocabulary to a respectable level.

✓ **Posso usare la stampante, per favore?** *(pohs-soh ooh-zah-reh lah stahhm-pahn-teh pehr lah-voh-reh)* *(May I use the printer, please?)*

✓ **Il lavoro non va bene.** *(eel lah-voh-roh nohn vah beh-neh)* *(Work isn’t going well.)*

✓ **Il fax è arrivato.** *(eel fahks eh ahr-ree-vah-toh)* *(The fax arrived.)*

✓ **Quando ha spedito l’e-mail?** *(kwahn-doh ah speh-dee-toh lee-mail)* *(When did you send the e-mail?)*
Part II: Italian in Action

Talkin’ the Talk

Mr. Miller, an American businessman, has been trying unsuccessfully to send his Italian associate, il signor Tosi, some important information.

Mr. Miller: Ha ricevuto la mia raccomandata?
            ah ree-cheh-vooh-toh lah mee-ah rahk-koh-mahn-dah-tah
            Have you received the express letter I sent?

Sig. Tosi: No, oggi non è arrivato niente.
            noh ohj-jee nohn eh ahr-ree-vah-toh nee-ehn-teh
            No, nothing has arrived yet today.

Mr. Miller: Le mando subito un fax.
            leh mahn-doh sooh-bee-toh oohn fahks
            I’ll send you a fax immediately.

Sig. Tosi: Purtroppo è rotto.
            poohr-trohp-poh eh roht-toh
            Unfortunately, it’s broken.

Mr. Miller: Le invio un’e-mail allora.
            leh een-vee-oh oohn e-mail ahl-loh-rah
            I’ll send you an e-mail then.

Sig. Tosi: Va bene. E può mandarmi il documento?
            vah beh-neh eh pwoh mahn-dahr-mee eel doh-koooh-mehn-toh
            Yes. And can you send me the document?

Mr. Miller: Certo, glielo mando come allegato, ma avrò bisogno di più tempo.
            chehr-toh lye-ee-loh mahn-doh koh-meh ahl-leh-gah-toh mah ah-vroh bee-zoh-nyoh dee pyoooh tehm-poh
            Of course, I’ll send it as an attachment, but I’ll need a bit more time.

Sig. Tosi: Va benissimo. Oggi lavoro fino a tardi.
            vah beh-nees-see-moh ohj-jee lah-vooh-roh fee-noh ah tahr-dee
            That’s great. I’m working late today.
In Italy, want ads often request information on an applicant’s personality. Also, job advertisements do not usually contain mailing addresses. Instead, ads list fax or e-mail addresses. You send your domanda d’assunzione (doh-mahn-dah dahs-soohn-tyoh-neh) (job application) and/or your curriculum vitae or resume via fax or e-mail.
Fun & Games

You’re Mario’s guest, but he’s gone out for a moment. The telephone rings and you have to answer it. Fill the gaps in this incomplete phone conversation. See Appendix D for answer key.

You: (1) _______! (Hello!)

Caller: Ciao, sono Chiara. Con chi (2) _______? (Hello, I’m Chiara. Who am I talking to?)

You: Sono un (3) _______ di Mario. (I’m a friend of Mario’s.)

Caller: (4) _______ Mario? (Is Mario in?)

You: No, è (5) _______ uscito. (No, he’s just gone out.)

Caller: Gli posso (6) _______? (Can I leave him a message?)

You: Certo (7) _______. (Of course. Please.)

Mario returns and asks:

Mario: Ha (8) _______ qualcuno per me? (Has anybody called for me?)
Chapter 11
Recreation and the Outdoors

In This Chapter
▶ Discovering the great outdoors through animals and plants
▶ Enjoying yourself with reflexive verbs and piacere
▶ Exploring sports and other hobbies

In this chapter, we talk about the fun stuff — playing sports, pastimes, and generally enjoying yourself. Plus, we throw in a section about reflexive verbs so that you can talk correctly about enjoying yourself.

Maybe you use your fine settimana (fee-neh seht-tee-mah-nah) (weekends) as a chance to play sports like calcio (kahl-choh) (soccer), tennis (tehn-nee) (tennis), or pallavolo (pahl-lah-vo-loh) (volleyball). Or perhaps you park yourself in front of the TV to watch pallacanestro (pahl-lah-kah-nehs-troh) (basketball). In any case, being able to talk sports and other recreational activities is a plus in any language.

Taking a Tour

Whether you’re in a city or rural area, you can usually find fun and interesting sights to see in the area. You can take a car trip, or leave the driving to someone else and sign up for an organized bus tour to take you to special places. Bus tours are, for the most part, organized in great detail and the price generally includes the cost of the hotel, lunch, dinner, and the services of a tour guide.

A guided tour may be the most efficient, cost-effective, and informative way to check out the attractions of an unfamiliar city. You can use the following questions to help find out more about una gita organizzata (ooh-nah jee-tah ohr-gah-nee-dzah-tah) (an organized tour). Notice that Italian has two, basically interchangeable ways to say “go on a tour”: fare una gita (fah-reh ooh-nah jee-tah) and fare un’escursione (fah-reh oohn ehs-coohr-syoh-neh).
Ci sono gite organizzate? (chee soh-noh jee-neh ohr-gah-nee-dzah-teh) (Are there any organized tours?)

Che cosa c’è da vedere? (keh koh-zah cheh dah vee-deh-reh) (What sights are included?)

Quanto costa la gita? (kwahn-toh kohs-tah lah jee-tah) (How much does the tour cost?)

C’è una guida inglese? (cheh ooh-nah gwee-dah een-geh-leezeh) (Is there an English-speaking guide?)

Dove si comprano i biglietti? (doh veh see kohm-prah-noh ee bee-lyeh-teh) (Where do you buy tickets?)

Notice in the following sentences that the Italians have appropriated a few English words — picnic and jog.

Mi piace camminare nel verde. (mee pyah-neh kahm-mee-nah-reh nehl vehr-deh) (I like to walk in nature.)

Facciamo un picnic sul prato? (fahch-chah-moh oohn peek-neek soohl prah-toh) (Should we have a picnic on the lawn?)

Ti piace l’osservazione degli uccelli? (tee pyah-neh lohs-sehr-vah-tysoh-neh dehl-yeh-ooch-chehlt-lee) (Do you like bird-watching?)

Faccio jogging nel parco. (fahch-choh johhgehn nehl pahr-koh) (I go jogging in the park.)

Maybe you like to go up into the mountains to be close to nature. Even when ti godi (tee goh-deh) (you enjoy) Mother Nature on your own, however, you may want to know some vocabulary to express the wonders you see, such as “Che bel panorama!” (keh behl pah-noh-rah-mah) (What a great view!) Here we go!

l’albero (lahl-beh-roh) (tree)
il bosco (eel bohs-koh) (woods)
il fiore (eel fyoh-reh) (flower)
la pianta (lah pyahn-tah) (plant)
il pino (eel pee-noh) (pine)
il prato (eel prah-toh) (meadow; lawn)
la quercia (lah kwehr-chah) (oak)
il tramonto (trah-mohn-toh) (sunset)
il panorama (pah-noh-rah-mah) (view)
Chapter 11: Recreation and the Outdoors

Words to Know

campagna [f]  kahm-pah-nyah  countryside
fiume [m]  fyooh-meh  river
lago [m]  lah-goh  lake
mare [m]  mah-reh  sea
montagna [f]  mohn-tah-nyah  mountain

Talkin’ the Talk

Animals are always an interesting topic, and knowing the names of some of them in another language can be helpful. Here’s a dialogue about animals:

Carla:  Ti piacciono gli animali?
       tee pyach-choh-noh lyee ah-nee-mah-lee
       Do you like animals?

Alessandra:  Si, ho una piccola fattoria.
            see oh ooh-nah peek-koh-lah faht-toh-ree-ah
            Yes, I have a small farm.

Carla:  Davvero?
        dahv-veh-roh
        Really?

Alessandra:  Ho un cane, due gatti e un maialino.
            oh oohn kah-neh dooh-eh gaht-tee eh oohn
            mah-yah-lee-noh
            I have a dog, two cats, and a small pig.

Carla:  Ti piacciono i cavalli?
        tee pyahch-choh-noh ee kah-vahl-lee
        Do you like horses?
Alessandra: No, preferisco le mucche. 
noh preh-feh-rees-koh leh moohk-keh
No, I prefer cows.

### Words to Know

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Italian</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cane [m]</td>
<td>kah-neh</td>
<td>dog</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cavallo [m]</td>
<td>kah-vahl-loh</td>
<td>horse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capra [f]</td>
<td>kah-prah</td>
<td>goat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gallo [m]</td>
<td>gahl-loh</td>
<td>rooster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gatto [m]</td>
<td>gaht-toh</td>
<td>cat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gallina [f]</td>
<td>gahl-lee-nah</td>
<td>chicken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maiale [m]</td>
<td>mah-ah-leh</td>
<td>pig</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mucca [f]</td>
<td>moohk-kah</td>
<td>cow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uccello [m]</td>
<td>oohch-chehl-loh</td>
<td>bird</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lupo [m]</td>
<td>looh-poh</td>
<td>wolf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pecora [f]</td>
<td>peh-koh-rah</td>
<td>sheep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tacchino [m]</td>
<td>tahk-kee-noh</td>
<td>turkey</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Speaking Reflexively

When you say “to enjoy yourself,” you use a reflexive verb. That is, you turn the action back to yourself. The same applies in Italian. But not all Italian reflexive verbs are reflexive in English, and vice versa. Some verbs, such as riposarsi (ree-poh-zahr-see) (to rest oneself) and svegliarsi (zveh-lyahr-see) (to wake oneself), are not reflexive in English, although they are in Italian.

In Italian, you can tell whether a verb is reflexive by looking at the infinitive form. If the last syllable of the infinitive is -si (see), which translates as “oneself,” then the verb is reflexive. When you conjugate a reflexive verb, you must change the last syllable from -si to something else. The following conjugation of divertirsi (dee-vehr-tee-see) (to enjoy oneself, to have a good time) demonstrates the conjugation of the verb. The only difference is that you add the reflexive pronoun, which refers to the person concerned (the subject). After you have removed the -si at the end of a reflexive verb, you conjugate it just like any other -are, -ere, and -ire verb. Notice how divertirsi becomes a regular present tense -ire verb, with the exception that you then need the reflexive pronouns.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conjugation</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mi diverto</td>
<td>mee dee-vehr-toh</td>
<td>I have fun.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ti diverti</td>
<td>tee dee-vehr-tee</td>
<td>You’re having fun.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>si diverte</td>
<td>see dee-vehr-teh</td>
<td>He/she is enjoying him/herself.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ci divertiamo</td>
<td>chee dee-vehr-tyah-moh</td>
<td>We have fun.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vi divertite</td>
<td>vee dee-vehr-tee-teh</td>
<td>You’re enjoying yourself.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>si divertono</td>
<td>see dee-vehr-toh-noh</td>
<td>They have fun.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Here are some more examples:

✓ divertirsi: Mi diverto molto a cantare. (mee dee-vehr-toh mohl-toh ah kahn-tah-reh) (I really enjoy myself singing.)

✓ annoiarsi (ahn-noi-ahr-see) (to be bored): Vi annoiate in campagna? (vee ahn-noi-ah-teh een kahm-pah-nyah) (Do you get bored in the country?)
Part II: Italian in Action

✓ svegliarsi (zveh-yahr-see) (to wake up) A che ora ti sveglì? (ah keh oh-rah tee zveh-lyee) (What time do you wake up?)

✓ mettersi (meht-tehr-see) (to put on/to wear) Mi metto la giacca nera. (mee meht-toh lah jahk-kah neh-rah) (I’m going to wear my black jacket.)

✓ lavarsi (lah-vaehr-see) Ti sei lavata i denti? (tee sey lah-vaehr-tah ee dehn-tee) (Did you brush your teeth?)

Talkin’ the Talk

Maria Pia and Mauro are discussing what they enjoy doing on their weekends.

Maria Pia: Cosa fai durante i fine settimana?

koh-sah fahy dooh-rahn-teh ee fee-neh seht-tee-mah-nah
How do you spend your weekends?

Mauro: Faccio sport, leggo, incontro amici.
fahch-choh sport lehg-goh een-kohn-troh ah-mee-chee
I play sports, I read, I meet friends.

Ti piace leggere?
tee pyah-cheh lehg-jeh-reh
Do you like to read?

Maria Pia: È la mia passione!
eh lah mee-ah pahs-syoh-neh
It’s my passion!

Che cosa leggi?
keh koh-zah lehj-jee
What do you read?

Mauro: Soprattutto letteratura contemporanea.
soh-prahht-tooh-toht-leht-teh-rah-tooh-rah kohn-tehm-poh-rah-neh-ah
Mostly contemporary literature.

Playing Sports

Playing and talking about sports is a favored pastime of people the world over. And whether you travel to Italy, or just want to invite your Italian neighbor to play tennis, knowing sports terms is always helpful.
Some sports you do in Italian. Therefore, you pair those words with **fare** (fah-reh) (to do; to practice). With other sports, however, you must use **giocare** (joh-kah-reh) (to play) or **andare** (ahn-dah-reh) (to go). Then there are sports that use the verb that describes the sport itself, like **pattinare** (paht-tee-nah-reh) (to skate). Table 11-1 lists most sports and the verbs you use with them.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 11-1 Sports Verbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Italian</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>atletica leggera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>canotaggio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ciclismo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>danza</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>equitazione</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ginnastica artistica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jogging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lotta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nuoto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>palestra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scherma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lo ci</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lo sci nautico</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sollevamento pesi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lo sno/snowboarding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>giocare a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calcio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pallacanestro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pallavolo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ping pong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tennis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>golf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>andare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a cavallo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in bicicletta</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The following conjugations are for these three important sports verbs: fare, andare, and giocare.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conjugation</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>io faccio</td>
<td>ee-oh fahch-choh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu fai</td>
<td>tooh fahy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lui/lei fa</td>
<td>looh-ee/ley fah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noi facciamo</td>
<td>noi fahch-chah-moh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voi fate</td>
<td>voi fah-tek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loro fanno</td>
<td>loh-roh fahn-noh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>io vado</td>
<td>ee-oh vah-doh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu vai</td>
<td>tooh vahy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lui/lei va</td>
<td>looh-ee/ley vah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noi andiamo</td>
<td>noi ahn-dyah-moh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voi andate</td>
<td>voi ahn-dah-teh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loro vanno</td>
<td>loh-roh vahn-noh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>io gioco</td>
<td>ee-oh joh-koh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu giochi</td>
<td>tooh joh-kee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lui/lei gioca</td>
<td>looh-ee/ley joh-kah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noi giochiamo</td>
<td>noi joh-kyah-moh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voi giocate</td>
<td>voi joh-kah-teh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loro giocano</td>
<td>loh-roh joh-kah-noh</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Italians love to follow sports on tv, ranked more or less by their popularity:

calcio (kahl-choh) (soccer)

Formula 1 (fohr-mooh-lah ooh-noh) (Formula One car racing)

ciclismo (chee-klees-moh) (cycling)

moto GP (moh-toh gee-pee) (motorcycle racing)

pugilato (pooh-jee-lah-toh) (boxing)

lo sci alpino (loh shee ahl-pee-noh) (downhill ski racing)
Le ragazze (leh rah-gaht-tse) (girls) don’t play calcio in Italy the way they do in other countries, but they do play pallavolo. Many ragazzi (rah-gaht-tsee) (boys) play calcio, and men play calcetto (kahl-cheht-toh), also called calcio a cinque (kahl-choh ah cheen-kweh), which is five against five soccer, often played indoors on a smaller field.

Then there is bocce (bohch-cheh) (lawn bowling). Many towns offer small bocce courts where older men usually play.

**Talkin’ the Talk**

Giulia and Stefano have just met at the university and found out that they live in the same neighborhood. On the way to the bus stop Stefano strikes up a conversation about his favorite topic, sports.

**Stefano:** Che sport pratichi?
Ex: keh sport prah-tee-kee
What sports do you play?

**Giulia:** Faccio nuoto e vado a cavallo.
Ex: fahch-choh nwoh-toh eh vah-doh ah kah-vahl-loh
I swim and ride.

**Stefano:** Equitazione?
Ex: eh-kwee-tsyoh-neh
Riding?

**Giulia:** È il mio sport preferito!
Ex: eh eel mee-oh sport preh-feh-ree-toh
It’s my favorite sport!

**Giochi a tennis?**
Ex: joh-kee ah tehn-nees
Do you play tennis?

**Stefano:** No, faccio palestra.
Ex: noh fahch-choh pah-lehs-trah
No, I go to the gym.

**Giulia:** Body building?
Ex: boh-dee beeld-eeng
Body building?
**Stefano:** Uso le machine come il tapis roulant* in inverno e corro in pineta in estate.

ohh-zoh leh mahk-kee-neh koh-meh eel tah-phee-rooh-lahn een een-vehr-noh eh kohr-roh een pee-neh-tah een ehs-tah-teh

Oh no — I use the machines like the treadmill in the winter and I run in the pine forest in the summer.

---

*Italians use the French word **tapis roulant** for treadmill.

---

**Talking about Hobbies and Interests**

You can certainly do a lot of other things in your leisure time besides wear yourself out playing sports. Here you learn about a variety of them in Italian.

Some typical questions (and varied responses) to ask about **il tempo libero** (eel tehm-poh lee-behr-oh) (**free time**) include:

- 🟢 **Che cosa ti piace fare nel tempo libero?**
  
  keh koh-zah tee pyah-cheh fah-reh nehl tehm-poh lee-beh-roh
  
  *What do you like to do in your free time?*

- **Mi piace cucinare e fare l’uncinetto.**
  
  mee pyah-cheh kooch-chee-nah-reh eh fah-reh loohn-chee-neht-toh
  
  *I look to cook and crochet.*

- 🟢 **Qual è il tuo passatempo preferito?**
  
  kwahl eh eel tooh-oh pahs-sah-tehm-poh preh-feh-ree-toh
  
  *What is your favorite pastime?*

- **Il mio passatempopreferito è . . . /i miei passatempi preferiti sono . . .**
  
  eel mee-oh pahs-sah-tehm-poh preh-feh-ree-toh eh/ee myey pahs-sah-tehm-pee preh-feh-ree-tee soh-noh
  
  *My favorite pastime is . . . /My favorite pastimes are . . .*
You might want to start your sentence with the possessive adjective in the preceding sentence if you’re writing to someone rather than speaking.

. . . fare i giochi da tavolo e giocare a scacchi.

*fah*-reh ee *joh*-kee dah *tah*-voh-loh oh *joh*-kahr-reh ah *skahk*-kee

*playing board games or chess.*

. . . stare con gli amici.

*stah*-reh kohn lyee ah-*mee*-chee

. . . *hanging out with friends.*

✓ Quali sport fai?

*kwah*-lee spohrt fahy

*What sports do you do?*

Faccio lo sci./Gioco a tennis.

*fahch*-choh loh shee/*joh*-koh ah *tehn*-nees

*I ski/I play tennis.*

---

**Liking things**

You spend your free time doing recreational things that you like. And when you say you like something, use the verb *piacere* (*pyah*-cheh-reh). This verb is a bit weird in that you usually use it only in the third person singular or the third person plural of any verb tense.

*Third person singular:* if what you like is singular or an infinitive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mi piace</th>
<th>mee <em>pyach</em>-eh</th>
<th><em>I like to run.</em></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>correre.</td>
<td><em>kohr</em>-reh-reh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mi piace</td>
<td>mee <em>pyach eel</em></td>
<td><em>I like the sea.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il mare.</td>
<td><em>mah</em>-reh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Third person plural:* if what you like is plural.

| Mi piacciono | mee *pyach*-choh-noh lyee spohrt een-vehr-nah-lee | *I like winter sports.* |

*gli sport invernali.*

Only your pronouns change, which are indirect object pronouns and literally mean “such and such a thing is pleasing to me.” These are *mi, ti, gli, le, ci, vi, loro* (*mee, tee, lyee, leh, chee, vee, loh-roh*) (*me, you, him, her, us, you, them*). You don’t use personal pronouns (*io, tu, lui, lei* etc.) with the verb *piacere.*
**Talkin’ the Talk**

Have a look at what Serena and Nicoletta are talking about. Nicoletta apparently prefers peaceful and calm activities, whereas Serena likes to participate in sports that make her sweat.

Serena:   **Cosa fai questo fine settimana?**
            *koh-zah fahy kwehs-toh fee-neh-seht-tee-mah-nah*
            What are you going to do this weekend?

Nicoletta: **Vado in campagna.**
             *vah-doh een kahm-pah-nyah*
             I’m going to the countryside.

Serena:   **È un’idea fantastica!**
            *eh ooh-nee-deh-ah fahn-tahs-tee-kah*
            That’s a great idea!

Nicoletta: **Ho una casetta vicino al lago.**
             *oh ooh-nah kah-seht-tah vee-chee-noh ahl lah-goh*
             I have a small house close to the lake.

Serena:   **Ideale per riposarsi.**
            *ee-deh-ah-leh pehr ree-poh-zahr-see*
            Ideal for relaxing.

Nicoletta: **Si, leggo, scrivo, passegio lungo il lago.**
            *see lehg-goh skree-voh pahs-sehj-joh loohn-goh eel lah-goh*
            Yes, I read, I write, I take walks around the lake.

Serena:   **Non fai sport?**
            *nohn fahy sport*
            Don’t you play any sports?

Nicoletta: **Vado in bicicletta.**
            *vah-doh een bee-chee-kleht-tah*
            I bicycle.
Obviously, participating in sports isn’t the only hobby you can have. Some hobbies are more sedentary, like reading, sewing, or playing musical instruments.

**Talkin’ the Talk**

Ernesto and Tommaso are discovering that not all sports are physical.

**Ernesto:** Non ti annoi mai?
Don’t you ever get bored?

**Tommaso:** No, ho molti interessi.
No, I have many interests.

**Ernesto:** Per esempio?
For example?

**Tommaso:** Amo leggere e andare al cinema.
I love to to read and go to the movies.

**Ernesto:** Non fai sport?
Don’t you play any sports?

**Tommaso:** Faccio yoga e meditazione.
I do yoga and meditate.

Many people love music, whether they like to **ascoltare la musica** (ahs-kohl-tah-reh lah mooh-zee-kah) *(listen to music)* or **suonare uno strumento** (swoh-nah-reh ooh-noh strooh-mehn-toh). Of course, there are all kinds of music, from **classica** (klahs-see-kah) *(classical)* to **jazz** (jats) to **rock** (rohk).
Emilia and Isabel are two classmates getting to know each other a little better.

Emilia: Mi piace molto ascoltare la musica. E tu?
I like to listen to music a lot. And you?

Isabel: Ho molta musica sul mio i-Pod.
I have a lot of music on my iPod.

Emilia: Tu suoni uno strumento?
Do you play an instrument?

Isabel: Suono il violoncello e il pianoforte.
I play the cello and the piano.

Emilia: Sei brava?
Are you good?

Isabel: Si, mi piace molto suonare. E tu?
I guess so. I really like to play music. And you?

Emilia: Suono il flauto, ma preferisco cantare nel coro.
I play the flute, but I prefer to sing in the chorus.
## Words to Know

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ascoltare</td>
<td>ahs-kohl-tah-reh</td>
<td>to listen to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>batteria</td>
<td>baht-teh-ree-ah</td>
<td>drums</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chitarra</td>
<td>kee-tahr-rah</td>
<td>guitar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clarinetto</td>
<td>klah-reen-eht-toh</td>
<td>clarinet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flauto</td>
<td>flou-toh</td>
<td>flute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>giocare</td>
<td>joh-kah-reh</td>
<td>to play a sport, cards, game</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pianoforte</td>
<td>pee-ah-noh-fohr-teh</td>
<td>piano</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sassofono</td>
<td>sahs-soh-foh-noh</td>
<td>saxophone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suonare</td>
<td>swoh-nah-reh</td>
<td>to play an instrument</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tromba</td>
<td>trohm-bah</td>
<td>trumpet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>violoncello</td>
<td>vee-oh-lohn-chehl-loh</td>
<td>cello</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>violino</td>
<td>vee-oh-lee-noh</td>
<td>violin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voce</td>
<td>voh-cheh</td>
<td>voice</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Now it’s time for you to have some fun! In the following box, try to find the names of some plants and animals I introduced in this chapter. I provide the English, but you have to find the Italian.

Find the Italian for these words: horse, flower, bird, cat, wolf, oak, pine, cow, sheep, tree. See Appendix D for answer key.
Part III
Italian on the Go

The 5th Wave  By Rich Tennant

“So far you’ve called a rickshaw, a unicyclist, and a Zamboni. I really wish you’d learn the Italian word for taxicab.”
In this part . . .

These chapters help you appreciate the adventure of travel. Here, you’ll get help with every aspect of your trip — from getting a visa to making hotel reservations, and from changing U.S. dollars into euros to getting around on public transportation. I also include a chapter on handling those unexpected emergency situations. So **Buon viaggio!** *(boo-ohn vee-ahj-joh)* *(Have a nice trip!)*
Chapter 12
Planning a Trip

In This Chapter
▶ Making travel plans
▶ Coming and going: *arrivare* and *partire*
▶ Taking a tour
▶ Going to the beach
▶ Looking forward to your trip: The simple future

Everybody likes to get away from the daily grind and check out new environments and activities during their free time. Tourists and Italians alike flock *la spiaggia* (lah spyahj-jah) (*to the sea*), head *in montagna* (een mohn-tah-nyah) (*to the mountains*), or *in campagna* (een kahm-pahn-yah) (*to the countryside*). Some Italians take long trips outside of Italy. Whatever you do, *buon viaggio!* (bwohn vyahj-joh) (*have a nice trip!* or *buone vacanze!* (bwoh-neh vah-kahn-zeh) (*have a nice vacation!*)

Deciding When and Where to Go

Deciding when to take a trip can be just as important as choosing your destination. You probably don’t want to visit Washington, D.C. in August when the weather can be unbearably hot and humid. Italy also has many cities that really heat up in the summer. In fact, many Italians living in those cities escape for most of August to cooler places, such as the beaches of Sardegna or the cool Dolomites. On the other hand, summer months are also *l’alta stagione* (lahl-tah stah-joh-neh) (*high season*) for tourists.
Part III: Italian on the Go

Talkin’ the Talk

Enzo is talking to Cristina about their vacation for the summer. He has it all figured out already, but Cristina is skeptical.

Enzo: *Quest’anno andiamo in montagna!*

This year we’re going to the mountains!

Cristina: *Stai scherzando?*

Are you kidding?

Enzo: *È rilassante: boschi, aria fresca . . .*

It’s relaxing: woods, fresh air. . . .

Cristina: *È noioso! E non si può nuotare!*

It’s boring. And you can’t swim!

Enzo: *Ci sono le piscine, i laghi, e i fiumi!*

There are swimming pools, lakes, and rivers!

Cristina: *Ma dai, pensa al mare, al sole. . . .*

Come on, think of the sea, the sun. . . .

Enzo: *Facciamo passeggiate, visitiamo i rifugi, mangiamo quel buon cibo di montagna.*

We can go hiking, visit some rifugi, and eat that good mountain food.

Cristina: *Oh no. Io rimango a casa!*

Oh no. I’ll stay home!

The Alps and Dolomites offer marvelous terrain for hiking and skiing. A rifugio (ree-fooj-joh) is a rustic mountain retreat that people hike or ski to, for the most part. You can enjoy a warm home-cooked meal there, and even spend the night in some.
Taking a Tour

Whether you’re in a city or rural area, you can usually find fun and interesting sights to see. Bus tours are for the most part organized in great detail and the price generally includes the cost of the bus, lunch, dinner, and the services of a tour guide. A guided tour, or day-trip, *una gita organizzata* (*oo-nah jee-tah ohr-gah-nee-dzah-tah*) (an organized tour), may be the most efficient, cost-effective, and informative way to check out nearby attractions.

- **Ci sono gite organizzate?** (*chee soh-noh jee-teh ohr-gah-need-dzah-teh*) (Are there any organized tours?)
- **Quanto costa la gita?** (*kwahn-toh kohs-tah lah jee-tah*) (How much does the tour cost?)
- **C’è una guida che parla inglese?** (*cheh ooh-nah gwee-dah keh pahr-lah een-geh-zeh*) (Is there an English-speaking guide?)
- **Dove si comprano i biglietti?** (*doh-veh see kohm-prah-noh ee bee-lyeh-tee*) (Where do you buy tickets?)

**Talkin’ the Talk**

Lucia and Renzo are in a tour office, talking to a tour agent and deciding which trip to go on the next day.

**Lucia:** *C’è una bella gita sul lago di Como domani.*

*cheh ooh-nah behl-lah gee-tah soohl lah-goh dee koh-moh doh-mah-nee*

We can take a nice trip to Lake Como tomorrow.

**Renzo:** *Vuoi andare, vero?*

*vwoi ahn-dah-reh veh-roh*

You want to go, don’t you?

**Lucia:** *Sarebbe carino. E tu?*

*sah-rehb-beh kah-ree-noh eh tooh*

It would be nice. What about you?

**Renzo:** *Non amo le gite in autobus.***

*nohn ah-moh leh gee-teh een ou-toh-bookhs*

I don’t like bus trips.

**Lucia:** *Ma è una gita a piedi!*

*mah eh ooh-nah jee-tah ah pyeh-dee*

But it’s a walking tour!
Renzo: Ottimo! A che ora inizia la gita?
oht-tee-moh. ah keh oh-rah ee-nee-tsyah lah jee-tah
Great! What time does the trip start?

Agent: Alle sette e trenta.
ahl-leh seht-teh eh trehn-tah
At seven-thirty a.m.

Renzo: Quanto dura?
kwaahn-toh dooh-rah
How long is it going to last?

Agent: Circa cinque ore.
cheer-kah cheen-kweh oh-reh
About five hours.

Words to Know

campagna [f]       kahm-pah-nyah    countryside

flama [f]            jee-tah           tour

fiume [m]            fyooh-meh         river

guida [f]            gwei-dah          guide

laga [m]             lah-goh           lake

mare [f]             mah-reh           sea

montagna [f]         mohn-tah-nyah    mountain
Chapter 12: Planning a Trip

Book a Trip/Traveling to Foreign Lands

You never know — you just might want to book a trip to another country while you’re in Italy. When you’re ready to book your flight or hotel, you may want to consider using un’agenzia viaggi (ooh-nah-jehn-tsee-ah vee-ahj-jee) (a travel agency). There you can get plane tickets, hotel reservations, or complete tour packages.

As you walk by the travel agency, undoubtedly your eye will be drawn to special all inclusive package deals to Malta, Tunisia, and the Canary Islands, to name a few.


Incredible deals! Gran Canaria. La Palma. 616 euros per person. Includes flight, hotel, departure fees, and buffet breakfast.

**Talkin’ the Talk**

Alessandro has just seen this sign for the Canary Islands. He is talking to Giorgio the travel agent.

**Giorgio:** Buongiorno, mi dica. bwohn-johr-noh mee dee-kah
Good morning, can I help you? (Literally: Tell me.)

**Alessandro:** Vorrei fare un viaggio alle Isole Canarie. vohr-ray fah-reh oohn vee-ahj-joh ahhl-leh ee-zoh-leh kah-nah-ree-eh
I’d like to take a trip to the Canary Islands.

**Giorgio:** Dove, esattamente? doh-veh eh-zaht-tahh-mehn-teh
Where exactly?
Alessandro: Tenerife o La Palma.
Tenerife or La Palma.

Giorgio: Un viaggio organizzato?
An organized trip?

Alessandro: No, vorrei soltanto prenotare il volo.
No, I’d like to book just the flight.

Giorgio: E per gli spostamenti interni?
And what about moving around between islands?

Alessandro: No, mi sposterò in autobus e traghetto.
No, I’ll get around by bus and ferry.

Giorgio: Quando vuole partire?
When do you want to leave?

Alessandro: La prima settimana di febbraio.
The first week of February.

Giorgio: E il ritorno?
And return?

Alessandro: La terza settimana di febbraio.
The third week of February.
Chapter 12: Planning a Trip

Chapter 12: Planning a Trip

Several years ago, a new vacation concept became popular in Italy: l’agriturismo (lah-gree-tooh-reez-moh) (the farm holiday). During these types of vacations, people travel to the country or the mountains where they stay in farmhouses. These accommodations range from Spartan to luxurious and romantic; most are good options for families. Guests can help out on the farm, ride horses, and swim at some agriturismi. This type of lodging also enables you to eat the traditional food of the region, and you’re miles away from formal, impersonal hotels.

Another popular type of lodging is the bed and breakfast, which you can find throughout the countryside as well in big cities like Rome and Milan.

You can easily find an abundance of both on the Web as you’re doing your research for your trip.

Visas and passports

All you need is a passport (un passaporto) (oohn pahs-sah-pohr-toh) to visit Italy if you’re going for less than six months. If you go for longer, you will need un visto (oohn vees-toh) (a visa).

If you fly to Italy, the main airports are Malpensa (mahl-pehn-sah) in Milan, and Leonardo da Vinci (leh-oh-nahr-doh dah veen-chee) in Rome, but you can also fly into Venice, Bologna, Palermo, and Naples, other popular (and less hectic) airports.

CULTURAL WISDOM

Several years ago, a new vacation concept became popular in Italy: l’agriturismo (lah-gree-tooh-reez-moh) (the farm holiday). During these types of vacations, people travel to the country or the mountains where they stay in farmhouses. These accommodations range from Spartan to luxurious and romantic; most are good options for families. Guests can help out on the farm, ride horses, and swim at some agriturismi. This type of lodging also enables you to eat the traditional food of the region, and you’re miles away from formal, impersonal hotels.

Another popular type of lodging is the bed and breakfast, which you can find throughout the countryside as well in big cities like Rome and Milan.

You can easily find an abundance of both on the Web as you’re doing your research for your trip.

Words to Know

- rimanere (ree-mah-nah-reh) to stay
- in treno (een treh-noh) by train
- viaggiare (vee-ahj-jah-reh) to travel
- viaggio (vyahj-joh ohr-gah-neez-dah-toh) organized trip
- organizzato [m] (oehr-gah-neez-dah-toh)
- volo [m] (voh-loh) flight
- traghetto [m] (trah-geh-toh) ferry
Arriving and Leaving: The Verbs “Arrivare” and “Partire”

To help you understand the verbs **arrivare** (ahr-ree-vah-reh) (to arrive) and **partire** (pahr-tee-reh) (to leave), we use them in some simple sentences in the following list. As you can see, when you use these verbs in connection with a specific place (city) **arrivare** is always followed by the preposition **a** (ah) (at/to/in), and when you arrive in a country you use the preposition **in** (een) (in). **Partire** is always followed by the preposition **da** (dah) (from) when leaving from a place; when leaving for a place it is followed by the preposition **per** (pehr) (for).

 ✓ Luca parte da Torino alle cinque. (looh-kah pahr-teh dah toh-ree-noh ahl-leh cheen-kweh) (Luca leaves from Turin at 5 o’clock.)

 ✓ Arrivo a Taormina nel pomeriggio. (ahr-ree-voh ah tah-ohr-mee-nah nehl poh-meh-reej-joh) (I’m arriving in Taormina in the afternoon.) The verbs **partire** (pahr-tee-reh) (to leave) and **arrivare** (ahr-ree-vah-reh) (to arrive) are conjugated like other regular **_ARE** and **_IRE** verbs, which you can check out in Chapter 2 or in Appendix A.

Talkin’ the Talk

Filippo and Marzia are spending some time together before Filippo has to catch a plane.

**Marzia:** A che ora parte l’aereo?  
ah keh oh-rah pahr-teh lah-eh-reh-oh  
What time does the plane leave?

**Filippo:** Alle nove di mattina.  
ahl-leh noh-veh dee maht-tee-nah  
At nine a.m.

**Marzia:** A che ora arrivi a Los Angeles?  
ah keh oh-rah ahr-ree-vee ah lohs ahn-jeh-lehs  
What time will you arrive in Los Angeles?

**Filippo:** Alle undici di notte.  
ahl-leh oohn-dee-chee dee noht-teh  
At eleven p.m.
Going to the Beach and Spa

Italy has 7,600 kilometers of coastline, so it is no surprise that Italians and tourists alike flock to Italy’s famous beaches, which can be both sandy (sabbia, sahb-bee-ah) or rocky (scoglio skoh-lyoh), each with its decided advantages (and clientele). Most beaches have that most wonderful of Italian institutions called il bagno (eel bahn-yoh). This is not a bathroom or a bath, but a combination bar/beach club/restaurant, where you can show up and rent an ombrellone (ohm-brehl-loh-neh) (beach umbrella) and un lettino (oohn leht-tee-noh) (a lounge chair) for the day, week, or month. Here you and the children can also play beach volley (beach volleyball) or racchet-tone (rahk-eht-toh-neh) (beach tennis), or rent a pedalò (peh-dah-loh) (paddle boat).

Italy also has many wonderful naturally heated thermal springs, spas or terme (tehr-meh). Some of these are quite well-equipped, and for whose services you pay (like Chianciano, Montecatini, and Fluggi). Other terme can be accessed for free in places like Vulcano, Ischia, and Calabria.

Using the Simple Future Tense

Sometimes you need a verb form that indicates that something will happen in the near future. In Italian, this tense is called futuro semplice (foh-tooh-roh sehm-plee-cheh) (simple future). However, you can also use the present tense when referring to a point in the future. The following sentences use the simple future tense:

✓ Andrò in Italia. (ahn-droh een ee-tah-lee-ah) (I will go to Italy.)
✓ Quando arriverai a Palermo? (kuhn-doh ahr-ree-veh-rahy ah pah-lehr-moh) (When will you arrive in Palermo?)
✓ Non torneremo troppo tardi. (nohn tohr-neh-reh-moh trohp-poh tahr-dee) (We won’t be back too late.)

To form the simple future of regular verbs, take the whole infinitive, cut off the final e, and add the same set of endings (ò, ai, à, emo, ete, anno). For _are verbs you need to change the -a in the infinitive to an -e. Note the stem change in Table 12-1.
Sending letters and postcards

So if you’re one of those people who still like to send cartoline (kahr-toh-lee-neh) postcards and lettere (leht-teh-reh) (letters) while traveling, you’re going to need to find an ufficio postale (oohf-fee-choh pohs-tah-leh) or tabaccaio (tah-bahk-kahy-oh) (tobacconist) where you can purchase stamps, francobolli (frahn-koh-bohl-leh) and buste (boohs-teh) (envelopes). You can also find stamps and envelopes in a cartoleria (kahr-toh-leh-ree-ah) (stationery shop).

### Table 12-1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parlare (PARLER-)</th>
<th>Prendere (PRENDER)</th>
<th>Partire (PARTIR)</th>
<th>Finire (FINIR)</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>parlerò</td>
<td>prenderò</td>
<td>partirò</td>
<td>finirò</td>
<td>(I will talk, have, leave, finish)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parlerai</td>
<td>prenderai</td>
<td>partirai</td>
<td>finirai</td>
<td>(you will talk, have, leave, finish)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parlerà</td>
<td>prenderà</td>
<td>partirà</td>
<td>finirà</td>
<td>(he/she/you will talk, have, leave, finish)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parleremo</td>
<td>prenderemo</td>
<td>partiremo</td>
<td>finiremo</td>
<td>(we will speak, have, leave, finish)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parlerete</td>
<td>prenderete</td>
<td>partirete</td>
<td>finirete</td>
<td>(you will speak, have, leave, finish)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parleranno</td>
<td>prenderanno</td>
<td>partiranno</td>
<td>finiranno</td>
<td>(they will speak, have, leave, finish)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Fun & Games

Fill in the missing words with one of three possible answers under each sentence. See Appendix D for the answer key.

1. **Quest’anno andiamo in _______.** (This year we’re going to the mountains.)
   a. albergo
   b. montagna
   c. aereo

2. **Il volo parte _______ Palermo alle tre.** (The flight leaves from Palermo at three o’clock.)
   a. da
   b. su
   c. a

3. **Passo le vacanze in _______.** (I spend my vacation in the country.)
   a. mare
   b. campagna
   c. montagna

4. **Dov’è la mia ______?** (Where is my suitcase?)
   a. stanza
   b. piscina
   c. valigia

5. **È un ______ orgaizato.** (It’s an organized trip.)
   a. viaggio
   b. treno
   c. volo
In This Chapter
▶ Banking transactions
▶ Trading currencies
▶ Charging purchases
▶ Knowing various currencies

On the one hand, you can never have enough of it; on the other hand, money can cause trouble. This is particularly true for situations abroad or when you’re dealing with foreign money in general. This chapter doesn’t cover only currency — you know how tiresome converting foreign currencies can be — but all the terms you need to know about money.

Going to the Bank

Dealing with banks isn’t always fun, but sometimes you can’t avoid them. You aren’t often in the position of being able to cash a big check; you may have other, more painful, transactions to perform. In this section, we give you some banking terms that can help you manage a dialogue in a bank.

You may need to go to the bank for several reasons. For example, you may want to cambiare valuta (kahm-bee-ah-reh vah-looh-tah) (to change money), prelevare contante (preh-leh-vah-reh cohn-tahn-tee) (to withdraw money), versare soldi sul tuo conto (vehr-sah-reh sohl-dee soohl tooh-oh kohn-toh) (to deposit money into your account). Other reasons could be aprire un conto (ah-pree-reh oohn kohn-toh) (to open an account), or riscuotere un assegno (rees-kwoh-teh-reh oohn ahs-seh-nyoh) (to cash a check).

Other phrases you may find helpful include:

тика Mi dispiace, il suo conto è scoperto. (mee dees-pyay-cheh eel sooh-oh kohn-toh eh skoh-pehr-toh) (I’m sorry, your account is overdrawn.)

тика Può girare l’assegno per favore? (pwoh jee-rah-reh lahs-seh-nyoh pehr fah-voh-reh) (Could you endorse the check, please?)
When you are in the lucky situation of having money left, you may like to invest it. Here is some of the present tense conjugation for *investire* (een-vehs-tee-reh) (*to invest*), which is conjugated like any other regular -IRE verb without the “isc” (see Chapter 2).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conjugation</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>io investo</td>
<td>ee-oh een-vehs-toh</td>
<td>I invest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu investi</td>
<td>tooh een-vehs-tee</td>
<td>you invest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lui/lei inve ste</td>
<td>looh-ee/ley een-vehs-teh</td>
<td>he/she invests</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To make life easier for you and to help you avoid standing in front of closed doors, we give you the hours of Italian banks: Banks are open Monday through Friday, generally from 8:30 a.m. to 1:30 p.m; then they reopen from 2:30 to 4 p.m. These are general guidelines; the hours differ from city to city.

---

**Talkin’ the Talk**

Il signor Blasio asks for a statement of his account. He talks to un’impiegata (ooh-neem-pyeh-gah-tah) (a female employee).

**Sig. Blasio:**  
*Vorrei riscuotere un assegno.*  
vohr-ray rees-kwoh-teh-reh oohn ahs-seh-nyoh  
I’d like to cash a check.

**Clerk:**  
*Un documento, per favore. Firma questa ricevuta, per favore.*  
oohn doh-kooh-mehn-toh pehr fah-voh-reh. feer-mee kwehs-tah ree-cheh-vooh-tah pehr fah-voh-reh  
Some ID please. Please sign this receipt.

**Sig. Blasio:**  
*Vorrei anche il mio estratto conto.*  
vohr-rey ahn-keh eel mee-oh ehs-traht-toh kohn-toh  
I’d like to get my bank statement too.

**Clerk:**  
*Il suo numero di conto?*  
eel sooh-oh nooh-meh-roh dee kohn-toh  
Your account number?
Chapter 13: Money, Money, Money

Sig. Blasio:  Sette zero cinque nove.
 Florida seven zero five nine.


Ecco a lei!
Here you are!

Sig. Blasio:  Grazie mille, arrivederci!
Thanks so much, good-bye!

Words to Know

conto [m] corrente  kohn-toh  checking account
kohr-rehn-teh  bank statement
estratto conto [m]  ehs-traht-toh  bank statement
kohn-toh  statement
tasso d'interesse  tahs-soh  interest rate
deen-teh-rehs-seh
libretto [m] degli assegni  lee-breht-toh deh-lyee ahs-seh-nyee  checkbook
carta di credito  kahr-tah dee kreh-dee-toh  credit card
ricevuta [f]  ree-cheh-vooh-tah  receipt
girare  jee-rah-reh  to endorse
riscuotere  rees-kwoh-teh-reh  to cash
Changing Money

You’re more likely to need to change money when you’re abroad. If you’re in Italy and want to change some dollars into euros (eh-ooh-roh), you would go either to a banca (bahn-kah) (to the bank) or to an ufficio di cambio (oohf-fee-choh dee kahm-bee-oh) (exchange office), or more common still, an ATM machine. Some places definitely offer better exchange rates, so shop around if you have time.

Because Italy is highly frequented by tourists from all over the world, the clerks in exchange offices have experience with people speaking English. Still, you just might want to complete a transaction in an exchange office in Italian.

Talkin’ the Talk

Liza Campbell, an American tourist, needs to change some dollars for euros. She goes to a bank and talks to the teller.

Hello, I’d like to change some dollars into euros.

Teller: Benissimo. Quanti dollari? beh-nees-see-moh kwahn-tee dohl-lah-ree
Very well. How many dollars?

Ms. Campbell: Duecento. Quant’è il cambio? dooh-eh-chehn-toh kwahn-teh eel kahm-bee-oh
Two hundred. What’s the exchange?

Teller: Oggi un euro costa un dollaro e venti più cinque euro di commissione oj-jee oohn eh-ooh-roh kohs-tah oohn dohl-lah-roh eh vehn-tee pyoooh cheen-kweh eh-ooh-roh-deh kohm-mees-syoh-neh
Today the euro costs a dollar and twenty cents plus five euros for the service charge.

Ms. Campbell: Va bene. vah beh-neh
Okay.
Chapter 13: Money, Money, Money

Teller: Mi serve un documento.
I need some ID.

Ms. Campbell: Ecco.
Here.

Teller: Sono 175 Euro meno i 5 Euro di commissione.
It comes to 175 euros less the 5 euro exchange fee.

Ms. Campbell: Grazie mille!
Thanks a million!

Nowadays, changing money is not the most efficient way to get the local currency. In Italy, as in most Western countries, you can find a bancomat (ATM) almost anywhere. Also, depending on where you shop and eat, you can pay directly with a carta di credito (credit card). The following phrases can help you find the cash you need (or at least the cash machine):

✓ Dov’è il bancomat più vicino? (Where is the nearest ATM?)
✓ Posso pagare con la carta di credito? (May I pay with my credit card?)
✓ Mi scusi, potrebbe cambiarmi una banconota da100 euro? (Excuse me, would you be able to change a 100 euro bill?)
✓ Mi dispiace, non accettiamo carte di credito. (I’m sorry, we don’t accept credit cards.)
✓ Mi dispiace, non ho spiccioli. (I’m sorry, I haven’t any small change.)
Using Credit Cards

In Canada and the United States you could take care of almost all your financial needs without ever handling cash. You can pay for almost everything with your debit or credit card. You can even use your credit card to get cash at ATMs and in some banks. This is the same in Italy, although cash is still the customary form of payment in many parts of Italy.

Talkin’ the Talk

Ms. Johnson wants to withdraw some euros with her credit card but discovers that the ATM is out of order. She enters the bank and asks the cashier what’s up.

Ms. Johnson: **Scusi, il bancomat non funziona.**
*skooh-zee eel bahn-koh-maht nohn fooohn-tyoh-nah*
Excuse me, the ATM isn’t working.

Cashier: **Lo so, signora, mi dispiace!**
*loh soh see-nyoh-rah mee dees-pyah-choh*
I know, madam, I’m sorry!
Ms. Johnson: *Ma ho bisogno di contanti.*
But I need cash.

Cashier: *Può prelevarli qui alla cassa.*
You can withdraw it here at the counter.

Ms. Johnson: *D’accordo, grazie.*
OK, thanks.

Normally, things go easily and you don’t have any problems using credit cards. But you may be asked to show your identification for security purposes. The following phrases can help you be prepared for this situation:

- **Potrei vedere un documento per favore?** (May I please see your identification?)
- **Potrebbe darmi il suo passaporto, per favore?** (Would you please give me your passport?)
- **Il suo indirizzo?** (What is your address?)

You may have to wait to exchange money. The following sentence says all you need to know about this rather formal verb: **attendere** (to wait).

| Attendere, per favore | (Please wait.) |

**Talkin’ the Talk**

While Ms. Johnson explores her options with the cashier, another person enters the bank and starts to complain:

Signora Gradi: *Il bancomat ha mangiato la mia carta.*
The cash machine has eaten my card.

Teller: *Ha digitato il numero giusto?* Did you enter the right number?
Signora Gradi: Certo! Che domanda!
*chehr-toh keh doh-mahn-dah*  
Of course! What a question!

Teller: Mi scusi, a volte capita.
*mee skoo-zee ah vohl-teh kah-pee-tah*  
Excuse me, but it can happen.

Signora Gradi: Cosa posso fare?
*koh-sah pohs-soh fah-reh*  
What can I do?

Teller: Attendia un momento . . .
aht-tehn-dah oohn moh-mehn-toh  
Wait a moment . . .

---

**Words to Know**

**Certo!**  
*chehr-toh*  
Of course!

**il bancomat [m]**  
*eel bahn-koh-maht*  
the ATM

**digitare**  
*dee-gee-tah-reh*  
to enter

**prelevare**  
*preh-leh-vah-reh*  
to withdraw

**funzionare**  
foon-tyoh-nah-reh  
to work; to function

**contanti [m]**  
*kohn-tahn-tee*  
cash

**Che domanda!**  
*keh doh-mahn-dah*  
What a question!

---

**Looking at Various Currencies**

Along with many other European countries, the Italian monetary unit is the **euro** (*eh-ooh-roh*). There are 1 euro coins and 2 euro coins, and then larger bills (5, 10, 20, 50, 100, and so on). The plural form is **euro** (*eh-ooh-roh*), and the abbreviation is €. (That’s right, the singular and the plural forms are
exactly the same). Smaller denominations are in **centesimi** (chehn-teh-zee-mee) *(cents)*, and are coins. (You can check out Chapter 4 for numbers.)

---

**Talkin’ the Talk**

Patrizia is planning her vacation to Croatia. She is planning on taking the **aliscafo** (ah-leeh-skah-foh) *(high speed ferry)* from Ancona tomorrow. She talks to her friend, Milena, about exchanging her money.

**Patrizia:**  
*Sai qual’è il cambio euro in kuna croata?*  
sayh kwah-leh eel kahm-bee-oh een kooh-nah kroh-ah-tah  
Do you know the exchange rate for euros to Croatian kuna?

**Milena:**  
*Non ne ho idea!*  
nohn neh oh ee-deh-ah  
I have no idea!

**Patrizia:**  
*Domani parto per Zara per un mese...*  
doh-mah-nee pahr-toh pehr dsah-rah perh oohn meh-zeh  
Tomorrow I’m leaving for Zara for a month.

**Milena:**  
*. . . e non hai ancora cambiato!*  
eh nohn ahy ahn-koh-rah kahm-bee-ah-toh  
. . . and you haven’t changed your money yet!

**Patrizia:**  
*Posso farlo al porto.*  
pohs-soh fahr-loh ahl pohr-toh  
I can do it at the port.

**Milena:**  
*Ma no, è più caro!*  
mah noh eh pyooh kah-roh  
No, that’s more expensive!

**Patrizia:**  
*Mi accompagni in banca?*  
mee ahk-kohm-pah-nyee een bahn-kah  
Will you come with me to the bank?
The **euro** is legal tender in 17 of the 27 countries that belong to the European Union (EU). So, if you travel among EU countries after you have euros in your possession, you don’t have to change money in every country you visit. Since 2002, the Italian **lira** has disappeared, and the euro is the only valid currency in Italy.

Table 13-1 shows the currencies of various countries.

### Table 13-1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Italian</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>English single/plural</th>
<th>Where used</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dollaro/dollari</td>
<td>dohl-lah-roh/</td>
<td>dollar/dollars</td>
<td>Canada; United States</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dohl-lah-ree</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lira/e sterlina/e</td>
<td>lee-rah/eh</td>
<td>pound/pounds</td>
<td>Ireland; United Kingdom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>stehr-lee-nah/neh</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peseta/pesetas</td>
<td>peh-seh-tah/</td>
<td>pesetas/pesetas</td>
<td>Mexico</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>peh-seh-tahs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Talkin’ the Talk

Cristina is at the bank. **Allo sportello** (*ahl*-loh spohr-tehl-loh) (at the counter), she sees that her high school buddy Paolo is now the bank teller.

**Patrizia:** Ciao Paolo. Vorrei cambiare cinquecento euro in sterline.

*Chou pah-oh-loh vohr-rey kahm-bee-ah-reh cheen-kweh-chehn-toh eh-oohr-roh een stehr-lee-neh*

Hi Paolo. I’d like to change 500 euros into British pounds.

**Teller:** Vai in Inghilterra?

*Vahy een een-geehl-tehr-rah*

Are you going to England?

**Patrizia:** Si.

*See*

Yes.
Teller: Sai che puoi usare il bancomat ed è anche più sicuro.
Do you know that you can use the ATM machine and that it’s even safer?

Patrizia: Hai ragione, allora cambio solo duecento euro.
You’re right: I’m just going to change 200 euros.

Teller: Ecco le tue sterline, fai buon viaggio!
Here are your pounds, have a good trip!

Words to Know

prendere prehn-deh-reh to take
viaggio [m] vyahj-joh trip
aeroporto [m] ah-eh-roh-pohr-toh airport
cambiare kahm-bee-ah-reh to exchange
domani doh-mah-nee tomorrow
Fun & Games

Here’s a little game for you. First define each word from this chapter, and then find them in the word search puzzle. See Appendix D for the answer key.

Banca _____________________________
Bancomat __________________________
Cambiare __________________________
Cartadicredito ______________________
Contanti ___________________________
Documento _________________________
Dollaro ____________________________

Euro ______________________________
Kuna ______________________________
Ricevuta __________________________
Spiccioli __________________________
Sportello __________________________
Sterline ____________________________

---
Whether you’re visiting Italy or you just need to explain to an Italian-speaking friend how to get across town, transportation vocabulary really comes in handy. This chapter helps you make your way through the airport and also helps you secure transportation to get where you’re going once you’re on the ground, either by taxi, bus, car, or train. Further, I show you what to do at customs, how to find missing luggage, and how to rent a car. Andiamo (ahn-dyah-moh) — let’s go!

Getting through the Airport

You’re lucky, because it’s very likely that you can get by with English when you’re at an Italian airport. Both Italian and English are usually spoken there. But, you just may be in a situation where the person next to you in an airport only knows Italian. Just in case, I want to provide you with some useful navigational material. Besides, you’ll probably want a chance to practice the language in which you will be immersed once you step outside the airport.
Checking in

The moment you finally get rid of your luggage is called check-in — in Italian accettazione (ahch-cheht-tah-tsyoh-neh). Actually, people often use “check-in” in Italian, too. You also pick up your boarding pass at the check-in counter, so speaking is usually inevitable. The following dialogue contains some of the sentences people commonly exchange.

Talkin’ the Talk

Ms. Adami is checking in. She shows her ticket and passport to the agent and leaves her suitcases at the counter.

Agent: Il suo biglietto, per favore.  
eel sooh-oh bee-lyeht-toh pehr fah-voh-reh  
Your ticket, please.

Sig.ra Adami: Ecco.  
ehk-koh  
Here it is.

Agent: Passaporto?  
pahs-sah-pohr-toh  
Passport?

Sig.ra Adami: Prego.  
preh-goh  
Here you are.

Agent: Quanti bagagli ha?  
kwahn-tee bah-gah-lyee ah  
How many suitcases do you have?

Sig.ra Adami: Due valigie e un bagaglio a mano.  
dooh-eh vah-lee-jeh eh oohn bah-gah-lyoh ah  
mahn-noh  
Two suitcases and one piece of carry-on luggage.

Agent: Qual è la sua destinazione?  
qwahl eh lah sooh-ah deh-stee-nahts-tyoh-neh  
What is your destination?
Sig.ra Adami: New York.
Agent: Ha fatto Lei le proprie valige?
Sig.ra Adami: Si.
Agent: Le ha sempre avute sotto mano da quando le ha chiuse?
Sig.ra Adami: Si; posso avere un posto vicino al finestrino, per favore?
L'imbarco è alle nove e quindici, uscita tre. Prosegua al controllo di sicurezza.
Dealing with excess baggage

Sometimes you take so many things with you, and your suitcases are so heavy, that the airline charges an extra fee to transport your luggage. The truth is that you really can’t say much; you simply have to pay.

✓ Questa valigia eccede il limite. (qwehs-tah vah-lee-jah ehch-cheh-deh eel lee-mee-teh) (This bag is over the weight limit.)

✓ Ha un eccesso di bagaglio. (ah oohn ehch-ches-soh dee bah-gah-lyoh) (You have excess luggage.)

✓ Deve pagare un supplemento. (deh-veh pah-gah-reh oohn soohp-pleh-mehn-toh) (You have to pay a surcharge.)

✓ Quessto bagaglio a mano eccede le misure. (kwehs-toh bah-gah-lyoh ah mah-noh ehch-cheh-deh leh mee-zooh-reh) (This carry-on bag exceeds the size limit.)

Before you go to the airport, always find out the weight limit of your bags and how much an extra suitcase will cost. This way you can buy an extra suitcase if necessary and avoid having to throw out precious items at check-in.
Waiting to board the plane

Before boarding, you may encounter unforeseen situations, such as delays. If you do, you’ll probably want to ask some questions. Read the following dialogue for an example of what you can say when you’re dealing with a delay.

Talkin’ the Talk

Mr. Campo is in the boarding area. He asks the agent if his flight is on time. Always be prepared for cryptic answers.

Sig. Campo:  *Il volo è in orario?*
  *eel voh-loh eh een oh-rah-ree-oh*
  Is the flight on time?

Agent:  *No, è in ritardo.*
  *noh eh een ree-tahr-doh*
  No, there has been a delay.

Sig. Campo:  *Di quanto?*
  *dee kwahn-toh*
  How much?

Agent:  *Non si sa.*
  *nohn see sah*
  No one knows.

Words to Know

- **supplemento [m]**  soohp-pleh-mehn-toh  supplement
- **circa**  cheer-kah  about
- **in ritardo**  een ree-tahr-doh  late; delayed
- **volo [m]**  voh-loh  flight
- **in orario**  een oh-rah-ree-oh  on time
Part III: Italian on the Go

Coping after landing

After you exit a plane in Italy, you are immediately hit by voices speaking a foreign language. You have to take care of necessities, such as finding a bathroom, changing money, looking for the baggage claim area, and securing a luggage cart and a taxi. The following dialogues give you an idea of how these situations may play out.

Talkin’ the Talk

Mrs. Johnson just arrived at the airport in Milan. First, she wants to withdraw money to pay for a taxi and to hold her over for the first few days. She asks a porter where she can do so.

Mrs. Johnson: Mi scusi?
mee skooh-zee
Excuse me?

Porter: Prego!
preh-goh
Yes, please!

Mrs. Johnson: Dov’è un bancomat?
doh-veh oohn bahn-koh-maht
Where is an ATM?

Porter: In fondo al corridoio vicino all’ufficio cambio, signora.
een fohn-doh ahl coh-ree-doi-oh vee-chee-noh ahl-loohf-feech-oh kahm-bee-oh see-nyoh-rah
At the end of the corridor near the money exchange office.

Mrs. Johnson: C’è anche una banca?
cheh ahn-keh ooh-nah bahn-kah
Is there also a bank?
Passerby: No, c’è soltanto uno sportello di cambio.
Noh cheh sohl-tahn-toh ooh-noh spoehr-tehl-l oh dee kahnm-bee-oh
No, there is only a window to change money.

Mrs. Johnson: Benissimo. Grazie mille.
beh-nee-see-moh. Grah-tsee-eh meel-leh
Thank you very much.

Mrs. Johnson withdraws some money and then needs to pick up her luggage. She asks a woman passing by where she can find a luggage cart.

Mrs. Johnson: Scusi, Dove sono i carrelli?
skooh-zee doh-veh soh-noh ee kahr-rehl-lee
Excuse me. Where are the luggage carts?

Woman: Al ritiro bagagli.
ahl ree-teh-roh bah-gah-lyee
At the baggage claim.

Mrs. Johnson: Servono monete?
sehr-voh-noh moh-neh-teh
Do I need coins/change?

Woman: Si, da un Euro.
see dah oohn eh-ooeh-roh
Yes, 1 euro.

Visitors from countries in the European Union need only la carta d’identità (lah kahr-tah dee-dehn-tee-tah) (the identity card) to enter Italy. Nationals of all other countries need a valid passaporto (pahs-sah-pohr-toh) (passport), and sometimes also a visa. Usually, at controllo passaporti (kohn-trohl-loh pahs-sah-pohr-tee) (passport control), you don’t exchange many words, and the ones you do exchange are usually routine. The following section gives you a typical dialogue at passport control.
Words to Know

arrivo [m] ahr-ree-voh arrival
partenza [f] pahr-tehn-zah departure
vacanza [f] vah-kahn-zah vacation
consegna bagagli [f] kohn-seh-nyah bah-gah-lyee baggage claim
cambio [m] kahm-bee-oh money exchange
destinazione [f] dehs-tee-nah-zyoh-neh destination
entrata [f] ehn-trah-tah entrance

Going through Customs

You can’t get into a foreign country without going through customs. When you have something to declare, you do so alla dogana (ahl-lah doh-gah-nah) (at customs). These examples should relieve you of any possible worries. Generally, you can just walk through the line that says “Niente da dichiarare,” (nee-ehn-teh dah dee-kyah-rah-reh) (nothing to declare) and no one will say anything to you, but sometimes you may be stopped.

Niente da dichiarare? (nee-ehn-teh dah dee-kyah-rah-reh) (Anything to declare?)
No, niente. (noh nee-ehn-teh) (No, nothing.)
Per favore, apra questa valigia. (pehr fah-voh-reh ah-prah kwehs-tah vah-lee-jah) (Please, open this suitcase.)
È nuovo il computer? (eh nwoh-voh eel kohm-pu-tehr) (Is this computer new?)
Si, ma è per uso personale. (see mah eh pehr ooh-zoh pehr-soh-nah-leh) (Yes, but it’s for personal use.)
Per questo deve pagare il dazio. (pehr kwehs-toh deh-veh pah-gah-reh eel dah-tsee-oh) (You have to pay duty on this.)
When you pass through customs, you may have to declare any goods that you purchased, if over a certain dollar/euro amount.

*Ho questo/queste cose da dichiarare.* (oh kwehs-toh/kwehs-teh koh-zeh dahn dee-kyah-rah-reh) *(I have to declare this/these things.)*

### Losing Luggage

Losing luggage is always a possibility when flying to Italy, especially if you’re changing planes, but don’t despair: 80 percent of misplaced luggage turns up within 24 hours, and the other 20 percent within three days (usually). The airline will deliver your bags to your hotel or apartment, or you can go back to the airport for them if you need them sooner.

What follows is a typical dialogue.

**Talkin’ the Talk**

Giancarlo, Teresa, and Emilia have just arrived at the Bologna airport via Amsterdam, but their bags are not on the baggage claim belt.

**Giancarlo:** *Ci sono altre valige dal volo da Amsterdam?*  
chee soh-noh ahl-treh vah-lee-jeh dahl voh-loh  
dah ahm-stehr-dahm  
Are there other bags from the Amsterdam flight?

**Facchino (Porter):** *Non ce ne sono altre.*  
nohn cheh neh soh-noh ahl-treh  
No, there are no more.

**Giancarlo:** *Le nostre mancano.*  
leh nohs-treh mahn-kah-noh.  
Ours are missing.

**Cosa dobbiamo fare?**  
koh-sah dohb-byah-moh fah-reh  
What should we do?

**Facchino:** *Si rivolga allo sportello Bagagli Smarriti.*  
see ree-vohl-gah ahl-loh spoehr-tehl-loh bah-gah-lyee zmahr-ree-tee  
Go to the the Missing Baggage window.
(At the Missing Baggage window.)

Impiegato (Employee): **Dica pure.**

How can I help you?

Giancarlo: **Non sono arrivati i nostri bagagli da Amsterdam.**

Our bags from Amsterdam didn’t arrive.

Impiegato: **Avete le ricevute dei bagagli?**

Do you have the baggage receipts?

Giancarlo: **Eccole qui.**

Here they are.

Impiegato: **Bisogna riempire questo modulo con il vostro recapito, numero di telefono, e descrizione dei bagagli.**

You need to fill out this form with your address, phone number and description of the bags.

Noi vi telefoneremo appena arriveranno.

We’ll call you as soon as they arrive.
Renting a Car

Italy is a beautiful country, and if you visit, you may want to consider taking driving tours of the cities and the countryside. If you don’t have a car, renting one to visit various places is a good idea, but don’t forget that Italian traffic is not very relaxed, Italians don’t stay in their own lanes on highways, and finding a place to park can tax your patience — especially in town centers, some of which don’t even allow cars. Even medium-sized cars often cannot get through narrow streets and make turns where cars are allowed. I don’t want to scare you, though; just enjoy the adventure!

To drive a car or motorcycle in Italy, you must be at least 18 years old. Furthermore, you need a valid patente (pah-tehn-teh) (driver’s license). Finding a car to rent is easy at all airports.
Whether you rent a car by phone, online, or directly from a rental service, the process is the same: Just tell the rental company what kind of car you want and under what conditions you want to rent it. Research your options before getting to Italy if possible: This way, you will have a car waiting for you upon your arrival. The following dialogue represents a typical conversation on this topic.

**Talkin’ the Talk**

Mr. Brown is staying in Italy for two weeks and wants to rent a car to visit different cities. He goes to the rental service booth at the airport and talks to l’impiegato (leem-pyeh-gah-toh) (the employee).

Mr. Brown: **Vorrei noleggiare una macchina.**

vohr-rey noh-lehj-jah-reh ooh-nah mahk-kee-nah

I would like to rent a car.

Agent: **Che tipo?**

keh tee-poh

What kind?

Mr. Brown: **Di media cilindrata col cambio automatico.**

dee meh-dee-ah chee-leen-drah-tah kohl kahn-bee-oh ou-toh-mah-tee-koh

A mid-size with an automatic transmission.

Agent: **Per quanto tempo?**

pehr kwahn-toh tehm-poh

For how long?

Mr. Brown: ** Una settimana.**

ooh-nah seh-ttee-mah-nah

One week.

**Quanto è per la settimana?**

kwahn-toh eh pehr lah seh-ttee-mah-nah

What does it cost for a week?

Agent: **C’è una tariffa speciale: 18 Euro al giorno.**

cheh ooh-nah tah-reef-fah speh-chah-leh deech-oht-toh eh-ooehr-oh ahl johr-noh

There is a special rate; 18 Euros per day.
Chapter 14: Getting Around: Planes, Trains, Taxis, and Buses

Mr. Brown: L’assicurazione è inclusa?
lahs-see-kooh-tyoh-neh eh een-klooh-zah
Is insurance included?

Agent: Si, con la polizza casco.
see kohn lah pooh-leets-tsah kahs-koh
Yes, a comprehensive policy.

Other words and expressions that you may need when renting a car or getting fuel at a gas station include the following:

✓ l’aria condizionata (lah-ree-ah kohn-dee-see-oh-nah-tah) (air conditioning)
✓ il cabriolet (eel kah-bree-oh-leh) (convertible)
✓ fare benzina (fah-ree behn-dzee-nah) (to put in gas)
✓ Faccia il pieno. (lahch-chah eel pyeh-noh) (Fill it up.)
✓ la benzina verde (lah behn-dzee-nah vehr-deh) (unleaded fuel)
✓ la benzina super (lah behn-dzee-nah sooh-pehr) (premium fuel)
✓ Controlli l’olio. (kohn-trohl-lee loh-lyoh) (Check the oil.)

A car with an automatic transmission will cost you significantly more because these are rare in Italy, where everyone drives a car with a manual shift.

Navigating Public Transportation

If you’d rather not drive yourself, you can get around quite comfortably using public transportation, such as taxis, trains, and buses. The following sections tell you how to do so in Italian.

Calling a taxi

The process of hailing a taxi is the same in Italy as it is in the United States — you even use the same word: Taxi (tah-ksee) has entered the Italian language. The only challenge for you is that you have to communicate in Italian. Here are some phrases to help you on your way:

✓ Può chiamarmi un taxi? (pwoh kyah-mahr-mee oohn tah-ksee)
  (Can you call me a taxi?)
Part III: Italian on the Go

✓ Vorrei un taxi, per favore. (voehr-ray oohn tah-ksee pehr fah-voehr-reh)
  (I'd like a taxi, please.)

In case you are asked per quando? (pehr kwaahn-doh) (for when?), you need to be prepared with an answer. Following are some common ones:

✓ subito (sooh-bee-toh) (right now)
✓ fra un’ora (frah oohn-oh-rah) (in one hour)
✓ alle due del pomeriggio (ahl-leh dooh-eh dehl poh-meh-reej-joh)
  (at 2:00 p.m.)
✓ domani mattina alle 5 e mezzo (doh-mah-nee maht-tee-nah ahl-leh cheen-qweh eh meht-so)
  (tomorrow morning at 5:00 a.m.)

After you seat yourself in a taxi, the driver will ask where to take you. Here are some potential destinations:

✓ Alla stazione, per favore. (ahl-lahh stah-tsoh-neh pehr fah-voehr-reh)
  (To the station, please.)
✓ All’areoporto. (ahl-lah-reh-oh-pohr-toh) (To the airport.)
✓ In via Veneto. (een veh-neh-toh) (To via Veneto.)
  (To this address: via Leopardi, number 3.)

Finally, you have to pay. Simply ask the driver Quant’è? (kwaahn-teh)
  (How much is it?) For more information about money, see Chapter 13.

Moving by train

You can buy a train ticket alla stazione (ahl-lahh stah-tsoh-neh) (at the station)
  or at un’agenzia di viaggi (ooh-nah-jehn-tsee-ah vee-ahh-jeh-jee) (a travel agency). If you want to take a treno rapido (treh-noh rah-peh-doh) (express train) that stops only in the main stations, you pay a supplemento (soohh-pleh-mehn-toh) (surcharge). You can travel first class or second class. On some trains it’s a good idea to reserve your seat; on others a reservation is absolutely required. The faster trains in Italy are called Inter City (IC) — or Euro City (EC), if their final destination is outside Italy. The Euro Star and the different kinds of Freccia are even faster options (the Frecciarossa and Frecciaargentino being the fastest at 250 + kilometers per hour).

Keep in mind that in Italy you have to validate your ticket before entering il binario (eel bee-nah-reh-oh) (the platform; the track). Therefore, the train station positions validation boxes in front of the platforms.
You can find out all about trains by checking out the Italian national rail website www.trenitalia.com. This will tell you about duration, price, and even let you purchase your ticket ahead of time.

**Talkin’ the Talk**

Bianca is at the train station in Rome. She goes to an information counter (ufficio informazioni) (oohf-feech-oh een-fohr-mats-yoh-neh) to ask about a connection to Perugia.

Bianca:  
**Ci sono treni diretti per Perugia?**
chee soh-noh treh-nee dee-reht-tee pehr peh-rooh-jah  
Are there direct trains to Perugia?

Agent:  
**No, deve prendere un treno per Terni.**
noh deh-veh prehn-deh-reh oohn treh-noh pehr tehr-nee  
No, you have to take a train to Terni.

Bianca:  
**E poi devo cambiare?**
eh poi deh-voh kahm-byah-reh  
And then do I have to change [trains]?

Agent:  
**Si, prende un locale per Perugia.**
see prehn-deh oohn loh-kah-leh pehr peh-rooh-jah  
Yes, you take a local (slow) train for Perugia.

Bianca:  
**A che ora parte il prossimo treno?**
ah keh oh-rah pahr-teh eel prohs-see-moh treh-noh  
What time does the next train leave?

Agent:  
**Alle diciotto e arriva a Terni alle diciannove.**
ahl-leh dee-chohht-toh eh ahr-ree-vah ah tehr-nee  
ahl-leh dee-chahn-noh-veh  
At 18 hours (6 p.m.). It arrives in Terni at 19 hours (7 p.m.).

Bianca:  
**E per Perugia?**
eh pehr peh-rooh-jah  
And to Perugia?

Agent:  
**C’è subito la coincidenza.**
cheh sooh-bee-toh lah koh-een-chee-dehn-zah  
There is an immediate connection.
After exploring your options, you have to make a decision and buy a ticket. In the following dialogue, Bianca does just that.

**Talkin’ the Talk**

Bianca goes to the ticket counter and buys her ticket.

**Bianca:** _Un biglietto per Perugia, per favore._

*oohn bee-lyeht-toh pehr peh-rooh-jah pehr fah-voh-reh*

One ticket to Perugia, please.

**Agent:** _Andata e ritorno?_  

*ahn-dah-tah eh ree-tohr-noh*

Round trip?

**Bianca:** _Solo andata. Quanto viene?_  

*soh-loh ahn-dah-tah kwahn-toh vyeh-neh*

One-way. How much does it cost?

**Agent:** _In prima classe 30 euro._  

*een pree-mah klahs-seh trehn-tah eh-ooh-roh*

First class [costs] 30 euros.

**Bianca:** _E in seconda?_  

*eh een seh-kohn-dah*

And second [class]?

**Agent:** _Diciotto._  

*deech-oht-toh*

18.

**Bianca:** _Seconda classe, per favore._  

*seh-kohn-dah klahs-seh pehr fah-voh-reh*

Second class, please.

**Agent:** _Da che binario parte?_  

*dah keh bee-nah-ree-oh pahr-teh*

From which track does it leave?

**Bianca:** _Binario tre._  

*bee-nah-ree-oh treh*

Track 3.
Chapter 14: Getting Around: Planes, Trains, Taxis, and Buses

Going by bus or tram

To get from point A to point B without a car, you most likely walk or take the bus or tram or subway in bigger cities. We provide the appropriate Italian vocabulary for such situations in this section.

Some Italian cities have streetcars, or trams, and most have buses. Incidentally, in Italian they spell it *il tram* and pronounce it *eel trahm*. The Italian word for bus is *l’autobus* (*lou-toh-boohs*) — and the little buses are called *il pulmino* (*eel poohl-mee-noh*). Big buses that take you from one city to another are called *il pullman* (*eel poohl-mahn*) or *la corriera* (*lah kohr-ree-eh-rah*).

You can buy bus or tram tickets in Italian bars, *dal giornalaio* (*dahl johr-nah-lah-yoh*) (*at newspaper stands*), or *dal tabaccaio* (*dahl tah-bahk-kahy-oh*) (*tobacco shop*). The latter are little shops where you can purchase cigarettes, stamps, newspapers, and so on. You can find them on virtually every street corner in Italy; they’re recognizable by either a black-and-white sign or a blue-and-white sign with a big T on it.

Talkin’ the Talk

Gerardo wants to get to the train station. He’s standing at a bus stop but is a little unsure about which bus to take. He asks a man who is also waiting.
Gerardo: Mi scusi.
  mee skooh-zee
  Excuse me.

Man: Prego?
  preh-goh
  Yes?

Gerardo: Quest’autobus va alla stazione?
  kwehs-tou-toh-books vah ahl-stah-tyoh-neh
  Does this bus go to the station?

Man: Si.
  see
  Yes.

Gerardo: Dove si comprano i biglietti?
  doh-veeh see kohm-prah-noh ee bee-lyeh-tee
  Where can I buy tickets?

Man: In questo bar.
  een kwehs-toh bahr
  In this bar.

You probably aim to take the most convenient and fastest means of transport. To know which one this is, you have to know what’s what and your way about. If you don’t, hopefully you can find a nice person to help you.

**Talkin’ the Talk**

Tom, a Canadian tourist, wants to visit the cathedral downtown. He asks about the bus, but a woman advises him to take the subway because it takes less time. (There are subways in Milan, Rome, Catania, and Naples.)

Tom: Scusi, quale autobus va al Duomo?
  skooh-zee kwah-leh ou-toh-boos vah ahl dwoh-moh
  Excuse me, which bus goes to the Cathedral?

Woman: Perché non prende la metropolitana?
  pehr-keh nohn prehn-deh lah
  meh-troh-poh-lee-tah-nah
  Why don’t you take the subway?
Tom: È meglio?
   eh meh-lyoh
   Is it better?

Woman: Si, ci mette cinque minuti!
   see chee meht-teh cheen-kweh mee-nooh-tee
   Yes, it takes five minutes!

Tom: Dov'è la fermata della metropolitana?
   doh-veh lah fehr-mah-tah dehl-lah
   meh-troh-poh-lee-tah-nah
   Where is the subway station?

Woman: Dietro l’angolo.
   dee-eh-troh lahn-goh-loh
   Around the corner.

On the subway, Tom asks a student where he should to get off:
Note that he uses the tu informal form now.

Tom: Scusa, sai qual è la fermata per il Duomo?
   skooh-zah sahy kwahl eh lah fehr-mah-tah pehr eel
   dwoh-moh
   Excuse me, do you know which is the stop for the Cathedral?

Student: La prossima fermata.
   lah pros-see-mah fehr-mah-tah
   The next stop.

Tom: Grazie!
   grah-tsee-eh
   Thanks!

Student: Prego.
   preh-goh
   You’re welcome.

**Reading maps and schedules**

You don’t need to know much about reading maps except for the little bit of vocabulary written on them. Reading a schedule can be more difficult for travelers because the schedules are usually written only in Italian. You frequently find the following words on schedules:
The schedule shown in Figure 14-1 shows you train names, length of trip, and the difference in prices between first and second class.

Keep in mind that Europeans don’t write a.m. or p.m.; they count the hours from 0.00 to 24.00, otherwise known as military time. Therefore, 1.00 is the hour after midnight, whereas 1:00 p.m. is 13.00.
Being Early or Late

You don’t always arrive on time, and you may have to communicate that you’ll be late or early, or apologize to someone for being delayed. The following list contains important terms that you can use to do so:

✓ **essere in anticipo** (ehs-seh-reh een ahn-tee-chee-poh) *(to be early)*
  
  Probabilmente sarò in anticipo. (proh-bah-heel-mehn-teh sah-rah een ahn tee-chee-poh) *(I’ll probably be early.)*

✓ **essere puntuale** (ehs-seh-reh poohn-tooh-ah-leh) *(to be on time)*
  
  L’autobus non è mai puntuale. *(lou-toh-boohs nohn eh mahy poohn-tooh-ah-leh)* *(The bus is never on time.)*

✓ **essere in ritardo** (ehs-seh-reh een ree-tahr-doh) *(to be late)*

✓ **L’aereo è in ritardo.** *(lah-eh-reh-oh eh een ree-tahr-doh)* *(The plane is late.)*

These examples use the preceding phrases in sentences:

✓ **Mi scusi, sono arrivata in ritardo.** *(mee skooh-zee soh-noh ahr-ree-vaht-ah een ree-tahr-doh)* *(I’m sorry, I arrived late.)*

✓ **Meno male che sei puntuale.** *(meh-noh mah-leh keh sey poohn-tooh-ah-leh)* *(It’s a good thing you’re on time.)*

When talking about lateness, you probably can’t avoid the verb **aspettare** *(ahs-peht-tah-reh)* *(to wait).* Following are a few examples of this verb:

✓ **Aspetto l’autobus da un’ora.** *(ahs-peht-toh lou-toh-boohs dah ooh-noh-rah)* *(I’ve been waiting for the bus for an hour.)*

✓ **Aspetta anche lei il ventitré?** *(ahs-peht-tah ahn-keh leh eel vehn-tee-treh)* *(Are you also waiting for the number 23 bus?)*

✓ **Aspetto mia madre.** *(ahs-peht-toh mee-ah mah-dreh)* *(I’m waiting for my mother.)*

Note that the verb **aspettare** takes no preposition, as the English to wait *(for)* for does.
What a mess! This schedule is really jumbled. The Italian words for train, bus stop, train station, track, ticket, one way, return trip, and surcharge are hidden in the following puzzle. If you want to get to your train on time, you have to solve it. Hurry up!! See Appendix D for the answer key.

**Word Seek**

```
BSMTATAMRFE
ITUDHGTLXLN
NSYPVXLABEDG
APJYPBEIRSHD
RKDAJLGTXFV
IVDULEMRCDQ
OIDYIKAMGGDR
RZJEIXSTEELEK
BCTCPMDQANC
BTHTRSPUFDTK
ORITORNOSONO
STAZIONEZAGA
```
Finding a Place to Stay

In This Chapter
▶ Reserving a place
▶ Arriving at your hotel
▶ Using possessive pronouns and adjectives

To really get to know Italians and the Italian language, and to enjoy the Italian lifestyle, you need to travel to Italy. If you’re not lucky enough to have Italian friends who can offer you a place to stay, you have to find a hotel, of which there are many creative varieties. This chapter shows you how to make yourself understood when you ask for a room or check into a hotel. Plus, we give you a crash course on possessive pronouns and adjectives and the imperative (or command) verb tense.

Choosing a Place to Stay

Do some research about the different places you can stay while you’re in Italy, and try to find those with an authentic flair to them: There is a broad range of places to suit everyone. There are conventional three-to-five-star alberghi (ahl-behr-gee) (hotels) and villaggi turistici (veel-laj-jee tooh-rees-tee-see-chee) (resorts in hot spots like Sardegna that offer either mezza pensione [medz-ah pehn-syoh-neh] [breakfast plus one other meal]) or pensione completa (pehn-syoh-neh kohm-pleh-tah) (breakfast, lunch, and dinner included in the price) options. Then there are smaller, more personal lodgings, which include family-run bed and breakfasts (pronounced just the same as in English, but with the rolled r), and pensioni (pehn-see-oh-nee) (small hotels or part of someone’s house where breakfast is usually served) to mountain rifugi (ree-fooh-jee) (mountain huts that range from spartan to spa quality), and the increasingly popular agriturismo (ah-gree-tooh-reez-moh) (farm stay). And don’t forget all of those former monasteries and convents!
Reserving a Room

When you reserve a room in a hotel, you use the same terms as you do prenotare/fare una prenotazione (preh-noh-tah-reh/fah-reh ooh-nah preh-noh-tats-yoh-neh) (to make a reservation) in a restaurant. Use either of the synonyms la camera (lah kah-meh-rah) or la stanza (lah stahn-zah) (the room). Italian hotel terms may be different than those you’re used to, so I want to spend some time telling you how to ask for what you want in Italian.

La camera singola (lah kah-meh-rah seen-goh-lah) is a room with one twin bed. La camera doppia (lah kah-meh-rah dohp-pee-ah) is a room with two twin beds, whereas la camera matrimoniale (lah kah-meh-rah mahr-tree-moh-nah-ee-ah-leh) has one big bed for two persons.

In Italy, people commonly refer to rooms simply as una doppia, una matrimoniale, and una singola. Everyone understands that you’re talking about hotel rooms. Breakfast is generally included in most hotels, but ask just to be certain. We’re sure we don’t have to tell you that making reservations in advance is important. This is particularly true for the alta stagione (ahl-tah stah-joh-neh) (peak season) — in Italy it’s the summer months.

When you’re making reservations or staying at a hotel, you may have a few questions about the room and the amenities. You’ll probably encounter and use some of these common Italian sentences and phrases:

✓ **La stanza è con bagno?** (lah stahn-zah eh kohn bah-nyoh) (Does the room have a bathroom?) (Even fabulous five-star hotels have some single rooms without bathrooms still, but ask this question only when you’re in a nice hotel if you’re asking for an inexpensive single.)

✓ **Posso avere una stanza con doccia?** (pohs-soh ah-veh-reh ooh-nah stahn-zah kohn dohch-chah) (May I have a room with a shower?)

✓ **Non avete stanze con la vasca?** (nohn ah-veh-teh stahn-zeh kohn lah vahts-kah) (Don’t you have rooms with bathtubs?)

✓ **Avete una doppia al primo piano?** (ah-veh-teh ooh-nah dohp-pee-ah ahl pree-moh pyah-noh) (Do you have a double room on the first floor? Note that this would be the second floor for Americans: Chapter 5 goes into the different floors.)

✓ **È una stanza tranquillissima e dà sul giardino.** (eh ooh-nah stahn-zah trahn-kweel-lees-see-mah eh dah soohl jahr-dee-noh) (The room is very quiet and looks out onto the garden.)

✓ **La doppia viene duecento Euro a notte.** (lah dohp-pee-ah vyeh-neh dooh-eh-chehn-toh ee-ooh-roh ah noht-teh) (A double room costs 200 euros lire per night.)

✓ **La colazione è compresa?** (lah koh-lah-tsyoh-neh eh kohm-preh-zah) (Is breakfast included?)
Può darmi una camera con aria condizionata? (pwoh dahr-mee ooh-nah kah-meh-rah kohn ah-ree-ah kohn-dee-tsee-oh-nah-tah) (Can you give me a room with air conditioning?)

Dove sono i suoi bagagli? (doh-veh soh-noh ee swoi bah-gah-lyee) (Where is your baggage?)

Può far portare le mie valige in camera, per favore? (pwoh fahr pohr-tah-reh leh mee-eh vah-lee-jeh een kah-meh-rah pehr fah-vooh-reh) (Would you please have my bags brought to my room?)

Talkin’ the Talk

Donatella is making reservations for five people. The receptionist says that only two double rooms are left, so Donatella has to figure out how to accommodate all five people.

Donatella: Buonasera.
"bwoh-nah-seh-rah"
Good evening.

Receptionist: Buonasera, prego.
"bwoh-nah-seh-rah preh-goh"
Good evening, can I help you?

Donatella: Avete stanze libere?
"ah-veh-teh stahn-zeh lee-beh-reh"
Do you have any vacant rooms?

Receptionist: Non ha la prenotazione?
"nohn ah lah preh-noh-tah-tyoh-neh"
You don’t have a reservation?

Donatella: Eh, no . . .
"eh noh"
No . . .

Receptionist: Abbiamo soltanto due doppie.
"ahb-tyah-moh sohl-tahn-toh dooh-eh dohp-pee-eh"
We have just two double rooms.

Donatella: Non c’è una stanza con tre letti?
"nohn cheh ooh-nah stahn-zah kohn treh leht-tee"
Isn’t there a room with three beds?

Receptionist: Possiamo aggiungere un letto.
"pohs-see-ah-moh ahj-joyoh-neh-reh oohn leht-toh"
We can add a bed.
**Donatella:** *Benissimo, grazie.*
beh-nee-see-moh *grah-tsee-eh*
Very well, thank you.

---

### Words to Know

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Italian</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aria condizionata</td>
<td>airconditioning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>camera [f] stanza [f]</td>
<td>room</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>camera singola [f]</td>
<td>single room</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>camera doppia [f]</td>
<td>room with two twin beds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>camera matrimoniare [f]</td>
<td>room with a double bed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>colazione [f]</td>
<td>breakfast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>culla [f]</td>
<td>crib</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>letto</td>
<td>extra bed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>supplementare [m]</td>
<td>room service</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mezza pensione</td>
<td>half board</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pensione completa</td>
<td>full board</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>servizio sveglia [m]</td>
<td>wake-up call</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Checking In

Registering at an Italian hotel isn’t as difficult as you might imagine. But do expect the person at the front desk to ask for **un documento** (oohn dohk-ooh-mehn-toh), such as a passport. They might even want to hang on to it for a few hours, but don’t worry, you’ll get it back!

After you’re in your room, you may find that you forgot to bring something you need, or discover that you need something in addition to all you brought. Many rooms come with items like **una cassaforte** (oohn kahs-sah-fohr-teh) (**a safe**) for your valuables, and **un frigorifero** (oohn free-goh-ree-feh-roh) (**a refrigerator**), but you may need help in figuring out how they work. You might also need a **fon** (fohn) (**blow dryer**). In these instances, you can ask the receptionist, the doorman, or the maid for what you need. The following phrases can help you ask for the things you need. Don’t forget to say **scusi** (skooh-zee) (**excuse me**) and **per favore** (pehr-fah-voehr) (**please**)!

- **Non trovo l’asciugacapelli/il fon.** (nohn troh-voh lah-shooh-gah-kah-pehl-lee/il fohn) (**I can’t find the hair dryer.**)
- **manca la carta igenica.** mahn-kah lah kahr-tah ee-jeh-nee-kah) (**There is no toilet paper.**)
- **È ancora aperto il bar?** (eh ahn-koh rah ah-ahr-toh eel bahr) (**Is the bar still open?**)
- **Vorrei un’altra coperta per favore.** (voehr-rey oohn-ahl-trah koh-ahr-toh pahr fahr-voehr-reh) (**I’d like one more blanket please.**)
- **Dov’è la farmacia più vicina?** (doh-veh lah fahr-mah-cheh-ah pyoooh veh-cheh-neh) (**Where is the closest pharmacy?**)
- **Vorrei la sveglia domattina.** (voehr-ray svah-lyah doh-mah-thee-neh) (**I’d like to get an early wake-up call tomorrow morning.**)
- **C’è il telefono nella mia stanza?** (cheh eel teh-leh-toh-noh nehl-lah mee-ah stahn-zah) (**Is there a telephone in my room?**)

If you want another something, notice that you write the feminine form **un’altra** (oohn-ahl-trah) differently than the masculine **un altro** (oohn ahl-troh). Feminine words require an apostrophe; masculine words don’t. This is also valid for all other words that begin with a vowel.
The following list contains more words you may find useful during a hotel stay:

✓ fazzolettino di carta (faht-tsoh-leht-tee-noh dee kahr-tah) (tissue)
✓ lettino (leht-tee-noh) (cot)
✓ negozio di regali (neh-goh-tsee-oh dee reh-gah-lee) (gift shop)
✓ parrucchiere (pahr-roohk-kyeh-reh) (hairdresser)
✓ portacenere (pohr-tah-keh-neh-reh) (ashtray)
✓ piscina (pee-shee-nah) (swimming pool)

Talkin’ the Talk

Mr. Baricco arrives at the hotel where he made reservations two weeks ago. He walks up to the receptionist.

Sig. Baricco: Buonasera, ho una stanza prenotata.  
biwah-nah-seh-rah oh ooh-nah stahn-zah  
preh-noh-tah-tah  
Good evening, I have a reservation.

Receptionist: Il suo nome, prego?  
eel sooh-noh noh-meh preh-goh  
Your name, please?

Sig. Baricco: Baricco.  
bah-reek-koh  
Barrico.

Receptionist: Si, una singola per due notti.  
see ooh-nah seen-goh-lah pehr dooh-eh noht-tee  
Yes, a single (room) for two nights.

Può riempire la scheda, per favore?  
pwoh ree-ehm-pee-reh lah skeh-dah pehr fah-voh-reh  
Could you fill out the form, please?

Sig. Baricco: Certo. Vuole un documento?  
chehr-toh vwoh-leh oohn doh-kooh-mehn-toh  
Sure. Do you want identification?
Chapter 15: Finding a Place to Stay

Receptionist: *Si, grazie . . . Bene . . . la sua chiave la stanza numero quarantadue al quarto piano.*

Yes, thanks . . . Here is your key to room number forty-two, fourth floor.

Sig. Baricco: *Grazie. A che ora è la colazione?*

Thank you. What time is breakfast?

Receptionist: *Dalle sette alle nove.*

From seven till nine.

Sig. Baricco: *Grazie. Buonanotte.*

Thank you. Good-night.

Receptionist: *Buonanotte.*

Good-night.

---

**Words to Know**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>avete</td>
<td>do you (plural) have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dov'è</td>
<td>where is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dove sono</td>
<td>where are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Può ripetere per favore?</td>
<td>Could you repeat that please?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saldare il conto</td>
<td>to check out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indirizzo [m]</td>
<td>address</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 15-1 shows the singular and plural form of several hotel-related words with their proper articles. For more on forming singular and plural articles and nouns, see Chapter 2.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 15-1 Making Plurals</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular Plural</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la cameriera, le cameriere</td>
<td>lah kah-meh-ryeh-rah, leh kah-meh-ryeh-reh</td>
<td>chambermaid, chambermaids, waitress, waitresses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il bagno, i bagni</td>
<td>eel bah-nyoh ee bah-nyee</td>
<td>bathroom, bathrooms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la chiave, le chiavi</td>
<td>lah kyah-veh leh kyah-vee</td>
<td>key, keys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il cameriere, i camerieri</td>
<td>eel kah-meh-ryeh-reh ee kah-meh-ryeh-ree</td>
<td>waiter, waiters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lo specchio, gli specchi</td>
<td>loh spehk-kyoh lyee spehk-kyee</td>
<td>mirror, mirrors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l’albergo, gli alberghi</td>
<td>lahl-behr-goh lyee ahl-behr-gee</td>
<td>hotel, hotels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la stanza, le stanze</td>
<td>lah stahn-zah leh stahn-zeh</td>
<td>room, rooms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la camera, le camere</td>
<td>lah kah-meh-rah leh kah-meh-reh</td>
<td>room, rooms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la persona, le persone</td>
<td>lah pehr-soh-nah leh pehr-soh-neh</td>
<td>person, persons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il letto, i letti</td>
<td>eel leht-toh ee leht-tee</td>
<td>bed, beds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la notte, le notti</td>
<td>lah noht-teh leh noht-tee</td>
<td>night, nights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l’entrata, le entrate</td>
<td>lehn-trah-tah leh ehn-trah-teh</td>
<td>entrance, entrances</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Personalizing pronouns**

As you know, a pronoun is a word you use in a place of a noun: When you say “I go,” you substitute your name with I. I is the personal or subject pronoun. Sometimes you use a pronoun that not only takes the place of a noun but also indicates to whom it belongs. For example, when you say “My bag is red and yours is black,” the possessive pronoun yours represents bag and indicates to whom the bag belongs.
This or these: Demonstrative adjectives and pronouns

In English, you use the pronouns this and these (called demonstrative pronouns) to specify what you’re talking about. This is singular, and these is plural. In Italian, however, which word you use depends on both number and gender because there are masculine and feminine nouns. The demonstrative adjective questo (kwehs-toh) has four forms which agree with the noun that follows (or that it’s substituting, in which case it becomes a pronoun): questo, questa, questi, queste (kwehs-toh, kwehs-tah, kwehs-tee, kwehs-teh). Consider these examples:

✓ Questa è la sua valigia? (kwehs-tah eh lah sooh-ah vah-lee-jah) (Is this your suitcase?)
✓ No, le mie sono queste. (noh leh mee-eh soh-noh kwehs-teh) (No, these are mine.)

In the preceding examples, you see the feminine version of singular and plural (questa and queste, respectively). The following shows the masculine version of singular and plural (questo and questi):

✓ Signore, questo messaggio è per lei. (see-nyooh-reh kwehs-toh mehs-sahj-oh eh pehr ley) (Sir, this message is for you.)
✓ Questi spaghetti sono ottimi! (kwehs-tee spah-geht-tee soh-noh oht-tee-mee) (This spaghetti is great! A literal translation: “these spaghetti are great!” You get the point.)

Yours, mine, and ours: Possessive pronouns

Possessive pronouns (such as my, your, his) indicate possession of something (the noun). In Italian, these words vary according to the gender of the item they refer to. The possessive pronoun must agree in number and gender with the possessed thing or person. Unlike in English, in Italian you almost always put the definite article in front of the possessive determiner. The following table shows the singular and plural definite articles for each gender (but you’ll see that you only need four of these to form possessive adjectives and pronouns):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gender</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Article</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Feminine</td>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>la/l’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feminine</td>
<td>Plural</td>
<td>le</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>il/l’/lo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td>Plural</td>
<td>i/gli</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
When you want to show that something belongs to you and that something is a feminine noun, the possessive *mia* ends in a — such as *la mia valigia* (lah mee-ah vah-lee-jah) (*my suitcase*). When you refer to a masculine word, the possessive ends in *o*, as in *il mio letto* (eel mee-oh leht-toh) (*my bed*).

So, these pronouns get their form from the possessor — *il mio* (eel mee-oh) (*mine*), *il tuo* (eel too-oh) (*yours*), and so on — but their number and gender from the thing possessed. For example, in *è la mia chiave* (eh lah mee-ah kyah-veh) (*it's my key*), *la chiave* is singular and feminine and is, therefore, replaced by the possessive pronoun *mia*. Table 15-2 lists possessive pronouns and their articles.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 15-2 Possessive Pronouns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Possessive Pronoun</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>my/mine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>your/yours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yours (formal)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>his/her/ hers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>our/ours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>your/yours (formal and informal)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>their/ theirs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 15: Finding a Place to Stay

Following are some practical examples using possessive adjectives and pronouns:

- È grande la vostra stanza? (Is your room big?) (plural)
- Dov'è il tuo albergo? (Where is your hotel?)
- Ecco i vostri documenti. (Here are your documents.) (plural)
- Questa è la sua chiave. (This is your [formal] key.) and also (This is his/her key.)
- La mia camera è molto tranquilla. (My room is very quiet.)
- Anche la nostra. E la tua? (Ours, too. And yours [singular]?)

**Talkin' the Talk**

You frequently use possessive pronouns and adjectives, so you need to know how to use them. The following dialogue takes place between members of a family who are trying to sort out who has whose luggage.

Mamma: Dove sono i vostri bagagli?  
(Where are your [plural] bags?)

Michela: Il mio è questo.  
(Mine is this one.)

Mamma: E il tuo, Carla?  
(And yours, Carla?)

Carla: Lo porta Giulio.  
(Giulio is carrying it.)
Mamma: No, Giulio porta il suo.
noh joo-lee-oh pohr-tah eel sooh-oh
No, Giulio is carrying his.

Carla: Giulio, hai il mio bagaglio?
noh kwehs-tee soh-noh ee mee
Giulio, do you have my bag?

Giulio: No, questi sono miei!
noh kwehs-tee soh-ee myei
No, these are mine!

Carla: Sei sicuro?
say see-kooh-roh
Are you sure?

Giulio: Com’è la tua valigia?
koh-meht lah tooh-ah vah-lee-jah
What does your suitcase look like?

Carla: È rossa.
eh rohs-sah
It’s red.

Words to Know

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Italian</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bagaglio [m]</td>
<td>bah-gah-lyoh</td>
<td>baggage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cameriera [f]</td>
<td>kah-meh-ryeh-rah</td>
<td>chambermaid, waitress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>garage [m]</td>
<td>gah-rahj</td>
<td>car park, garage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>messaggio [m]</td>
<td>mehs-sahj-joh</td>
<td>message</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>portiere [m]</td>
<td>pohr-tyeh-reh</td>
<td>doorman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>valigia [f]</td>
<td>vah-lee-jah</td>
<td>suitcase</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
When your boss says **Venga nel mio ufficio!** *(vehn-gah nehl mee-oh ooh-fee-choh)* (Come in my office!) or you say to your children **Mettete in ordine le vostre camere!** *(meht-teh-teh een ohr-dee-neh leh voohs-treh kah-meh-reh)* (Clean up your rooms!), you use an imperative — a request, a demand, or an invitation for someone to do something. Four forms of imperatives exist:

**Singular informal:** You speak (and command) informally to a person you know — for example, a friend or a family member.

In Italian, if a verb ends in -are, as in **mandare** *(mahn-dah-reh)* (to send), the informal imperative form ends in -a, as in **Manda!** *(mahn-dah)* (Send!). If a verb ends in -ere or -ire, as in **prendere** *(prehn-deh-reh)* (to take) and **finire** *(fee-nee-reh)* (to finish), the informal imperative ends in -i, as in **Prendi!** *(prehn-dee)* (Take!) and **Finisci!** *(fee-nee-shee)* (Finish!).

**Singular formal:** You formally command a person you don’t know well. The command form is different when you speak to a person formally. If the verb ends in -are, as in **mandare**, the formal imperative form ends in -i, as in **Mandi!** *(mahn-dee)* (Send!). If the verb ends in -ere or -ire, as in **prendere, aprire**, and **finire**, the formal imperative ends in -a, as in **Prenda!** *(prehn-dah)* (Take!), **Apra!** and **Finisca!** *(fee-nee-skah)* (Finish!).

As you can see, you simply switch the informal and formal endings.

**Plural:** You command/speak to more than one person.

You use the plural imperative form for two or more people, even if you would address the separate individuals formally. Verbs that end in -are, like **mandare**, have the plural imperative ending -ate, as in **Mandate!** *(mahn-dah-teh)* (Send!). Verbs that end in -ere change their endings to -ete, as in **Prendete!** *(prehn-deh-teh)* (Take!). Verbs that end in -ire change their endings to -ite, as in **Finite!** *(fee-nee-teh)* (Finish!).

**Plural, including yourself:** You include yourself by saying, for example, “Let’s go!”

Good news! All verbs, including our examples **mandare, prendere, aprire**, and **finire**, change their endings to the imperative ending -iamo — namely, **Mandiamo!** *(mahn-dee-ah-moh . . . (Let’s send!)), **Prendiamo!** *(prehn-dee-ah-moh) (Let’s take/have . . . !)), **Apriamo!** *(ah-pree-ah-moh) (Let’s open . . . !) and **Finiamo!** *(fee-nyah-moh) (Let’s finish!). That’s pretty easy, isn’t it?

In case you’re still struggling to grasp this scheme, Table 15-3 gives a quick overview.
We can’t let you get away without looking at some common exceptions to the preceding rules. Table 15-4 shows some of these exceptions. They are exceptions to the regular pattern.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 15-4</th>
<th>Exceptional Imperatives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Informal Singular</strong></td>
<td><strong>Formal Singular</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbi pazienza! (ahb-bee pah-tsee-ehn-tsah)</td>
<td>Abbia pazienza! (ahb-bee-ah pah-tsee-ehn-tsah)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Da’! (dah)</td>
<td>Dia! (dee-ah)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Di’ qualcosa! (dee kwahl-koh-zah)</td>
<td>Dica qualcosa! (dee-kah kwahl-koh-zah)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fa’ qualcosa! (fah kwahl-koh-zah)</td>
<td>Faccia qualcosa! (fahch-chah kwahl-koh-zah)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sii buono! (see bwoh-noh)</td>
<td>Sia buono! (see-ah bwoh-noh)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sta’ fermo! (stah fehr-moh)</td>
<td>Stia fermo! (stee-ah fehr-moh)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stai tranquillo! (stai tranh-kweel-loh)</td>
<td>Stia tranquillo (stee-ah tranh-kweel-loh)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Va via! (vah vee-ah)</td>
<td>Vada via! (vah-dah vee-ah)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vieni qua! (vyeh-nee kwah)</td>
<td>Venga qua! (vehn-gah kwah)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We haven’t even gotten to the negative commands (and if you want more on commands see *Italian Verbs For Dummies*), but here are two phrases you may hear in Italy:

**Non ti preoccupare!** (nohn tee preh-ohk-kooh-pah-reh) *(Don’t worry!)* (informal)

**Non si preoccupi!** (nohn see preh-ohk-kooh-pee) *(Don’t worry!)* (formal)
Unscramble the following words below and then match them with their definitions in the following column. See Appendix D for the answer key.

- gorblea: bed
- oinpnsee: luggage
- rcaaem: suitcases
- asznat: room
- glevia: bathroom
- aneopozirtn: room
- tnloaireimma: small hotel
- culla: crib
- cniapsi: pool
- aehicv: key
- ttelo: room with a large ben
- ricmeeer: for two
- bgoan: reservation
- gghalaoi: waiter
Chapter 16
Handling Emergencies

In This Chapter
▶ Asking for help
▶ Talking to doctors
▶ Visiting the dentist
▶ Dealing with car troubles
▶ Alerting the police to an emergency
▶ Protecting your legal rights

Asking for help is never fun, because you only need help when you’re in a jam. For the purposes of this chapter, think about what unfortunate things could happen to you and in what difficulties you may find yourself. Some of these situations are minor, and others are much more serious. We give you the language tools you need to communicate your woes to the people who can help.

Here is a general sampling of asking-for-help sentences. The first two are important for real emergencies:

✓ Aiuto! (ah-yoooh-toh) (Help!)
✓ Aiutami! (ah-yoooh-tah-mee) (Help me!) (Informal)
✓ Mi aiuti, per favore. (mee ah-yoooh-tee pehr fah-voh-reh) (Help me, please.) (Formal)
✓ Chiamate la polizia! (kyah-mah-teh lah poh-lee-tsee-ah) (Call the police!)
✓ Ho bisogno di un medico. (oh bee-zoh-nyoh dee oohn meh-dee-koh) (I need a doctor.)
✓ Dov’è il pronto soccorso? (doh-veh eel prohn-toh sohk-kohr-soh) (Where’s the emergency room?)
✓ Chiamate un’ambulanza! (kyah-mah-teh ooh-nahm-booh-lahn-tsaah) (Call an ambulance!)
As you may have noticed, you conjugate sentences directed at a group of people in the plural voi form (chiamate). In an emergency situation, you can use this with anyone who may be listening to you.

In some situations, you must ask for a competent authority who speaks English. Do so by saying:

✓ **Mi scusi, parla inglese?** (mee skooh-zee pahr-lah een-gleh-zeh) (Excuse me, do you speak English?)

✓ **C’è un medico che parli inglese?** (cheh oohn meh-dee-koh keh pahr-lee een-gleh-zeh) (Is there a doctor who speaks English?)

✓ **Dove posso trovare un avvocato che parli inglese?** (doh-veh pohs-soh troh-vah-reh oohn ahv-voh-kah-toh keh pahr-lee een-gleh-zeh) (Where can I find a lawyer who speaks English?)

If you can’t find a professional who speaks English, you may be able to find un interprete (oohn een-tehr-preh-teh) (an interpreter) to help you.

## Talking to Doctors

When you’re in l’ospedale (lohs-peh-dah-leh) (the hospital) or at il medico (eel meh-dee-koh) (the doctor), you must explain where you hurt or what the problem is. This task isn’t always easy, because pointing to a spot may not be sufficient. But don’t worry, we won’t leave you in the lurch. This section shows you, among other things, how to refer to your body parts in Italian (in Table 16-1) and what to say in a medical emergency.

### Table 16-1 Basic Body Parts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Italian</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>il braccio</td>
<td>eel brahch-choh</td>
<td>the arm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il collo</td>
<td>eel kohl-loh</td>
<td>the neck</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la gamba</td>
<td>lah gahm-bah</td>
<td>the leg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la mano</td>
<td>lah mah-noh</td>
<td>the hand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l’occhio</td>
<td>lohk-kyoh</td>
<td>the eye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la pancia</td>
<td>lah pahn-chah</td>
<td>the belly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il petto</td>
<td>eel peht-toh</td>
<td>the chest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il piede</td>
<td>eel pyeh-deh</td>
<td>the foot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lo stomaco</td>
<td>loh stoh-mah-koh</td>
<td>the stomach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la testa</td>
<td>lah teh-s-tah</td>
<td>the head</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Describing what ails you

The following phrases indicate how to say something hurts. There are two ways to say this: The first takes the construction fare male (fah-reh mah-leh) (to hurt). Use fa (fah) for body parts in the singular that hurt.

- Mi fa male la gamba. (mee fah mah-leh lah gahm-bah). (My leg hurts.)
- Mi fa male lo stomaco. (mee fah mah-leh loh stoh-mah-koh) (My stomach hurts.)
- Mi fa male tutto il corpo. (mee fah mah-leh tooht-toh eel kohr-poh) (My whole body aches.)

Use fanno (fahn-noh) for things in the plural that hurt.

- Mi fanno male gli occhi. (mee fahn-noh mah-leh lyee ohk-kee) (My eyes hurt.)

The other way to say something hurts is avere mal di (ah-veh-reh mahl dee), but you need to conjugate the verb avere (ah-veh-reh) (to have), depending on who has the pain. Here are some examples:

- Ho mal di schiena. (oh mahl dee skyeh-nah) (I have a backache.)
- Ho mal di testa. (oh mahl dee tehs-tah) (I have a headache.)
- Mia figlia ha mal di denti. (mee-ah feel-yah ah mahl dee dehn-tee) (My daughter has a toothache.)

There are still other ways to describe what ails you and explain your symptoms.

- Mi sono rotto/rotta una gamba. (mee soh-noh roht-toh/rot-tah ooh-nah gahm-bah) (I broke my leg.) (Use the feminine participle if you are a woman.)
- Ho la gola arrossata. (oh lah goh-lah ahr-rohs-sah-tah) (I have a sore throat.)
- Ho la pelle irritata. (oh lah pehl-leh eer-ee-tah-tah) (My skin is irritated.)
- Mi sono storto/storta il piede/la caviglia. (mee soh-noh stohr-toh/ stohr-tah eel pyeh-deh/lah cah-veel-yah) (I sprained my foot/ankle.)
- Ho disturbi al cuore. (oh dees-toohr-bee ahl kwoh-reh) (I have heart problems.)
- Mi bruciano gli occhi. (mee brooh-chah-noh lyee ohk-kee) (My eyes burn.)
- Mi sono slogata la spalla. (mee soh-noh zloh-gah-tah lah spahl-lah) (I've dislocated my shoulder.)
- Mi sono fatta/o male alla mano. (mee soh-noh faht-tah/toh mah-leh ahl-lah mah-noh). (I've hurt my hand.)
✓ Sono caduta/o. (soh-noh cah-dooh-tah/toh) (I fell.)
✓ Mia figlia ha questa brutta orticaria. (mee-ah feel-yah ah qwehs-tah brooh-tah ohr-tee-kahr-ee-ah) (My daughter has this terrible rash.)
✓ Mio figlio ha la febbre a 40. (mee-oh fee-lyoh ah lah fehb-breh ah qwah-rahn-tah) (My son’s temperature is 40 degrees.)

When you want to indicate the left or right body part, you must know that body part’s gender. For a masculine part, you say destro (dehs-troh) (right) and sinistro (see-nees-troh) (left), whereas for a feminine part you change the ending: destra (dehs-trah) and sinistra (see-nees-trah).

Another little hurdle is the plural form. Where body parts are concerned, a lot of irregular plurals exist. Table 16-2 shows you some of the most frequent irregular plural forms.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 16-2 Body Parts Plurals</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular (Pronunciation)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il braccio (eel brahch-choh)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il dito (eel dee-toh)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il dito del piede (eel dee-toh dehl pyeh-deh)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il labbro (eel lahb-broh)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il ginocchio (eel jee-nohk-kyoh)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la mano (lah mah-noh)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l’orecchio (loh-rehk-kyoh)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l’osso (lohs-soh)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Generally speaking, if you need to tell someone that you’re not feeling well, you can always say mi sento male (mee sehn-toh mah-leh) (I feel sick), which derives from the verb sentirsi male (sehn-teer-see mah-leh) (to feel sick). You could also say non mi sento bene (nohn mee sehn-toh beh-neh) (I don’t feel well), which comes from non sentirsi bene (nohn sehn-teer-see beh-neh) (to not feel well). The following shows you the entire conjugation of this common and typical reflexive verb. For more on reflexive verbs, see Chapters 11 and 17.
Chapter 16: Handling Emergencies

Conjugation | Pronunciation | English
---|---|---
mi sento male | mee seh-neh-toh mah-leh | I feel sick.
ti senti male | tee seh-neh-tee mah-leh | You feel sick.
si sente male | see seh-neh-teh mah-leh | He/she feels sick.
ci sentiamo male | chee seh-neh-tee-ah-moh mah-leh | We feel sick.
vi sentite male | vee seh-neh-tee-teh mah-leh | You feel sick.
si sentono male | see seh-neh-toh-noh mah-leh | They feel sick.

You may have noticed that fa male is preceded by mi (mee) (me). This word changes according to the speaker and the person who feels the pain. A doctor may ask you Cosa le fa male? (koh-zah leh fah mah-leh) (What hurts you?). Le is the indirect object pronoun for the formal “you.”

**Talkin’ the Talk**

Gloria goes to the doctor because her leg is swollen. Without further examination, however, the doctor can’t determine the problem.

Gloria: Mi fa molto male questa gamba. 
meh fah mohl-toh mah-leh kwehs-tah gahm-bah
This leg hurts very much.

Doctor: Vedo che è gonfia.
veh-doh keh eh gohn-fee-ah
Yes, I can see it’s swollen.

Gloria: Devo andare all’ospedale?
deh-voahn ahn-dah-reh ahl-lohs-peh-dah-leh
Do I have to go to the hospital?

Doctor: Si, bisogna fare le lastre.
see bee-zoh-nyah fah-reh le lahs-treh
Yes, you need to have some X-rays.
### Words to Know

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Italian</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aiuto [m]</td>
<td>help</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pronto soccorso</td>
<td>emergency room</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>un'ambulanza</td>
<td>an ambulance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chiamate</td>
<td>call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fare male</td>
<td>to hurt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ospedale [m]</td>
<td>hospital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lastre [f/pl]</td>
<td>X-rays</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sinistra/o [f/m]</td>
<td>left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gonfia/o [f/m]</td>
<td>swollen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muscolo [m]</td>
<td>muscle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tendine [m]</td>
<td>tendon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mi gira la testa</td>
<td>I'm dizzy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mi sento svenire</td>
<td>I'm about to faint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avere mal di</td>
<td>to have a _____ache</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stomaco</td>
<td>stomach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>febbre</td>
<td>fever</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Understanding professional medical vocabulary

Various professional people — not all of them doctors — can offer you medical help. They include:

- il medico (eel meh-dee-koh) (doctor, both female and male)
- il dottore (eel doht-toh-reh) (doctor, both female and male)
  
  The female form of this noun, la dottoressa (lah doht-toh-rehs-sah), is less common.

You can use either of these words for “doctor.”

- la/lo specialista [f/m] (lah/loh speh-chah-lees-tah) (specialist)
- la/il dentista [f/m] (lah/eel dehn-tees-tah) (dentist)
- il chirurgo [f/m](eel kee-rooh-goh) (the surgeon)
- l’infermiera (leen-fehr-myeh-rah) (female nurse)
- l’infermiere (leen-fehr-myeh-reh) (male nurse)

Here’s a question that you may need to ask in a doctor’s office, with typical replies:

- Devo prendere qualcosa? (deh-voh prehn-deh-reh kwahl-koh-zah) (Do I have to take anything?)
  
  No, si riposi e beva molta acqua. (noh see ree-poh-zee eh beh-vah mohl-tah ah-kwah) (No, rest and drink a lot of water.)
  
  Ecco la ricetta. (ehk-koh lah ree-cheht-tah) (Here is your prescription.)

Getting what you need at the pharmacy

If you need una medicina (ooh-nah meh-dee-chee-nah) (a medicine) you will probably look for the closest farmacia (fahr-mah-chee-ah) (pharmacy). Usual pharmacy hours are from 8:30 a.m. to 8:00 p.m., generally with a lunch break from 1:00 to 4:00 p.m. But there is always a pharmacy open in case of an emergency! You can find the address and phone number of the open pharmacy (farmacia di turno) (fahr-mah-chee-ah dee toohr-noh) written on all pharmacy doors.
Italy is one of those places where pharmacists still give medical advice: These are true pharmacies without all of the non-drug items for sale like you find in your typical big drug store in the United States, where you can get everything from canned food to beach chairs. Furthermore, you generally don’t walk in, browse, and help yourself to even simple things like aspirin. This is the same for many other types of stores in Italy, the **profumeria** (proh-fooh-men ree-ah) (toiletries shop), shoe stores, and small clothing shops in particular. Many items are kept behind the counter. So, if you or a loved one has a slight ailment and it’s not an emergency, you can go into the pharmacy for help.

**Talkin’ the Talk**

Anna has just walked into the **farmacia** with her six-year-old daughter, Maria, who was stung by about 100 mosquitoes the night before.

**Farmacista:** *Prego. Mi dica.*
*preh-goh mee dee-kah*
Hello. How can I help you?

**Anna:** *Mia figlia è stata punta dalle zanzare ieri notte.*
*mee-ah fee-lyah eh stah-tah poohn-tah dahl-leh dsan-zah-reh yeh-ree noht-teh*
My daughter was stung by some mosquitoes last night.

**Farmacista:** *Si questo lo vedo.*
*see qwehs-toh loh veh-doh*
Yes, I can see that.

Le do una pomata contro il prurito.
*leh doh ooh-nah poh-mah-tah kohn-troh eel prooh-ree-toh*
I’ll give you an anti-itch cream.

**Anna:** *Ha un prodotto anti-zanzara per i bambini?*
*ah oohn proh-dohht-toh ahn-tee-dsahn-zah-rah pehr ee bahm-bee-nee*
Do you have something safe for children to keep the mosquitoes away?
Braving the dentist

Of course, you might just need some emergency dental work while you’re in Italy. The first thing to ask the concierge at your hotel, the pharmacist, or the friendly barista where you’ve been having breakfast every morning is “Scusi, mi puo consigliare un dentista di fiducia?” (skooch-zee mee pwoh kohn-seel-yah-reh oohn dehn-tees-tah dee fee-dooh-chah) (Excuse me, would please recommend a good dentist?)

Talkin’ the Talk

Giancarlo is at the dentist’s with a terrible toothache.

Giancarlo: Dottore, ho un terribile dolore al molare.
doht-toh-reh oh oohn tehr-ree-beh-leh doh-loh-reh ahl moh-lah-reh
Doctor, I have a terrible pain in my molar.

Dentist: Vediamo. Purtroppo è infetto.
veh-dyah-moh poohr-trohp-poh eh een-feht-toh
Let’s see. Unfortunately, it’s infected.

Non posso fare altro che darle un antibiotico.
nohn pohs-soh fah-reh ahl-troh keh dahr-leh oohn ahhn-tee-bee-oh-tee-koh
I can’t do anything for you but give you an antibiotic.

Lo prenda due volte al giorno.
loh prehn-dah dooh-eh vohl-teh ahl johr-noh
Take it twice a day.
Part III: Italian on the Go

Reporting an Accident to the Police

There are other types of emergencies in addition to medical ones. You might have to call the police to report something you’ve witnessed.

**Talkin’ the Talk**

Elena has just seen an elderly woman on her bicycle hit by a scooter. She calls the police.

**Officer:** Polizia.
poh-lee-tsee-ah
Police.

**Elena:** C’è stato un incidente.
cheh stah-toh oohn een-chee-dehn-teh
There’s been an accident!

**Officer:** Dove?
doh-veh
Where?

**Elena:** Piazza Mattei.
pyaht-tsah maht-tery
Piazza Mattei.

**Officer:** Ci sono feriti?
chee soh-noh feh-ree-tee
Is anyone injured?

**Elena:** C’è una persona ferita incosciente.
cheh ooh-na pehr-soh-nah fehr-ee-tah
in-ko-shen-teh
Someone is injured and unconscious.

**Officer:** Mandiamo subito un’ambulanza.
mahn-dee-ah-moh sooh-beh-toh
ooh-nahm-booh-lahn-teh
We’ll send an ambulance right away.

If you are in Italy and you have an emergency, call 113, the Italian national police, who will also send you an ambulance if you need one. This number is valid for all of Italy.
### I’ve Been Robbed! Knowing What to Do and Say When the Police Arrive

We hope you are never the target of a robbery. If you are, however, we want you to be prepared with the important phrases you will need when the police arrive.

- ✓ **Sono stata/o derubata/o.** *(soh-noh stah-tah/toh deh-rooh-bah-tah/toh)* *(I’ve been robbed.)* [f/m]
- ✓ **C’è stato un furto nel mio appartamento.** *(cheh stah-toh oohn foohr-toh nehl mee-oh ahp-pahr-tah-mehn-toh)* *(There was a burglary in my apartment.)*

---

#### Words to Know

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Italian</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ambulanza [f]</td>
<td>ambulance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Che è successo?</td>
<td>What happened?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>emergenza [f]</td>
<td>emergency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>incidente [m]</td>
<td>accident</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le lenti a contatto</td>
<td>contact lenses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soluzione [f]</td>
<td>solution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferito [m]</td>
<td>injured (person)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pomata [f]</td>
<td>cream</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ricetta [f]</td>
<td>prescription</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
✓ **Sono entrati dei ladri in casa nostra.** (soh-noh ehn-trah-tee dey lah-dree een kah-sah nohs-trah) *(Thieves broke into our house.)*

✓ **Mi hanno rubato la macchina.** (mee ahh-noh rooh-bah-toh lah mahrkee-nah) *(My car has been stolen.)*

✓ **Mi hanno scippata.** (mee ahh-noh sheep-pah-tah) *(My handbag was snatched.)*

---

**Talkin’ the Talk**

A moped driver just stole Anna’s **borsa** *(bohr-sah)* *(handbag).* Distraught, she calls 113 for the police to **denunciare** *(deh-noohn-chah-reh)* *(to report)* il **furto** *(eel foohr-toh)* *(the theft).*

**Officer:**  
**Polizia.**  
poh-lee-tsee-ah  
Police.

**Anna:**  
**Mi hanno appena scippata!**  
mee ahh-noh ahp-peh-nah sheep-pah-tah  
They just snatched my handbag!

**Officer:**  
**Si calmi e venga in questura.**  
see kahl-mee eh vehn-gah een kwehs-tooh-rah  
Calm down and come to police headquarters.

**Anna:**  
**È stato un uomo in motorino.**  
eh stah-toh oohn woh-moh een moh-toh-ree-noh  
It was a man on a moped.

**Officer:**  
**Ho capito, ma deve venire qui.**  
oh kah-pee-toh mah deh-veh veh-nee-reh kwee  
I got it, but you have to come here.

**Anna:**  
**Dov’è la questura?**  
doh-veh lah kwehs-tooh-rah  
Where is police headquarters?

**Officer:**  
**Dietro la posta centrale.**  
de-ee-eh-troh lah pohs-tah chehn-trah-leh  
Behind the main post office.

**Anna:**  
**Vengo subito.**  
vehn-goh sooh-bee-toh  
I’m coming at once.
When you have to report someone and describe the thief, you must know some essential words, such as hair color, height, and so on. Many of these adjectives will also come in handy when describing other people — friends, family members, classmates — not just thieves! You can form descriptive sentences like this:

**La persona era . . .** (lah pehr-soh-nah eh-rah) *(The person was . . .)*:

- ✓ *alta* (ahl-tah) *(tall)*
- ✓ *bassa* (bahs-sah) *(short)*
- ✓ *di media statura* (dee meh-dee-ah stah-tooh-rah) *(of medium build)*
- ✓ *grassa* (grahs-sah) *(fat)*
- ✓ *magra* (mah-grah) *(thin)*

Note: The preceding adjectives end in -a because they refer to the noun **la persona**, which is feminine.

**I capelli erano . . .** (ee kah-pehl-lee eh-rah-noh) *(The hair was . . .)*

- ✓ *castani* (kahs-tah-nee) *(brown)*
- ✓ *biondi* (byohn-dee) *(blond)*
Part III: Italian on the Go

✓ neri (neh-ree) (black)
✓ rossi (rohs-see) (red)
✓ scuri (scooh-ree) (dark)
✓ chiari (kyah-ree) (fair)
✓ lisci (lee-shee) (straight)
✓ ondulati (ohn-dooh-lah-tee) (wavy)
✓ ricci (reech-kee) (curly)
✓ corti (kohr-tee) (short)
✓ lunghi (loohn-gee) (long)

Aveva gli occhi . . . (ah-veh-vah lyee ohk-kee) (His/Her eyes were . . .)

✓ azzurri (ahdz-zoooh-ree) (blue)
✓ grigi (gree-jee) (gray)
✓ marroni (mahr-roh-nee) (brown)
✓ neri (neh-ree) (black; dark)
✓ verdi (vehr-dee) (green)

Era . . . (eh-rah) (He/she was . . .)

✓ calvo (kahl-voh) (bald)
✓ rasato (rah-zah-toh) (clean-shaven)

Aveva . . . (ah-veh-vah) (He/She had . . .)

✓ la barba (lah bahr-bah) (a beard)
✓ i baffi (ee baf-tee) (a moustache)
✓ la bocca larga (lah bohk-kah lahr-gah) (a wide mouth)
✓ la bocca stretta (lah bohk-kah streht-tah) (thin lips)
✓ la bocca carnosa (lah bohk-kah kahr-noh-zah) (a plump mouth)
✓ il naso lungo (eel nah-zoh loohn-go) (a long nose)
✓ il naso corto (eel nah-zoh kohr-toh) (a short nose)
Dealing with Car Trouble

You don’t have to be involved in a car crash to experience car trouble. Perhaps some sort of mechanical problem makes your car break down. In such cases you need to call an auto mechanic who can help you out of this situation.

Talkin’ the Talk

Raffaella’s car has broken down. She calls roadside assistance from her cell phone.

Mechanic: **Pronto.**
prohn-toh
Hello.

Raffaella: **Pronto, ho bisogno d’aiuto!**
prohn-toh oh bee-zoh-nyoh dah-yooh-toh
Hello, I need help!

Mechanic: **Che succede?**
keh soohch-cheh-deh
What’s wrong?

Raffaella: **Mi si è fermata la macchina.**
mee see eh fehr-mah-tah lah mahn-kee-nah
My car broke down.

Mechanic: **Dove si trova?**
doh-veh see troh-vah
Where are you?

Raffaella: **Sull’autostrada A 1 prima dell’uscita Firenze Nord.**
soohl au-to-strah-dah ah ooh-noh pree-mah dehl-looh-shee-tah fee-rehn-tseh nohrd
On the highway A 1 before the Florence North exit.

Mechanic: **Bene. Mando un carro attrezzi.**
beh-neh mahn-doh oohn cahr-roh aht-treh-tsee
Okay. I’ll send a tow truck.
Raffaella:  
Ci vorrà molto?  
chee vohr-rah mohl-toh  
Will it take a long time?

Mechanic:  
Dipende dal traffico. Al massimo mezz’ora.  
dee-phem-deh dahl trahf-fee-koh ahl mahnz-see-moh  
medz-oh-rah  
It depends on the traffic. Half hour at the most.

Raffaella:  
Venite il più presto possibile per favore!  
veh-nee-teh eel pyooh preh-toh pohs-see-bee-leh  
pehr fah-voh-reh  
Come as soon as possible please!

---

**Words to Know**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Italian</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fermare</td>
<td>fehr-mah-reh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>macchina [f]</td>
<td>mahk-kee-nah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il più presto possibile</td>
<td>eel pyooh preh-toh pohs-see-bee-leh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soccorso stradale [m]</td>
<td>sohk-kohr-soh strah-dah-leh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>corsia di emergenza</td>
<td>kohr-see-ah dee eh-mehr-jehn-za</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>traffico [m]</td>
<td>trahf-fee-koh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meccanico [m]</td>
<td>mehk-kah-nee-koh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>una gomma a terra</td>
<td>ooh-nah gohm-mah ah teh-rah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carro attrezzi [m]</td>
<td>kahr-roh aht-treht-tsee</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**When You Need a Lawyer: Protecting Your Rights**

Many unpleasant moments in life require that you seek the help of an authorized person. Often, this person is a lawyer who can help you in complicated situations. Therefore, knowing how to contact a lawyer is rather important. You can use the following general questions and sentences to request legal help in Italian.

- **Mi serve l'aiuto di un avvocato.** (mee sehr-veh lah-yooh-toh dee oohn ahv-voh-kah-toh) *(I need the help of a lawyer.)*
- **Ho bisogno di assistenza legale.** (oh bee-zoh-nyoh dee ahs-sees-tehn-tsah leh-gah-leh) *(I need legal assistance.)*
- **Vorrei consultare il mio avvocato.** (voehr-rey kohn-soohl-tah-reh eel mee-oh ahv-voh-kah-toh) *(I’d like to consult my lawyer.)*
- **Chiamate il mio avvocato, per favore.** (kyah-mah-teh eel mee-oh ahv-voh-kah-toh pehr fah-voh-reh) *(Call my lawyer, please.)*

After you find a lawyer, you can speak to him or her about your situation. Here are some examples of what you may need to say:

- **Sono stato truffato/a.** (soh-noh stah-toh troohf-tah-toh/tah) *(I was cheated.)*
- **Voglio denunciare un furto.** (Voh-lyoh deh-noohn-chah-reh oohn foohr-toh) *(I want to report a theft.)*
- **Devo stipulare un contratto.** (deh-vooh stee-poohl-lah-reh oohn kohn-traht-toh) *(I have to negotiate a contract.)*
- **Ho avuto un incidente stradale.** (oh ah-vooh-toh oohn een-chee-dehn-teh strah-dah-leh) *(I’ve had a traffic accident.)*
- **Voglio che mi vengano risarciti i danni.** (voh-lyoh keh mee vehn-gah-noh ree-sahr-chee-tee ee dahn-nee) *(I want to be compensated for the damages.)*
- **Sono stato/a arrestato/a.** (soh-noh stah-toh/ah ahr-rehs-tah-toh/ah) *(I’ve been arrested.)*
Words to Know

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Italian</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>danno</em> [m]</td>
<td>dah-noh</td>
<td>damage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>denunciare</em></td>
<td>deh-noohn-chah-reh</td>
<td>to report</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>denuncia</em> [f]</td>
<td>deh-noohn-chah</td>
<td>report</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>incidente stradale</em> [m]</td>
<td>een-chee-dehn-teh strah-dah-leh</td>
<td>traffic accident</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>macchina</em> [f]</td>
<td>mahk-kee-nah</td>
<td>car</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>targa</em> [f]</td>
<td>tahr-gah</td>
<td>license plate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>patente</em> [f]</td>
<td>pah-tehn-teh</td>
<td>license</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>libretto</em> [m]</td>
<td>lee-breh-toh</td>
<td>registration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>assicurazione</em> [f]</td>
<td>ahs-see-kooh-rahtsee-oh-neh</td>
<td>insurance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Reporting a Lost or Stolen Passport

Imagine you lose your passport, or it gets stolen while you are snoozing on the train. (These things happen!) The conversation that follows will help you get a new one.
Talkin’ the Talk

When Diane gets off the train in Florence, she realizes that she no longer has her passport. She goes immediately to the station police.

Diane:  
Ho perso il passaporto! Non so cosa fare!
I’ve lost my passport! I don’t know what to do!

Police:  
Sa dirmi dove, come, quando?
Can you tell me where, when, and how?

Diane:  
Penso di averlo perso in treno.
I think I lost it on the train.

Police:  
Ora facciamo la denuncia.
We’ll file a report now.

Con questa denuncia, deve rivolgersi alla sua ambasciata o consolato.
You’re going to need this report when you go to your Embassy or Consulate to apply for a new one.

Diane:  
Grazie.
Thank you.
Consulate
Agent: Dica?
deekah
How can I help you?

Diane: (agitated) Mi serve un nuovo passaporto! Subito!
meehr veh oohn nwoh-vooh pahs-sah-pohr-toh
sooh-bee-toh
I need a new passport. Right away!

Consulate
Agent: Si calmi. Necessitano due foto tessera . . .
see kahl-mee. neh-chehs-see-tah-noh dooh-eh
foh-toh tehs-seh-rah
Calm down. You’re going to need two ID-size photos . . .

La denuncia della polizia, una copia del passaporto originale. . .
lah deh-noohn-chah dehl-lah poh-lee-tsee-ah ooh-nah
koh-pee-ah dehl pahs-sah-pohr-toh
oh-ree-gee-nah-leh
. . . official police report, a copy of your original passport (your hotel should have a copy of this) . . .

. . . e un altro documento.
eh oohn ahl-troh doh-kooh-mehn-toh
. . . and another form of ID.
Fun & Games

See how many body parts you can remember by labeling as many of them as you can on the following picture. See Appendix D for the answer key.
Chapter 17

Small Talk, Wrapping Things Up

In This Chapter
▶ Discovering interrogative pronouns
▶ Asking simple questions
▶ Taking care of basic needs
▶ Talking about yourself and your family
▶ Talking shop
▶ Sending postcards, buying stamps
▶ Speaking reflexively

This chapter wraps things up by presenting you with some of the basic essentials that are smattered throughout the book, but which deserve some space of their own. At this point you probably have figured out how to form questions, but here’s that information at your fingertips for quick review and reference. At the end of this chapter, we give you a crash course on reflexive verbs, some of the most common yet unappreciated verbs.

Discovering Interrogative Pronouns

In Italian at least one thing is easier than in English: forming questions. In English, in most cases, you need a form of to do, to be, or to have to form a question. You also (mostly) have to invert part of your sentence construction. For example, “He goes to the movies” becomes “Does he go to the movies?” In Italian you simply ask “Lui va al cinema?” (looh-ee vah ahl chee-neh-mah) (Does he go to the movies?) There is no word for does, just as there is no word for are in the following sentence: “Vai alla partita?” (vahy ahl-lah pahr-tee-tah) (Are you going to the game?)

In Italian, forming questions is very easy: A question has the same structure as an affirmative statement. You identify a question only by the intonation in your voice and by the use of a question mark in written language. For example:
Part III: Italian on the Go

Luca va a scuola. Luca va a scuola?

*looh-kah vah ah skwoh-lah*  
Luca goes to school. Luca goes to school? or Does Luca go to school?

Mangi la carne. Mangi la carne?

*mahn-jeed lah kahr-neh*  
You eat/You’re eating meat. Do you eat/Are you eating (the) meat?

Italian also has interrogative pronouns (when, where, what, and so on) with which you can start questions. Use the following pronouns:

✓ Chi? (kee) *(Who?)*
✓ Che? (keh) *(What?)*
✓ Cosa? *(koh-sah)* *(What?)*
✓ Quando? *(kwahn-doh)* *(When?)*
✓ Quanto? *(kwahn-toh)* *(How much?)*
✓ Quanti/e? *(kwahn-tee/teh)* *(How many?) *(m/f)*
✓ Quale/i? *(kwah-leh/ee)* *(Which, what)* sing./pl
✓ Dove? *(doh-veh)* *(Where?)*
✓ Perché? (pehr-keh) *(Why?)*
✓ Come? *(koh-meh)* *(How?)*

Che, cosa, and che cosa are often used interchangeably.

Some sample questions using these interrogative pronouns include:

✓ Chi è? *(kee eh)* *(Who is it/this?)*
✓ Cosa stai facendo? *(koh-sah stahhy fah-chehnh-doh)* *(What are you doing?)*
✓ Quando arrivì? *(kwahn-doh ahr-ree-vee)* *(When do you arrive?)*
✓ Dov’è la stazione? *(doh-veh lah stah-stsyoh-neh)* *(Where is the station?)*
✓ Perché non sei venuto? *(pehr-keh nohn sahy veh-nooh-toh)* *(Why didn’t you come?)*
✓ Come stai? *(koh-meh stahhy)* *(How are you?)*
✓ Come si dice “rain” in italiano? *(koh-meh see deh-cheh... in ee-tah-lee-ah-noh)* *(How do you say rain in Italian?)*
Asking simple questions

When you ask a question using an interrogative pronoun, you do not need the interrogative pronoun in the response. For example:

**Dov’è la Cappella Sistina?** (doh-veh lah kahp-pehl-lah sees-tee-nah) *(Where is the Sistine Chapel?)*

**La Cappella Sistina è a Roma.** (lah kahp-pehl-lah sees-tee-nah eh ah roh-mah) *(The Sistine Chapel is in Rome.)*

**Quante regioni ci sono in Italia?** (kwahn-veh reh-joh-nee chee soh-noh in ee-tah-lee-ah) *(How many regions are there in Italy?)*

**Ci sono 20 regioni.** (chee soh-noh vehn-tee reh-joh-nee) *(There are 20 regions.)*

The interrogatives **dove** (doh-veh) and **come** (koh-meh) can be contracted with the verb **essere** (ehs-sehr-reh) *(to be)* in the third person singular. Note that the pronunciation and stress also change. Let’s take a look at these interrogatives with third person singular and third person plural verbs.

**Dov’è Mario.** (doh-veh mah-ree-oh) *(Where’s Mario?)*

**Dove sono i ragazzi?** (doh-veh soh-noh ee rah-gahts-tsee) *(Where are the boys?)*

**Com’è quel ristorante?** (koh-meh kwehl rees-toh-rahnt-teh) *(How is that restaurant? or What’s that restaurant like?)*

**Come sono gli gnocchi?** (koh-meh soh-noh lyee nyohk-kee) *(How are the gnocchi?)*

Use **quale** (kwah-leh) in the singular, **quali** (kwah-lee) in the plural, but **qual è** (kwahl-eh) when combined with the third person singular of **essere**.

**Quale (kwah-leh): Quale film vuoi vedere?** (kwah-leh feelm vwoi veh-deh-reh) *(What/which film do you want to see?)*

**Qual è (kwahl-eh): Qual è il mare più profondo in Italia?** (kwahl-eh il mah-reh pyooh proh-fohn-doh in ee-tah-lee-ah) *(What is the deepest sea in Italy?)*

**Quali amici hai invitato?** (kwahl-ee ah-mee-chee ahy in-vee-tah-toh) *(Which friends did you invite?)*
Taking care of basic needs

Sometimes you just need to ask for something very basic but necessary. Here are a few phrases that will take you far:

Scusi, dov’è il bagno per favore? (skooh-zee doh-veh il bah-nyoh pehr fah-veh-reh) (Excuse me, where is the bathroom please?) Some people get fancy and ask for la toilette with a Frenchified accent; however, bagno gets you where you need to go (no pun intended).

Scusi, dov’è la farmacia più vicina? (skooh-zee doh-veh lah fahr-mah-chee-ah pyoo-oh vee-chee-nah) (Excuse me, where’s the nearest pharmacy?)

Scusi, dov’è una banca? (skooh-zee doh-veh ooh-nah bahn-kah) (Excuse me, where is a bank?)

Ho bisogno di/ Mi serve (sing.)/Mi servono (pl) (oh bee-zoh-veh-nyoh dee/meeh sehhr-veh/mee sehhr-veh-nyoh) (I need)

- un parucchiere (oohn pah-rooh-kyeh-reh) (a hairdresser)
- un’estetista (per fare la ceretta) (oohn-esh-teh-tees-tah) (pehr fah-reh lah chehr-ehht-tah) (an esthetician) (for waxing)
  (No Italian women I know shave with a razor.)

Sto cercando (stoh chehr-kahn-doh) (I’m looking for)

- il dentifricio (il dehn-tee-free-choh) (toothpaste)
- la crema solare (lah kreh-mah soh-lah-reh) (sun protection lotion)
i tamponi (ee tahm-poh-nee) (tampons)
la carta igienica (lah kar-tah ee-jehn-ee-kah) (toilet paper)
qualcosa per le zanzare (qwahl-koh-zah pehr leh dzahn-zah-reh) (something for mosquitoes)
qualcosa per mal di testa (kwah-koh-zah pehr mahl dee tehs-tah) (something for a headache)

Vorrei (vohr-rey) (I'd like)
Mi può/potrebbe consigliare . . . ? (mee pwoh/poh-trehb-beh kohn-seel-yah-reh) (Would you be able to recommend . . . ?)
Puo ripetere lentamente, per favore? (pwoh reh-peh-teh-reh lehn-tah-mehn-teh pehr fah-voh-reh) (Would you repeat slowly, please?)
Non capisco. (nohn kah-pees-koh) (I don’t understand.)
Non lo so. (nohn loh soh) (I don’t know.)

Talkin’ the Talk

Massimo and Isa, two colleagues at work, are getting to know each other over a morning cappuccino, and so of course have to use many of the interrogative pronouns that this chapter recapitulates.

Massimo:  Cosa prendi?
koh-zah prehn-dee
What are you having?

Isa:       Un cappuccio e una pasta.
oohn kahp-poohch-chee-noh eh ooh-nah pahs-tah
A cappuccino and a pastry.

Massimo:  Quando hai cominciato il lavoro qui?
qwahn-doh ahy koh-meen-chah-toh il lah-voh-roh kwee
When did you start working here?

Isa:       Due mesi fa.
dooh-eh meh-zee fah
Two months ago.
Massimo:  
**Dov'eri prima?**  
dohv-eh-ree pree-mah  
Where were you before?

Isa:  
**Lavoravo per la succursale veneta.**  
lah-voh-rah-voh pehr lah soohk-koohr-sah-leh  
veh-neh-tah  
I was working for the branch in the Veneto region.

Massimo:  
**Come ti trovi?**  
koh-meh tee troh-vee  
How do you like it so far?

Isa:  
**Mi piace abbastanza.**  
mee pyach-cheh ahh-bahs-tahn-zah  
I like it well enough.

**E tu, da quanto tempo lavori per la compagnia?**  
eh tooh dah qwahn-toh tehm-poh lah-voh-ree pehr  
lah kohm-pahn-ee-ah  
And how long have you been working for the company?

Massimo:  
**Da sei anni.**  
dah sey ahh-nee  
For six years.

**Da quando mi sono laureato.**  
dah kwahn-doh mee soh-noh lou-reh-ah-toh  
Since I graduated.

**Da quale università di tei laureata?**  
dah qwah-leh ooh-nee-vehr-see-tah tee sey  
lou-reh-ah-tah  
What university did you go to?

Isa:  
**Dall'Università di Urbino. E tu?**  
dahl-looh-nee-vehr-see-tah dee oohr-bee-noh eh tooh  
The University of Urbino. And you?
Chapter 17: Small Talk, Wrapping Things Up

Massimo: Bologna.
boh-ohn-yah
Bologna.

Isa: Vuoi tornare a Bologna?
vwoi tohr-nah-reh ah boh-ohn-yah
Do you want to go back to Bologna?

Massimo: Non lo so.
nohn loh soh
I don’t know.

Si, un giorno vorrei tornarci.
see oohn johr-noh vohr-rey tohr-nahr-chee
Yes, some day I’d like to go back there.

Pronto (prohn-toh) means more than just hello when you pick up the phone. It frequently means “ready,” in which case it functions as an adjective and, therefore, changes according to the noun it describes. In other words, when the noun it modifies is masculine, the adjective ends in -o — pronto. If the noun is feminine, it ends in -a — pronta (prohn-tah). When modifying plural nouns, it ends in i (ee) (masculine plural) and e (eh) (feminine plural). Consider these examples:

 ✓ Ragazzi, siete pronti? (rah-gats-zee see-eh-teh prohn-tee) (Guys/kids, are you ready?)
 ✓ La cena è pronta. (lah cheh-nah eh prohn-tah) (Dinner is ready.)

Another use of pronto that you should know is pronto soccorso (prohn-toh sohk-kohr-soh) (first aid; emergency room). In this context, pronto means “rapid.”

Presto (prehs-toh), on the other hand, means either early or soon, and as an adverb is invariable (ending always in o): Siamo arrivati presto. (see-ah-moh ahr-ree-vah-tee prehs-toh) (We arrived early.)
Talking About Yourself and Your Family — Possessives Part 2

You already saw how possessive adjectives and pronouns work in Chapter 15, but the story doesn’t end there.

There are specific rules for possessive adjectives with family members. For singular family members you do not use the article, but plural family members do take the article:
Mia sorella (no definite article) (mee-ah soh-rehl-lah) (my sister) — Le mie sorelle (with definite article) (leh mee-eh soh-rehl-leh (my sisters)

Table 17-1 shows some other relatives.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 17-1</th>
<th>Relatives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Relative</strong></td>
<td><strong>Pronunciation</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>marito</td>
<td>mah-ree-toh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moglie</td>
<td>mohl-yeh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>figlio</td>
<td>feel-yoh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>figlia</td>
<td>feel-yah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>figli</td>
<td>feel-yee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nipote</td>
<td>nee-poh-teh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nipoti</td>
<td>nee-poh-tee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suocera</td>
<td>swoh-cheh-rah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nuora</td>
<td>nwoh-rah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genero</td>
<td>geh-neh-roh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zia</td>
<td>dzee-ah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zio</td>
<td>dzee-oh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cugina/o/e</td>
<td>koooh-jee-nah/oh/ee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nonna/o/i</td>
<td>nohn-nah/oh/ee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>madre</td>
<td>mah-dreh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>padre</td>
<td>pah-dreh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitori</td>
<td>geh-nee-toh-ree</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Teresa and Amy are two old friends catching up about their families after not having spoken for about 15 years. Notice they use definite articles in front of plural family relatives, and no article in front of singular family relatives.

Teresa: Ciao Amy. Sono Teresa.
chou ey-mee soh-noh teh-reh-sah
Hi Amy. It’s Teresa.

Amy: Da quanto tempo non ti sento!
dah kwahn-toh tehm-poh nohn tee seh-toh
What a long time it’s been!

Teresa: Come stai?
koh-meh stahy
How are you?

Amy: Sto bene!
stoh beh-neh
I’m well!

Raccontami di te!
rahk-kohn-tah-mee dee teh
Tell me about you! (Yourself)

Teresa: Mi sono sposata undici anni fa.
mee soh-noh spoh-sah-tah oohn-dee-chee
ahn-nee fah
I got married 11 years ago.

Ho due figli.
oh dooh-eh feel-yee
I have two children.

Abito a Ravenna.
ah-bee-toh ah rah-vehn-nah
I live in Ravenna.
Amy: *Quanti anni hanno i tuoi figli?*
*kwahn-tee ahh-noh ee tooi feel-yee*
How old are your children?

Teresa: *Mia figlia Emilia Rosa ha dieci anni.*
*Mee-ah feel-yah eh-meel-yah roh-zah ah dyeh-chee ahh-nee*
My daughter Emilia Rosa is ten years old.

*E mio figlio Pietro ne ha otto.*
*eh mee-oh feel-yoh pee-eh-troh neh ah oht-toh*
And my son Pietro is eight.

*Come sta la tua famiglia?*
*koh-meh stah lah tooh-ah fah-meel-yah*
How’s your family doing?

Amy: *Mio marito Sandro è sempre in giro per il mondo.*
*mee-oh mah-ree-toh sahn-droh eh seh-mpreh in jee-roh pehr il mohn-doh*
My husband Sandro is always travelling all over the world.

*Mia figlia Tania adesso ha diciotto anni e frequenta l’università.*
*mee-ah feel-yah tahn-yah ah-dehs-soh ah deech-oht-toh ahh-nee eh freh-kwehn-tah looh-nee-vehr-see-tah*
My daughter Tania is 18 years old and goes to college.

*E mio figlio Luca ne ha ventidue.*
*eh mee-oh feel-yoh looh-kah neh ah vehn-tee-dooh-eh*
And my son Luca is 22.

Teresa: *Come passano gli anni.*
*koh-meh pahs-sahn-oh lyee ahh-nee*
Time really flies.
Part III: Italian on the Go

Amy:  
Eh si. Come stanno i tuoi genitori?  
You bet. How are your parents?

Teresa:  
Stanno bene grazie.  
They’re well, thanks.

Mio padre è in pensione finalmente.  
My dad finally retired.

E tua sorella? Dove abita?  
And your sister? Where does she live?

Amy:  
Mia sorella sta benone.  
My sister’s doing great.

Fa l’oculista nello studio di mio padre.  
She’s an oculist in my dad’s practice.

Abita vicino a me.  
She lives near me.

Teresa:  
Allora, quando possiamo vederci?  
So, when can we see each other?

Amy:  
Molto presto, spero.  
Very soon, I hope.
**Speaking Reflexively**

When you say “to enjoy yourself,” you use a reflexive verb. That is, you turn the action back to yourself. The same applies in Italian. But not all Italian reflexive verbs are reflexive in English, and vice versa. Some verbs, such as *riposarsi* (ree-poh-zahr-see) (*to rest oneself*) and *svegliarsi* (sveh-lyahr-see) (*to wake oneself*), are not reflexive in English although they are in Italian.

In Italian, you can tell whether a verb is reflexive by looking at the infinitive form. If the last syllable of the infinitive is -si (see), which translates as “oneself,” then the verb is reflexive. When you conjugate a reflexive verb, you must remove the last syllable -si, and shift that -si as a reflexive pronoun to the front of the verb (in most cases). Then, you simply conjugate the verb just like regular -are, -ere, or -ire verbs (from Chapter 2 and Appendix A).

The following conjugation of *vestirsi* (vehs-teer-see) (*get dressed, to dress oneself*) demonstrates that the conjugation of the verb follows the regular pattern. When you chop off the si from the verb *divertirsi* (dee-vehr-teer-see) (*to enjoy oneself; to have a good time*), the verb looks like *divertire* (and is, therefore, conjugated like *partire* (pahr-tee-reh) (*to leave or depart*). The only difference is that you add the reflexive pronoun, which refers to the person concerned (the subject). Repeat those pronouns a few times to yourself like a mantra until they sink in (*mi, ti si, ci vi si*).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conjugation</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mi vesto</td>
<td>mee vehs-toh</td>
<td><em>I'm getting dressed, I get dressed</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ti vesti</td>
<td>tee vehs-tee</td>
<td><em>You’re getting dressed, you get dressed</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>si veste</td>
<td>see vehs-teh</td>
<td><em>He/she is getting dressed, he/she gets dressed</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ci vestiamo</td>
<td>chee vehs-tyah-moh</td>
<td><em>We’re getting dressed, we get dressed</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vi vestite</td>
<td>vee vehs-tee-teh</td>
<td><em>You’re getting dressed, you get dressed</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>si vestono</td>
<td>see vehs-toh-noh</td>
<td><em>They’re getting dressed, they get dressed</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Here are some more examples:

✓ **Mi diverto molto.** (mee dee-vehr-toh mohl-toh) (*I enjoy myself a lot.*)

✓ **Vi annoiate in campagna?** (vee ahn-noh-yah-teh een kahm-pah-nyah) (*Do you get bored in the country?*)

✓ **A che ora ti svegli?** (ah keh oh-rah tee sveh-lyee) (*What time do you wake up?*)

Table 17-2 shows a list of some common everyday reflexive verbs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 17-2</th>
<th>Reflexive Verbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Verb</strong></td>
<td><strong>Pronunciation</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accomodarsi</td>
<td>ahk-koh-moh-dahr-see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alzarsi</td>
<td>ahl-tsahr-see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrabbiarsi</td>
<td>ahr-rahb-bee-ahr-see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>innamorarsi</td>
<td>in-nahm-oh-rahr-see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>farsi la barba</td>
<td>fahr-see lah bahr-bah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fermarsi</td>
<td>fehr-mahr-see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laurearsi</td>
<td>lou-reh-ahr-see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lavarsi</td>
<td>lah-vaehr-see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mettersi</td>
<td>meht-tehr-see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pettinarsi</td>
<td>peht-teen-ahr-see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sedersi</td>
<td>seh-dehr-see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>svegliarsi</td>
<td>svehl-yaehr-see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trasferirsi</td>
<td>trahs-fehr-eer-see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vestirsi</td>
<td>vehs-teer-see</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Talking shop**

Work is such a big part of so many people’s lives it’s something you might want to be able to talk about when you’re in Italy and have just started a conversation with people you’ve just met.

So the verb **lavorare** (lah-voehr-rah) *(to work)* will be useful as will other key terms:

- **Che lavoro fa/fai?** (keh lohr-voehr fah/fahy) *(What work/job do you do?)* *(formal/informal)*
- **Che mestiere fa/fai?** (keh mehs-tyehr fah/fahy) *(What work do you do?)* *(formal/informal)*

You can generally answer this question in two ways: Note the verbs, and the use of the definite article in the first example.

- **Faccio il/la dentista.** *(fach-chohr il/lah dehn-tees-tah)* *(I’m a dentist.)* *(m/f)*
- **Sono dentista.** *(soh-noh dehn-tees-tah)* *(I’m a dentist.)*

**Discussing your job**

Italian has at least three words for “company” — **la compagnia** (lah kohm-pah-nyee-ah), **la ditta** (lah deht-tah) *(which also means “the firm”)*, and **la società** (lah soh-cheh-tah). These words are virtually interchangeable.

**L’ufficio** (loohf-choh) is Italian for “office.” The following sentences give you a taste of the phrases you hear in **uffici** *(ooehr-fah-cheeh)* *(offices)* everywhere:

- **È una grande società?** *(eh ooh-nah grahn-deh soh-cheh-tah)* *(Is it a big company?)*
- **Non proprio, diciamo media.** *(nohn proh-pree-oh dee-chan-moh meh-dee-ah)* *(Not really, let’s say medium sized.)*
- **Lavoro per una piccola agenzia.** *(lah-voehr pohn ooh-nah peek-koh-lah ah-jahn-tsee-ah)* *(I work for a small company.)*
- **Mi piace il mio lavoro.** *(mee pyahr-cheh eel mee-oh lah-voehr-rah)* *(I like my job.)*
Table 17-3 shows some of the professions and careers with which you might be familiar.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Profession</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>agronomo</td>
<td>ah-groh-noh-moh</td>
<td>agronomist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>archeologo</td>
<td>ahr-keh-oh-loh-goh</td>
<td>archeologist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>architetto</td>
<td>ahr-kee-teht-toh</td>
<td>architect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avvocato</td>
<td>ahv-voh-kah-toh</td>
<td>lawyer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bracciante</td>
<td>brach-chahn-teh</td>
<td>farm worker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chirurgo</td>
<td>kee-roohr-goh</td>
<td>surgeon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commesso</td>
<td>kohm-mehs-soh</td>
<td>salesperson</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dentista</td>
<td>denhn-tees-tah</td>
<td>dentist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>falegname</td>
<td>fah-lehn-yah-meh</td>
<td>carpenter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>giornalista</td>
<td>johr-nah-lees-tah</td>
<td>journalist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impiegato</td>
<td>ihm-pyeh-gah-toh</td>
<td>clerk (white-collar worker)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ingegnere</td>
<td>in-gehn-yeh-reh</td>
<td>engineer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>insengante</td>
<td>in-sehn-yahn-teh</td>
<td>teacher (grades 1-8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meccanico</td>
<td>mehk-kah-nee-koh</td>
<td>mechanic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>medico</td>
<td>meh-dee-koh</td>
<td>doctor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>operaio</td>
<td>oh-pehr-ahy-oh</td>
<td>factory worker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pasticciere</td>
<td>pahhs-teech-cheh-reh</td>
<td>baker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>psicologo</td>
<td>psee-koh-loh-goh</td>
<td>psychologist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>professore</td>
<td>proh-fehs-soh-reh</td>
<td>professor, teacher (grades 9-university)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>segretaria</td>
<td>seh-greh-tah-ree-ah</td>
<td>secretary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stilista</td>
<td>stee-lees-tah</td>
<td>designer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
You might need some of the following words as well when talking about jobs:

**Che lavoro vuoi fare da grande?** (keh lah-voh-roh vwoi fah-reh dah grahn-deh) *(What work would you like to do when you are older/grow up?)*

**Cosa vuoi diventare?** (koh-zah vwoi dee-vehn-tah-reh) *(What do you want to be?)*

- **fabbrica**  
  *fahb-bree-kah*  
  *factory*

- **capo**  
  *kah-poh*  
  *head, boss*

- **padrone**  
  *pah-droh-neh*  
  *boss, owner*

- **direttore**  
  *dee-reht-toh-reh*  
  *manager, director*

- **sciopero**  
  *shoh-peh-eh-rah*  
  *strike*

- **stipendio**  
  *steep-deh-deh-oh*  
  *salary*

The word **sciopero** *(shoh-peh-eh-rah)* *(strike)* is very important in Italy, where workers go on strike all the time.

---

**Talkin’ the Talk**

La professoressa Lucia, a high-school teacher, is asking her young second-year Italian students what they want to be when they grow up.

Lucia: **Ermanna, che lavoro vuoi fare da grande?**  
*ehr-mahn-nah keh lah-voh-roh vwoi fah-reh dah grahn-deh*  
Ermanna, what do you want to be when you grow up?

Ermanna: **Voglio fare la veterinaria.**  
*vohl-yoh fah-reh lah veh-teh-reh-nah-eh*  
I want to be a veterinarian.

Lucia: **Perché?**  
*pehr-keh*  
Why?
Ermanna: **Perché amo gli animali.**
pehr-keh ah-moh lyee ah-nee-mah-lee
Because I love animals.

Lucia: **Clara, tu cosa vuoi diventare?**
klah-rah tooh koh-zah vwoi dee-vehn-tah-reh
Clara, what do you want to be?

Clara: **Voglio fare la scrittrice.**
vohl-yoh fah-reh lah skreet-tree-cheh
I want to be a writer.

Lucia: **So che ti piace scrivere.**
soh keh tee pyah-cheh skree-veh-reh
I know that you like to write.

Riccardo, e tu?
reek-kahr-doh eh tooh
And you, Richard?

Riccardo: **Voglio fare il medico come il mio babbo.**
vohl-yoh fah-reh il meh-dee-koh koh-meh eel mee-oh bahb-boh
I want to be a doctor like my dad.

Lucia: **Emilia, che lavoro ti interessa?**
eh-meel-yah keh lah-voh-roh tee in-teh-rehs-sah
Emilia, what kind of work are you interested in?

Emilia: **Vorrei fare l’insegnante delle elementari.**
voehr-rey fah-reh lin-sen-yahn-teh dehl-leh eh-leh-mehn-tah-ree
I’d like to be an elementary school teacher.

Lucia: **Bravi, ragazzi!**
brah-vee rah-gats-tsee
Good job, children!

---

**Tip**

There is an exception to the rule about singular family relatives. Whereas most do not take the definite article (**mia madre, e mio padre**) (mee-ah mah-dreh eh mee-oh pah-dreh), some shorter terms of endearment do, such as **la mia mamma** (lah mee-ah mahm-mah) (**my mom**) and **il mio babbo/il mio papà** (il mee-oh bahb-boh/il mee-oh pah-pah) (**my dad**).
# Words to Know

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Italian</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lavoro</td>
<td>lah-voh-roh</td>
<td>work, job</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>insegnante</td>
<td>in-sehn-yahn-teh</td>
<td>teacher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>babbo</td>
<td>bahb-boh</td>
<td>dad, daddy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>medico</td>
<td>meh-dee-koh</td>
<td>doctor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>direttore</td>
<td>dee-reht-toh-reh</td>
<td>director, manager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fabbrica</td>
<td>fahb-bree-kah</td>
<td>factory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sciopero</td>
<td>shoh-peh-roh</td>
<td>strike</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stipendio</td>
<td>stee-pehn-dee-oh</td>
<td>salary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ti interessa/</td>
<td>tee in-teh-rehs-sah/</td>
<td>you're interested in/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mi interessa</td>
<td>mee in-teh-rehs-sah</td>
<td>I'm interested in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tasse</td>
<td>tahs-seh</td>
<td>taxes, tuition</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Fun and Games

Here are ten fill-in-the-blank questions. Pick words and terms from the family tree to complete each statement. You may need the plural for some of the possessive adjectives and relatives. See Appendix D for the answer key.

1. I miei genitori sono ______________ e ______________.
2. Il figlio di mia madre è ________________.
3. I figli di mio fratello sono ______________.
4. La madre della mia mamma è ________________.
5. La sorella di mia madre è ________________.
6. Il marito di mia sorella è ________________.
7. La moglie di mio figlio è ________________.
8. La sorella di mio figlio è ________________.
9. I figli di mia zia sono ________________.
10. La mamma di mio marito è ________________.
"My wife and I are taking the course together. I figure I only have to learn half as much, since she finishes all of my sentences anyway."
In this part . . .

These chapters help you add polish to the basics the rest of the book provides. I give you ten ways to pick up Italian very quickly, from reading Italian food labels to singing along with your favorite Italian song. You also learn ten things to never say in Italian, and ten phrases to use so people will think you’re Italian. These chapters might be short, but they’re invaluable!
Chapter 18

Ten Ways to Pick Up Italian Quickly

In This Chapter
▶ Enjoying Italian food
▶ Listening to Italian
▶ Going to Italian films
▶ Sharing Italian with other people
▶ Surfing the Web

Of course, you’ve already chosen one of the quickest ways to learn Italian — you picked up this book! For smaller bites of Italian, nibble on one or all of the suggestions in this chapter. Above all, practice, practice, practice!

Read Italian Food Labels

These days, finding Italian food is easy in most countries. If you buy Italian food, read the original label a couple of times before you throw the package away. Usually, you can find an English translation alongside the Italian. In a few weeks, you won’t need to read the English part anymore!
Ask for Food in Italian

If you go to an Italian restaurant or pizzeria, don’t be shy! Order your favorite dishes by using their original names and Italian pronunciations. (Don’t forget that bruschetta is pronounced broohs-keht-tah, with the k sound, just like porchetta (pohr-keht-tah)!) 

Listen to Italian Songs

You can easily pick up Italian words and pronunciation by listening to Italian music and singing along with la canzone (lah kahn-tsoh-neh) (the song). You have access to scores of Italian singers through the Internet (especially YouTube). You can easily find the lyrics either by Googling them separately, or by modifying your YouTube search by adding the word “karaoke.” Put as many songs as you can on your iPod, and listen (and sing) whenever you can!

Read Italian Publications

Trying to read a newspaper in a foreign language can be very frustrating! Don’t worry: Experts say that journalistic language is the most difficult to understand. The culture, gossip, crime, and weather articles are undoubtedly the easiest to understand, and many online newspapers also offer small video clips. You can find several Italian newspapers on-line. By the way, Italians call the newspaper il giornale (eel johr-nah-leh).

Watch Italian Movies

We hope you like movies! Watching a movie in the original language is a pleasant way to pick up words, expressions, and names, and you can even discover something about the country where the story takes place. You can find several Italian movies with English subtitles, from classic neorealismo (neh-oh-reh-ah-leez-moh) (neorealism) to the most recent releases. You can even find old familiar cartoons online, dubbed into Italian. You won’t need subtitles for these!
Tune In to Italian Radio and TV Programs

Many countries deliver radio programs (especially the news) in Italian. Find some Italian programs and listen as often as you can. You can at least understand the basics of what the newscaster says because the speakers usually articulate very clearly and slowly, and some of the news is the same as you’d hear in your own national programs, but perhaps with a different perspective. Again, you can pick up words without much effort.

With good Internet access, you can also listen to stations directly from Italy. For several programs on the radio and television, start with these sites:

http://www.international.rai.it/
http://italiansinfonia.com.stations.htm

Listen to Italian Language Tapes

You can listen to Italian language tapes — or the audio CD that comes with this book — almost any time: when you jog, clean your apartment or house, cook, or whenever you like. And please, don’t forget to repeat aloud what you hear.

Share Your Interest

I consider this a valid tip when learning any language: Learning a language with other people is much more pleasant (and easier!) than doing it by yourself. Having company while you broaden your knowledge of Italian is helpful not only because language is primarily a means of communicating with others, but also because fun is a vital element in every learning process. Write an ad and put it in the local library or bookshop to start an Italian conversation or book group — you never know what doors this will open for you!
Surf the Net

Nothing is easier than looking for information on the Internet. To find information about Italy, type Italia (ee-tah-lee-ah) (Italy) or the name of a famous city or monument in Italian, such as Venezia (veh-neh-tsee-ah) (Venice) or Colosseo (koh-lohs-seh-oh) (the Colosseum), to mention just two. Each city and region has its own official website full of all sorts of useful information. The best place to start is www.Google.it, the Italian Google.

Cook!

One of my favorite sites is Italianfoodnet.com. Not only will you find great recipes, but also cooking videos in Italian that you can watch again and again as you cook alongside the chefs. After a while, you’ll be confident enough to turn off the subtitles.
Ten Things Never to Say in Italian

We hope the title to this chapter isn’t too dramatic! Remember that you should always approach the learning process as fun. If you don’t speak Italian perfectly, you may say something wrong — which might be funny or even embarrassing. Don’t worry; messing up is not a tragedy! On the contrary, most people are pleased when non-heritage speakers make any attempt to learn their language, and they allow for mistakes in both speech and behavior. Nevertheless, we want to give you a little advice to help you avoid such situations.

Ciao-ing Down

Ciao (chou) is a common way to say “hello” and “goodbye” that even people who don’t speak Italian know. However, please remember that Italians use it only with persons they address with the informal tu (tooh) (you) — see Chapter 2 for a discussion of the use of tu. Many non speakers of Italian use the formal lei (ley) and still say ciao; again, this misstep is not a tragedy, but when you’re addressing someone in the formal manner, it’s more Italian to say buongiorno (bwohn-johr-noh) (good morning) or arrivederci (ahr-ree-veh-dehr-chee) (good-bye).
Don’t Be Literal

A literal translation from English to Italian doesn’t work in many cases. Here’s a typical example: You may want to ask your Italian friend, “How do you like Los Angeles?” Because you’ve probably learned a lot, you might translate your question into “Come ti piace Los Angeles?” (koh-meh tee pyah-cheh Los Angeles) knowing that come is the translation of “how” and ti piace means “do you like.” Both are absolutely correct translations, but the whole question doesn’t sound Italian. I would ask “Ti piace Los Angeles?” (tee pyah-cheh Los Angeles) (Do you like Los Angeles?).

Five Fickle “False Friends”

We consider some words “false friends.” These words sound and look quite similar in two different languages but, unfortunately, don’t have the same meaning. One example is the word sympathy. In Italian, simpatia (seem-pah-tee-ah) is the feeling you have for someone you find nice, funny, and pleasant; it doesn’t mean that you feel what the other person feels. Simpatia’s translation can be “liking.” So to say that you find somebody simpatico (seem-pah-tee-koh) means that you like him or her — the person is nice. Interestingly, English kept the original Greek meaning of the word sympathy, which is “to suffer together.”

Another false friend is the word educazione (eh-dooh-kah-tsyoh-neh). In Italian, it does not mean the level of your schooling, but the way you have grown up — your upbringing. Educato (eh-dooh-kah-toh) [educata (eh-dooh-kah-tah) for a female] translates as “well-brought-up” or “polite.” A good Italian word for “education” is istruzione (ees-trooh-tyyooh-neh).

The surprises aren’t over. Guess what the Italian word sensibile (sehn-see-bee-leh) means? The subject of this section tells you already that it doesn’t mean “sensible.” Instead, it means “sensitive.” You can translate the English “sensible” with the adjective ragionevole (rah-joh-neh-voh-leh).

The adjective vecchio (m) (vehk-yoh) / vecchia (f) (vehk-yah) translates as “old,” but avoid using it to refer to people. You can use vecchio for objects (a car, a book, or whatever), but when referring to a person, say anziano (m) (ahn-tsee-ah-noh) or anziana (f) (ahn-tsee-ah-nah). Anziano means that the person is not young anymore — but it doesn’t sound negative.

Most hotels and inns offer at least breakfast, so you might want to ask for more marmellata (mahr-mehl-lah-tah) if they have run out. Do not ask for preservativi (preh-zehr-vah-tee-vee) (condoms) or you will be greeted with an incredulous stare.
Food Faux Pas

So if you’re trying to blend in and sound like an Italian, don’t order a **cappuccino** after, let’s say, 11:00 a.m. **Cappuccino** is a breakfast drink.

Do not ask for **parmigiano** cheese for the **pasta** with fish/clams/shrimp that has just been brought to the table. Mixing fish with cheese is tantamount to eating pickles with milk!

And don’t be surprised if you don’t find spaghetti and meatballs on the menu. More than likely, you won’t (and so shouldn’t ask for it).

The Problem with “Play”

We’d like to dedicate the last two points of this chapter to the translations of the verb “to play.” In English, this verb has different meanings, all of them describing nice activities. The most usual meaning (and the first given in all dictionaries) corresponds to the Italian **giocare** (joh-kah-reh): “to have fun” or “to do things to pass the time pleasantly, as children do.” But don’t use this verb when talking about instruments. Instead, use **suonare** (swoh-nah-reh); therefore, the correct sentence is **suono il piano** (swoh-noh eel pee-ah-noh) (**I play piano**).

Being Careful of “False Friends”

The pitfalls surrounding “false friends” that look or sound like words you know but have different meanings — can transfer to idiomatic expressions that can be very funny for a foreigner. Just think of the English expression “It’s raining cats and dogs,” which is the best example of a funny expression for non-native English speakers. You now must know that you wouldn’t say **Sta piovendo gatti e cani** (stah pyoh-vehn-doh gaht-tee eh kah-nee). To express the same sentiment, you say instead **Piove a catinelle** (pyoh-veh ah kah-tee-nehl-leh) (**It’s raining buckets.**).

The same is true for the expression “I’m hungry.” In Italian, you “have” hunger; therefore you say **Ho fame** (oh fah-meh). You could also say **Sono affamato** (soh-noh ahf-fah-mah-toh), but this sounds more like “I’m starving,” which is much stronger.
Chapter 20

Ten Favorite Italian Expressions

In This Chapter
▶ Expressions you hear all the time
▶ Phrases you can say to sound Italian

Counting how many times a day Italians use some of the following expressions would be an interesting experiment! They are all very typical, and you hear them often in colloquial Italian. So if you remember some of them and use them on the right occasion, you will seem very Italian. Of course, there are, as in any language, always expressions that sound strange coming from the mouth of a foreigner, but the following can be used without hesitation. Exceptions may be mamma mia and uffa, because they are very spontaneous. But using any or all of the others can make you really sound Italian.

Mamma mia!

Mamma mia! (mahm-mah mee-ah) Please don’t think that all Italians are like children just because you notice how often they call for their mommies! In fact, the literal translation is something like “Oh Mama!” and Italians use the exclamation to express surprise, impatience, happiness, sorrow, and so on — in general, a strong emotion. The figurative translation is something like “My goodness!”

Che bello!

Che bello! (keh behl-loh) (How lovely! How nice! — literally, how beautiful!) Using this phrase shows that you’re enthusiastic about something.
Uffa!

Uffa! (oohf-lah) is a very clear way to show that you’re annoyed, bored, angry, or simply fed up with a situation. In English, you’d probably express the same by exhaling in exasperation.

Che ne so!/Boh!

When Italians want to say that they have no idea about something, they shrug their shoulders and say Che ne so! (keh neh soh) (How should I know?) and or boh! (boh). We don’t need to tell you that both are quite common expressions.

Magari!

Magari! (mah-gah-ree) Just one word, but it expresses so much! It indicates a strong wish or hope. It’s a good answer, for instance, if somebody asks you if you’d like to win the lottery. A good translation of this word is “If only!” or “I’d love it!”

Ti sta bene!

Ti sta bene! (tee stah beh-neh) This is the Italian way to say “Serves you right!” But this can also mean: “It looks good on you!,” depending on the context.

Non te la prendere!

If you see that somebody is sad, worried, or upset, you can try to console him or her by saying Non te la prendere! (nohn teh lah prehn-deh-reh) (Don’t get so upset!). Sometimes it works.
**Che macello!**

Figuring out the derivation of this phrase is not difficult. The literal translation of *Che macello!* (keh mah-chehl-loh) is “What a slaughterhouse!” Italians usually say this in situations in which an English speaker would say “What a mess!”

**Non mi va!**

*Non mi va!* (nohn mee vah) is one of the first phrases Italian children learn. It means that you don’t want to do something. The best translation is “I don’t feel like it!”

**Mi raccomando!**

With *Mi raccomando!* (mee rahk-koh-mahn-doh), you express a special emphasis in asking for something — like saying “Please, I beg you!” An example is *Telefonami, mi raccomando!* (“Don’t forget to call me, please!”).
In Chapter 20, we give you ten typical expressions Italians love and use a lot. Using them can help you sound very Italian. In this chapter, we offer more sophisticated expressions to make you sound even more Italian — these are truly idiomatic expressions. Using these expressions may make an Italian gape in astonishment. Have fun!

In bocca al lupo!

Perhaps you have an Italian friend facing a difficult situation and you want to wish her good luck. The literal translation of buona fortuna! (bwoh-nah fohr-tooh-nah) would work, but we think that this phrase makes you sound really Italian: in bocca al lupo! (een bohk-kah ahl looh-poh). Literally, this means “in the wolf’s mouth!” The upcoming difficulty looks like a big wolf, waiting with mouth open wide. Your friend will probably answer Crepi il lupo! (kreh-pee eel looh-poh), which means “May the wolf die!”
Acqua in bocca!

When you want to share a secret with somebody — but want to make sure that he or she won’t tell anybody else — say **acqua in bocca!** (ahk-wah een bohk-kah). This expression means “water in mouth.” If your mouth is full of water, you can’t speak. Similar idioms in English are “Don’t say a word about it!” and “Mum’s the word!”

Salute!

Someone sneezes and you say **salute!** (sah-tooh-teh), which means “health.” In fact, it’s a way to wish the person to be healthy very soon. “Bless you!” is the English equivalent. You can also use this when making a toast.

Macché!

Italians love to talk, no doubt about it. Nevertheless, situations exist in which they prefer to say just one word. One good example is **macché!** (mahk-keh). It’s a strong and determined way to say “Of course not” or “Certainly not!”

Neanche per sogno!

Similar to the preceding idiom, **neanche per sogno** (neh-ahn-keh pehr soh-nyoh) means literally “not even in a dream.” It is another way to say “No way!” and is close to the English expression “In your dreams.”

Peggio per te!

You don’t show much sympathy when saying this phrase, but if you’re looking for the Italian equivalent of “Too bad for you!” or “Tough luck!” **peggio per te** (pehj-joh pehr teh) is what you need.
**Piantala!**

This is an informal way to say “Stop it!” or “Cut it out!” The literal translation of *piantala* (pyahn-tah-lah) is “Plant it!”

**Vacci piano!**

“Slow down!” is the translation of the Italian expression *Vacci piano!* (vahch-chee pyah-noh). Use it when you feel that somebody is going too fast or being too enthusiastic about something.

**Eccome!**

This emphatic word sums up the following phrases: “And how!” “You’d better believe it!” “Very!” “And then some.” Let’s say you ask a friend if someone you might be interested in is married: Your friend responds: “**Eccome!**” (ehk-koh-meh).

**Lascia perdere!**

Let’s say something is really bugging your new Italian friend. A quick “**Lascia perdere!**” (lah-shah pehr-deh-reh) (Let it go! Forget about it!) will help put things into a new light. Didn’t get the woman you courted? Your son totaled your car but is safe and sound? **Lascia perdere!**
Here’s something. It’s a language school that will teach you to speak Italian for $500, or for $200 they’ll just give you an accent.”
In this part . . .

Here is where the real nuts and bolts are found. Included are verb conjugation tables and an extensive mini-dictionary with both English-to-Italian and Italian-to-English translations. This part also contains the instructions on how to use the CD as well as a list of all the tracks on the CD. Last but not least, you’ll find the answer key to all the Fun & Games exercises at the end of the chapters.
# Appendix A

## Verb Tables

### Italian Verbs

#### Regular Verbs Ending with -are

For example: parlare (to speak); Past participle: parlato (spoken) (w/averre)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>io (I)</td>
<td>parlo</td>
<td>ho parlato</td>
<td>parlerò</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu (you, inf.)</td>
<td>parli</td>
<td>hai parlato</td>
<td>parlerai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lui/lei (he/she/you form.)</td>
<td>parla</td>
<td>ha parlato</td>
<td>parlerà</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noi (we)</td>
<td>parliamo</td>
<td>abbiamo parlato</td>
<td>parleremo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voi (you)</td>
<td>parlate</td>
<td>avete parlato</td>
<td>parlerete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loro (they/you form. pl.)</td>
<td>parlano</td>
<td>hanno parlato</td>
<td>parleranno</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Other common –ARE verbs: **mangiare** (to eat), **studiare** (to study), **imparare** (to learn), **insegnare** (to teach), **suonare** (to play instrument), **giocare** (to play game/sport), **disegnare** (to draw), **cucinare** (to cook), **lavorare** (to work)
Regular Verbs Ending with -ere
For example: vendere (to sell);
Past participle: venduto (sold) (w/averé)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>io (I)</td>
<td>vendo</td>
<td>venderò</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu (you, inf.)</td>
<td>vendi</td>
<td>venderai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lui/lei (he/she/you form.)</td>
<td>vende</td>
<td>venderà</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noi (we)</td>
<td>vendiamo</td>
<td>venderemo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voi (you)</td>
<td>vendete</td>
<td>venderete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loro (they/you form. pl.)</td>
<td>vendono</td>
<td>venderanno</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Other common -ERE verbs: leggere (to read), scrivere (to write), mettere (to put), prendere (to take), vivere (to live), vedere (to see), chiudere (to close), ripetere (to repeat). Unlike the example, most of these past participles are irregular: letto, scritto, messo, preso, vissuto, visto/veduto, chiuso. Only ripetuto is regular.

Regular Verbs Ending with -ire*
For example: partire (to leave);
Past participle: partito (left) (w/essere)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>io (I)</td>
<td>parto</td>
<td>partirò</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu (you, inf.)</td>
<td>parti</td>
<td>partirai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lui/lei (he/she/you form.)</td>
<td>parte</td>
<td>partirà</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noi (we)</td>
<td>partiamo</td>
<td>partiremo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voi (you)</td>
<td>partite</td>
<td>partirete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loro (they/you form. pl.)</td>
<td>partono</td>
<td>partiranno</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Other common **-IRE** verbs: *aprire* (to open), *dormire* (to sleep), *coprire* (to cover), *sentire* (to hear, feel, taste, touch). Note that *aprire* and *coprire* have irregular past participles (*aperto* and *coperto*).

Note that **-IRE** (isc) verbs come later in this Appendix.

### Verb *avere* (to have)
Past Participle: avuto (had) (w/ avere)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>io (I)</td>
<td><em>ho</em></td>
<td><em>ho avuto</em></td>
<td><em>avrò</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu (you, inf.)</td>
<td><em>hai</em></td>
<td><em>hai avuto</em></td>
<td><em>avrai</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lui/lei (he/she/you form.)</td>
<td><em>ha</em></td>
<td><em>ha avuto</em></td>
<td><em>avrà</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noi (we)</td>
<td><em>abbiamo</em></td>
<td><em>abbiamo avuto</em></td>
<td><em>avremo</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voi (you)</td>
<td><em>avete</em></td>
<td><em>avete avuto</em></td>
<td><em>avrete</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loro (they/you form. pl.)</td>
<td><em>hanno</em></td>
<td><em>hanno avuto</em></td>
<td><em>avranno</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Verb *essere* (to be)
Past Participle: stato (been) (w/essere)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>io (I)</td>
<td><em>sono</em></td>
<td><em>sono stato/a</em></td>
<td><em>sarò</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu (you, inf.)</td>
<td><em>sei</em></td>
<td><em>sei stato/a</em></td>
<td><em>sarai</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lui/lei (he/she/you form.)</td>
<td><em>è</em></td>
<td><em>è stato/a</em></td>
<td><em>sarà</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noi (we)</td>
<td><em>siamo</em></td>
<td><em>siamo stati/e</em></td>
<td><em>saremo</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voi (you)</td>
<td><em>siete</em></td>
<td><em>siete stati/e</em></td>
<td><em>sarete</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loro (they/you form. pl.)</td>
<td><em>sono</em></td>
<td><em>sono stati/e</em></td>
<td><em>saranno</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Reflexive Verbs
For example: lavarsi (to wash oneself)
Past Participle: lavato (washed) (essere *ALL reflexive verbs take
essere in the past)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>io (I)</td>
<td>mi lavo</td>
<td>mi sono lavato/a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu (you, inf.)</td>
<td>ti lavi</td>
<td>ti sei lavato/a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lui/lei (he/she/you form.)</td>
<td>si lava</td>
<td>si è lavato/a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noi (we)</td>
<td>ci laviamo</td>
<td>ci siamo lavati/e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voi (you)</td>
<td>vi lavate</td>
<td>vi siete lavati/e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loro (they/you form. pl.)</td>
<td>si lavano</td>
<td>si sono lavati/e</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Other common reflexive verbs include: alzarsi (to get up), divertirsi (to have fun), sentirsì (to feel), innamorarsi (to fall in love), mettersi (to put [something] on), addormentarsì (to fall asleep), permettersì (to afford)

Irregular Italian Verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>io</td>
<td>vado</td>
<td>andrò</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu</td>
<td>vai</td>
<td>andrai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lui/lei</td>
<td>va</td>
<td>andrà</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noi</td>
<td>andiamo</td>
<td>andremo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voi</td>
<td>andate</td>
<td>andrete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loro</td>
<td>vanno</td>
<td>andranno</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Appendix A: Verb Tables

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>bene</strong></th>
<th><strong>Present</strong></th>
<th><strong>Future</strong></th>
<th><strong>Past Participle</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>io</td>
<td>bevo</td>
<td>berrò</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu</td>
<td>bevi</td>
<td>berrai</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lui/lei</td>
<td>beve</td>
<td>berrà</td>
<td>bevuto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noie</td>
<td>beviamo</td>
<td>berremo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voie</td>
<td>bevete</td>
<td>berrete</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loro</td>
<td>bevono</td>
<td>berranno</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>dare</strong></th>
<th><strong>Present</strong></th>
<th><strong>Future</strong></th>
<th><strong>Past Participle</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>io</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>darò</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu</td>
<td>dai</td>
<td>darai</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lui/lei</td>
<td>dà</td>
<td>darà</td>
<td>dato</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noie</td>
<td>diamo</td>
<td>daremo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voie</td>
<td>date</td>
<td>darete</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loro</td>
<td>danno</td>
<td>daranno</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>dire</strong></th>
<th><strong>Present</strong></th>
<th><strong>Future</strong></th>
<th><strong>Past Participle</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>io</td>
<td>dico</td>
<td>dirò</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu</td>
<td>dici</td>
<td>dirai</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lui/lei</td>
<td>dice</td>
<td>dirà</td>
<td>detto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noie</td>
<td>diciamo</td>
<td>diremo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voie</td>
<td>dite</td>
<td>direte</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loro</td>
<td>dicono</td>
<td>diranno</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### dovere

- **Present**: devo
devi
deve
dobbiamo

dovete
devono

- **Future**: dovrò
dovrai
dovrà
dovremo

dovrete
dovranno

- **Past Participle**: dovuto

**Meaning**: to have to; ought to; must

### fare

- **Present**: faccio
da
 fa
 facciamo
 fate
 fanno

- **Future**: farò
 farai
 farà
 faremo
 ferete
 faranno

- **Past Participle**: fatto

**Meaning**: to do; to make

### morire

- **Present**: muoio
 muori
 muore
 moriamo
 morite
 muoiono

- **Future**: morirò
 morirai
 morirà
 moriremo
 morirete
 moriranno

- **Past Participle**: morto/a/i/e

**Meaning**: to die

### piacere

- **Present**: piace

gli/loro

di/le/ci

- **Future**: piacerà

- **Past Participle**: piaciuto/a/i/e

**Meaning**: to like
The verb *piacere* takes indirect object pronouns and you usually only need the third person singular and plural of this verb.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>io</em></td>
<td>pongo</td>
<td>porrò</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>tu</em></td>
<td>poni</td>
<td>porrai</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>lui/lei</em></td>
<td>pone</td>
<td>porrà</td>
<td>posto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>noi</em></td>
<td>poniamo</td>
<td>porremo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>voi</em></td>
<td>ponete</td>
<td>porrete</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>loro</em></td>
<td>pongono</td>
<td>porranno</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Other verbs conjugated like *porre* include: *opporre* (to oppose) e *imporre* (to impose), and *proporre* (to propose or suggest).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>io</em></td>
<td>posso</td>
<td>potrò</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>tu</em></td>
<td>puoi</td>
<td>potrai</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>lui/lei</em></td>
<td>può</td>
<td>potrà</td>
<td>potuto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>noi</em></td>
<td>possiamo</td>
<td>potremo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>voi</em></td>
<td>potete</td>
<td>potrete</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>loro</em></td>
<td>possono</td>
<td>potranno</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>io</em></td>
<td>rimango</td>
<td>rimarrò</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>tu</em></td>
<td>rimani</td>
<td>rimarrai</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>lui/lei</em></td>
<td>rimane</td>
<td>rimarrà</td>
<td>rimasto/a/i/e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>noi</em></td>
<td>rimaniamo</td>
<td>rimarremo</td>
<td>(w/essere)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>voi</em></td>
<td>rimanete</td>
<td>rimarrete</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>loro</em></td>
<td>rimangono</td>
<td>rimarranno</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Part V: Appendixes

#### salire

to go up

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>io</em></td>
<td>salgo</td>
<td>salirò</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>tu</em></td>
<td>sali</td>
<td>salirai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>lui/lei</em></td>
<td>sale</td>
<td>salirà</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>noi</em></td>
<td>saliamo</td>
<td>saliremo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>voi</em></td>
<td>salite</td>
<td>salirete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>loro</em></td>
<td>salgono</td>
<td>saliranno</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### sapere

to know

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>io</em></td>
<td>so</td>
<td>saprò</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>tu</em></td>
<td>sai</td>
<td>saprai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>lui/lei</em></td>
<td>sa</td>
<td>saprà</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>noi</em></td>
<td>sappiamo</td>
<td>sapremo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>voi</em></td>
<td>sapete</td>
<td>saprete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>loro</em></td>
<td>sanno</td>
<td>sapranno</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### scegliere

to choose

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>io</em></td>
<td>scelgo</td>
<td>sceglierò</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>tu</em></td>
<td>scegli</td>
<td>sceglierai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>lui/lei</em></td>
<td>sceglie</td>
<td>sceglierà</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>noi</em></td>
<td>scegliamo</td>
<td>sceglieremo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>voi</em></td>
<td>scegliete</td>
<td>sceglierete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>loro</em></td>
<td>scelgono</td>
<td>sceglieranno</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Appendix A: Verb Tables

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sedersi</td>
<td><strong>io</strong> mi siedo</td>
<td><strong>Future</strong></td>
<td><strong>Past Participle</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to sit</td>
<td><strong>tu</strong> ti siedi</td>
<td><strong>lui/lei</strong> si siede</td>
<td><strong>seduto</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>ci sediamo</strong></td>
<td><strong>(w/essere)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>voi</strong> vi sedete</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>loro</strong> si siedono</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stare</td>
<td><strong>io</strong> sto</td>
<td><strong>Future</strong></td>
<td><strong>Past Participle</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to stay; to be</td>
<td><strong>tu</strong> stai</td>
<td><strong>lui/lei</strong> sta</td>
<td><strong>stato/a/i/e</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>noi</strong> stiamo</td>
<td><strong>starà</strong></td>
<td><strong>staremo</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>voi</strong> state</td>
<td><strong>starete</strong></td>
<td><strong>(w/essere)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>loro</strong> stanno</td>
<td><strong>staranno</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tacere</td>
<td><strong>io</strong> taccio</td>
<td><strong>Future</strong></td>
<td><strong>Past Participle</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be silent</td>
<td><strong>tu</strong> taci</td>
<td><strong>tacerà</strong></td>
<td><strong>taciuto</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>lui/lei</strong> tace</td>
<td><strong>taceremo</strong></td>
<td><strong>(w/averes)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>noi</strong> taciamo</td>
<td><strong>tacerete</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>voi</strong> tacete</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>loro</strong> tacciono</td>
<td><strong>taceranno</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### tenere

**to hold**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>io</em></td>
<td>tengo</td>
<td>terrò</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>tu</em></td>
<td>tieni</td>
<td>terrai</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>lui/lei</em></td>
<td>tiene</td>
<td>terrà</td>
<td>tenuto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>noi</em></td>
<td>teniamo</td>
<td>terremo</td>
<td>(w/avere)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>voi</em></td>
<td>tenete</td>
<td>terrete</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>loro</em></td>
<td>tengono</td>
<td>terranno</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### togliere

**to take away**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>io</em></td>
<td>tolgo</td>
<td>toglierò</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>tu</em></td>
<td>togli</td>
<td>toglierai</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>lui/lei</em></td>
<td>toglie</td>
<td>toglierà</td>
<td>tolto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>noi</em></td>
<td>togliamo</td>
<td>toglieremo</td>
<td>(w/avere)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>voi</em></td>
<td>togliete</td>
<td>toglierete</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>loro</em></td>
<td>tolgo</td>
<td>toglieranno</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### uscire

**to go out**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>io</em></td>
<td>esco</td>
<td>uscirò</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>tu</em></td>
<td>esci</td>
<td>uscirai</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>lui/lei</em></td>
<td>esce</td>
<td>uscirà</td>
<td>uscito/a/i/e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>noi</em></td>
<td>usciamo</td>
<td>usciremo</td>
<td>(w/essere)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>voi</em></td>
<td>uscire</td>
<td>uscirete</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>loro</em></td>
<td>escono</td>
<td>usciranno</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Appendix A: Verb Tables

#### Venire

**to come**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>io</em></td>
<td>vengo</td>
<td>verrò</td>
<td>venuto/a/i/e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>tu</em></td>
<td>vieni</td>
<td>verrai</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>lui/lei</em></td>
<td>viene</td>
<td>verrà</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>noi</em></td>
<td>veniamo</td>
<td>verremo</td>
<td>(w/essere)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>voi</em></td>
<td>venite</td>
<td>verrete</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>loro</em></td>
<td>vengono</td>
<td>verranno</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Volere

**to want**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>io</em></td>
<td>voglio</td>
<td>vorrò</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>tu</em></td>
<td>vuoi</td>
<td>vorrai</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>lui/lei</em></td>
<td>vuole</td>
<td>verrà</td>
<td>voluto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>noi</em></td>
<td>vogliamo</td>
<td>vorremo</td>
<td>(w/aver)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>voi</em></td>
<td>volete</td>
<td>vorrete</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>loro</em></td>
<td>vogliono</td>
<td>verranno</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Italian –IRE Verbs with a Special Pattern (-isc-)

**Capire**

**to understand**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>io</em></td>
<td>capisco</td>
<td>capirò</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>tu</em></td>
<td>capiscì</td>
<td>capirai</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>lui/lei</em></td>
<td>capisce</td>
<td>capirà</td>
<td>capito</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>noi</em></td>
<td>capiamo</td>
<td>capiremo</td>
<td>(w/aver)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>voi</em></td>
<td>capite</td>
<td>capirete</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>loro</em></td>
<td>capiscono</td>
<td>capiranno</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### finire

**to finish**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>io</td>
<td>finisco</td>
<td>finirò</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu</td>
<td>finisci</td>
<td>finirai</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lui/lei</td>
<td>finisce</td>
<td>finirà</td>
<td>finito</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noi</td>
<td>finiamo</td>
<td>finiremo</td>
<td>(w/avere)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voi</td>
<td>finite</td>
<td>finirete</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loro</td>
<td>finiscono</td>
<td>finiranno</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### preferire

**to prefer**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>io</td>
<td>preferisco</td>
<td>preferirò</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu</td>
<td>preferisci</td>
<td>preferirai</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lui/lei</td>
<td>preferisce</td>
<td>preferirà</td>
<td>preferito</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noi</td>
<td>preferiamo</td>
<td>preferiremo</td>
<td>(w/avere)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voi</td>
<td>preferite</td>
<td>preferirete</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loro</td>
<td>preferiscono</td>
<td>preferiranno</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Other common -ISC verbs include: **pulire** (to clean), **interferire** (to interfere), and **costruire** (to build)
## Common Irregular Past Participles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past Participle</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cotto</td>
<td>cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deciso</td>
<td>decided</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>letto</td>
<td>read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>messo</td>
<td>put</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>morto</td>
<td>died</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nato</td>
<td>born</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perso, perduto</td>
<td>lost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>preso</td>
<td>took, had, taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>risposto</td>
<td>replied/responded/answered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sciolto</td>
<td>melted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scritto</td>
<td>wrote, written</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>visto, veduto</td>
<td>saw, seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vissuto</td>
<td>lived</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For more on Italian verbs and also practice exercises, see *Italian Verbs For Dummies* (John Wiley & Sons, Inc.).
Italian-English
Mini Dictionary

A

a destra/ah dehs-trah/(on the) right
a domani/ah doh-mah-nee/see you tomorrow
a dopo/ah doh-poh/see you later
a sinistra/ah see-nees-trah/(on the) left
abitare/ah-bee-tah-reh/to live
abitato/m/ah-bee-toh/suit
acqua/f/ahk-kwah/water
aereo/m/ah-eh-reh-oh/airplane
aeroporto/m/ah-eh-roh-pohr-toh/airport
affittare (v.)/ahf-feet-tah-reh/to rent
agosto/ah-gohs-toh/August
albergo/m/ahl-behr-goh/hotel
amare (v.)/ah-mah-reh/to love
americana/f/americano/m (v.)/ah-meh-ree-kah-nah/ah-meh-ree-kah-noh/American
amica/f/amico/m/ah-mee-kah/ah-mee-koh/friend
amore/m/ah-moh-reh/love
anche/ahn-keh/also
andare (v.)/ahn-dah-reh/to go
andata/f/ahn-dah-tah/one-way (ticket)
andata/f/e ritorno/m/ahn-dah-tah eh ree-toh-noh/round trip
anno/m/ah-noh/year
antipasti/m/ahn-tee-pahs-tee/appetizers
anziana/f/anziano/m/ahn-tsee-ah-nah/ahn-tsee-ah-noh/old (for persons)
apartamento/m/ahp-pahr-tah-mehn-toh/apartment
aprile/ah-pee-leh/April
architetto/m/ahr-kee-teht-toh/architect
arrivare/ahr-ree-veh-reh/to arrive
arrivederci/ahr-ree-veh-dehr-chee/see you; good-bye
assegno/m/ahs-veh-nyoh/check
autobus/m/ou-toh-boohs/bus
automobile/f/ou-toh-moh-beeh-leh/car
aver (v.)/ah-veh-reh/to have
avvocato/m/ahv-voh-kah-toh/lawyer

B

bambina/f/bambino/m/bahm-bee-nah/bahm-bee-noh/child
banca/f/bahn-kah/bank
bella/f/bello/m/behl-lah/behl-loh/beautiful
bene/beh-neh/well, good (adverb)
bere (v./)beh-reh/to drink
bianca/f/bianco/m/byahn-kah/byahn-koh/white
bicchiere/m/beek-kyeh-reh/glass
bicicletta/f/beeh-chee-klleht-tah/bicycle
biglietto/m/beeh-lyeh-toh/ticket
birra/f/beer-rah/beer
blu/f/m/blooh/blue
borsa/f/bohr-sah/bag, hand-bag
bottiglia/f/boht-tee-lyah/bottle
braccio/m/brahch-choh/arm
buona/f/buono/m/bwoh-nah/bwoh-noh/good
buonanotte/bwoh-nah-noht-teh/good-night
buonasera/bwoh-nah-seh-rah/good evening
buongiorno/bwohn-johr-noh/good morning; good day

C

c’è/cheh/there is
caffè/m/kahf-feh/coffee
calcio/m/kahl-choh/soccer
calda/f/caldo/m/kahl-dah/kahl-doh/warm; hot
cambiare/kahm-bee-ah-reh/to change
cameriera/f/cameriere/m/kahm-meh-ryeh-rah/kahm-meh-ryeh-reh/waitress/waiter
camicia/f/kahm-mee-chah/shirt
campagna/f/kahm-pah-nyah/country (countryside)
canadese/f/m/kah-nah-deh-zeh/Canadian
cane/m/kah-neh/dog
capelli/m.pl./kahp-pehl-lee/hair
cappello/m/kahp-pehl-loh/hat
cappotto/m/kahp-pohht-toh/coat
cara/f/caro/m/kah-rah/kah-roh/dear; expensive
carina/f/carino/m/kah-ree-nah/kah-ree-noh/nice
carta di credito/f/kahr-tah-dee kreh-dee-toh/credit card
casa/f/kah-ah-hose; home
cassa/f/kahs-sah/cash register
cavallo/m/kah-vahl-loh/horse
cena/f/cheh-nah/dinner
cento/chehn-toh/hundred
chi/kee/who
chiara/f/chiaro/m/kyah-rah/kyah-roh/light-colored (clear)
ci sono/chee soh-noh/there are
ciao/chou/hello; good-bye
cinema/m/chee-neh-mah/cinema
cinquanta/cheen-krwahn-tah/fifty
cinque/cheen-kweh/five
cioccolata/f/choh-koh-lah-tah/chocolate
città/f/cheet-tah/city, town
codice postale/m/kohm-dee-keh pohs-tah-leh/zip code
colazione/f/koh-lah-tyooh-neh/breakfast
collo/m/kohl-loh/neck
colare/m/koh-loh-reh/color
come/kohm-meh/how
commessa/f/commesso/m/kohm-mehs-sah/kohm-mehs-soh/sales clerk
comprare (v.)/kohm-prah-reh/to buy
costume da bagno/m/kohs-tooh-meh dah bah-nyoh/bathing suit
cravatta/f/krah-vahl-tah/tie
crema/f/kreh-mah/custard
d’ accordo/dahk-kohr-doh/all right; okay
dai/dahy/come on!
dare (v.)/dah-reh/to give
dentista/f/m/dehn-tees-tah/dentist
dicembre/deeh-chehm-brehr/December
diciannove/deeh-chahn-noh-veh/nineteen
diciassette/deeh-chahs-seht-teh/seventeen
diciotto/deeh-choht-toh/eighteen
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Italian</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dieci/dye-h-chee-ten</td>
<td>ten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dire (v.)/dee-reh/to say</td>
<td>to say</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dito/m/dee-toh/finger</td>
<td>finger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dodici/doh-dee-chee/twelve</td>
<td>twelve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dolce/f/m/dohl-cheh/sweet</td>
<td>sweet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>domani/DOH-mah-nee/tomorrow</td>
<td>tomorrow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>donna/DOH-nah/woman</td>
<td>woman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dormire (v.)/DOH-mee-reh/to sleep</td>
<td>to sleep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dottore/m/doht-toh-reh/doctor</td>
<td>doctor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dove/DOH-veh/where</td>
<td>where</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dovere (v.)/DOH-veh-reh/to have to, must</td>
<td>have to, must</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>due/DOOH-eh/two</td>
<td>two</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>emergenza/f/eh-mehr-jehn-tsah/</td>
<td>emergency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>entrata/f/ehn-trah-tah/entrance</td>
<td>entrance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>entrare/ehn-trah-reh/to enter</td>
<td>to enter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>essere (v.)/ehs-seh-reh/to be</td>
<td>to be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>est/m/ehst/east</td>
<td>east</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faccia/f/fahch-chah/face</td>
<td>face</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facile (adj)/fah-chee-leh/easy</td>
<td>easy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fame/f/fah-meheh/hunger</td>
<td>hunger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fare (v.)/fah-reh/to do</td>
<td>to do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>febbraio/feh-brah-yoh/February</td>
<td>February</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>felice (adj)/feh-lee-cheh/happy</td>
<td>happy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>festa/f/ehs-tah/party, holiday</td>
<td>party, holiday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>figlia/f/fee-lyah/daughter</td>
<td>daughter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>figlio/m/fee-lyoh/son</td>
<td>son</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fine/f/fee-neh/end</td>
<td>end</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finestra/f/fee-nehs-trah/window</td>
<td>window</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finire/fee-neh-reh/to finish</td>
<td>to finish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fiore/m/fyah-reh/flower</td>
<td>flower</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>formaggio/m/fohr-mahj-joh/cheese</td>
<td>cheese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fragola/f/frah-goh-lah/strawberry</td>
<td>strawberry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fratello/m/frah-tehl-loh/brother</td>
<td>brother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fredda/f/frehd-dah/</td>
<td>cold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frutta/f/frooh-tah/fruit</td>
<td>fruit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gatto/m/gah-toh/cat</td>
<td>cat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gelato/m/jeh-lah-toh/ice cream</td>
<td>ice cream</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gennaio/jehn-nah-yoh/January</td>
<td>January</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gente/f/jehn-teh/people</td>
<td>people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ghiaccio/m/gyahch-choh/ice</td>
<td>ice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>giacca/f/jahk-kah/jacket; blazer</td>
<td>jacket; blazer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gialla/f/giallo/m/jahl-lah/ahl-loh/yellow</td>
<td>yellow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>giardino/m/jahr-dee-noh/garden</td>
<td>garden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ginocchio/m/jee-noh-kyoh/knee</td>
<td>knee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>giocare (v.)/joh-kah-reh/to play</td>
<td>to play</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gioco/m/joh-koh/game</td>
<td>game</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>giornale/m/johr-nah-leh/newspaper</td>
<td>newspaper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>giorno/m/johr-noh/day</td>
<td>day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>giovane/f/m/joh-vah-neh/young</td>
<td>young</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>giugno/jooh-nyoh/June</td>
<td>June</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gonna/f/gohn-nah/skirt</td>
<td>skirt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grande/f/m/grahn-deh/big; tall; large</td>
<td>big; tall; large</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grande magazzino/m/grahn-deh mah-gaht-tsee-noh/department store</td>
<td>department store</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grazie/grah-tsee-eh/thank you</td>
<td>thank you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grigia/f/grigio/m/gree-jah/gree-joh/gray</td>
<td>gray</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ieri/yeh-ree/yesterday</td>
<td>yesterday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impermeabile/m/eem-pehr-meh-ah-bee-leh/raincoat</td>
<td>raincoat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
impiegata/f/impiegato/m/eem-pyeh-gah-tah/eem-pyeh-gah-toh/employee
in ritardo/een ree-tahr-doh/late
indirizzo/m/een-dee-reet-tsah/address
infermiera/f/een-ehr-myeh-rah/nurse
ingegnere/m/een-jeh-nyeh-reh/engineer
insalata/f/een-sah-lah-tah/salad
invito/m/een-vee-toh/invitation
io/ee-oh/I
italiana/f/italiano/m/ee-tah-lee-ah-nah/ee-tah-lee-noh/Italian

J

jeans/m/jeenz/jeans

L

lago/m/lah-goh/lake
lana/f/lah-nah/wool
larga/f/largo/m/lahr-gah/laehr-goh/wide
latte/m/laht-teh/milk
lavoro/m/laehr-voehr/roh/work
lei/ley/she; formal you
libro/m/lee-broh/book
loro/lohr-roh/they
luglio/looh-lyoh/July
lui/looh-ee/he

M

ma/mah/but
macchina/f/mahk-kee-nah/car
madre/f/mah-dreh/mother
maggio/mahj-joh/May
mai/mahy/never
malata/f/mahlah-tah/mahlah-toh/ill

mamma/f/mahm-mah/mom
mangiare (v.)/mahn-jah-reh/to eat
mano/f/mah-nohr/hand
mare/m/mah-reh/sea
marito/m/mah-ree-toh/husband
marrone (adj.)/mahr-roh-nah/brown
marzo/mahr-toh/sohr/March
me/meh/me
medicina/f/meh-dee-chee-nah/medicine
medico/m/meh-dee-cohr/physician
mercato/m/mehr-kaehr-toh/market
mese/m/meh-zeh/month
metropolitana/f/mehr-troh-pahr-leetah-nah/subway
mettersi/meht-tehr-see/to wear
mia/f/mio/m/mee-ah/mee-oh/my
mille/meet-leh/thousand
moglie/f/moh-lyeh/wife
montagna/f/mohn-tah-nyah/mountain

N

naso/m/nah-zoh/nose
nebbia/f/nehb-byeh/tog
negozio/m/nahr-oh-tsay-oh/shop
nera/f/nah-rah/nah-roh/black
neve/f/nah-veh/snow
noi/nuh/we
noiosa/f/noi-oh-zah/noi-oh-zoh/boring
nome/m/nah-meh/name
nord/m/nahr-drd/north
nove/nah-veh/nine
novembre/nah-vehm-bren-November
numero/m/noh-vehm-roh/number
nuoto/m/nwoh-toh/swimming
### O
- **occhio**/m/**ohk-kyoh/**eye
- **orecchio**/m/**oh-rehk-kyoh/**ear
- **ospedale**/m/**ohs-peh-dah-leh/**hospital
- **otto**/oht-toh/eight
- **ottobre**/oht-toh-breh/October
- **ovest**/m/**oh-vehst/**west

### P
- **padre**/m/**pah-dreh/**father
- **pagare**/pah-gah-reh/to pay
- **pane**/m/**pah-neh/**bread
- **panna**/f/**pahn-nah/**cream
- **pantalon**i/m.pl./**pahn-tah-nee**/pants
- **parlare** (v.)/pahr-lah-reh/to talk
- **partire** (v.)/pahr-tee-reh/to leave
- **passaporto**/m/pahs-sah-pohr-toh/passport
- **pasticceria**/f/pahs-teech-cheh-ree/**pastry shop**
- **per favore**/pehr fah-voehr-reh/please
- **perché**/pehr-keh/why; because
- **pesce**/m/**peh-sheh/**fish
- **piacere** (v.)/pyah-cheh-reh/nice to meet you; to like; pleasure
- **piazza**/f/pyah-ht-tsah/square
- **piccola**/f/piccolo/m/**peek-koh-lah/**peak-koh-lah/small; short
- **pioggia**/f/psyoh-jah/rain
- **piove**/psyoh-veh/it’s raining
- **polizia**/f/poh-lee-tsee-ah/**police**
- **potere**/poh-teh-reh/can; may
- **pranzo**/m/prahn-zoh/lunch
- **preferire** (v.)/preh-feh-reh-reh/to prefer
- **prego**/preh-goh/you’re welcome
- **prendere**/**preh-deh-reh/**to take; to order, such as in a bar or restaurant
- **presentare**/**preh-zehn-tah-reh/**to introduce

### Q
- **qualcosa**/kwahl-koh-zah/something
- **quale**/kwah-leh/which
- **quando**/kwahn-doh/when
- **quant**i/kwahn-tee/how many
- **quanto**/m/**kwahn-toh**/how much
- **quattro**/m/**kwaht-troh**/four
- **quattordici**/m/**kwaht-tohr-dee-chee**/fourteen
- **qui**/**kwee/**here
- **quindici**/kween-dee-chee/fifteen

### R
- **ragazza**/f/rah-gaht-tsah/girl
- **ragazzo**/m/**rah-gaht-choh**/boy
- **ridere** (v.)/ree-deh-reh/to laugh
- **riso**/m/rez-ohh/rice, laughter
- **rossa**/f/rohs-sah/rohs-soh/red

### S
- **saldi**/m.pl./sahl-dee/sales
- **sale**/m/**sah-leh/**salt
- **scarpa**/skahr-pah/shoe
- **scuro**/m/**skooh-rah**/skoo-rah-dark
- **sedici**/seh-dee-chee/sixteen
- **segretaria**/f/segrehtah-reh-ree-ah/secretary
- **sei**/sey/six
sempre/sehm-preh/always
sete/t/seh-teh/thirst
sette/seht-teh/seven
settembre/seht-tehm-breh/September
settimana/f/seht-tee-mah-nah/week
signora/f/see-nyoh-rah/Mrs.; Ms.; woman
signore/m/see-nyoh-reh/Mr.; a gentleman
soldi/m.pl./sohl-dee/money
sole/m/soh-leh/sun
solo/soh-loh/only, just
sorella/f/soh-reh-lah/sister
spalla/f/spahl-leh/shoulder
stanca/f/stanco/m/stahn-kah/stahn-koh/tired
stazione/f/stah-tyoh-neh/station
strada/f/strah-dah/street; road
stretta/f/stretto/m/streht-tah/streht-toh/tight; narrow
sud/soohd/south
supermercato/m/sooh-pehr-mehr-kah-toh/supermarket

tazza/f/taht-tsah/cup
teatro/m/teh-ah-troh/theater
telefono/m/teh-leh-noh-phone
tempo/m/tehm-poh/time; weather
tre/treh/three
tredici/treh-dee-chee/thirteen
treno/m/treh-noh/train
troppp/trohp-poh/too much
tu/tooh/you
tutti/tooht-tee/everybody
tutto/tooht-toh/everything

U
ufficio/m/oohf-fee-choh/office
uno/ooh-noh/one
uscita/f/ooh-shew-tah/exit
uomo/woh-moh/man

V
vacanza/f/vah-kahn-tsah/vacation
valigia/f/vah-lee-jah/suitcase
vedere/veh-deh-reh/to see
vendere/vehn-deh-reh/to sell
venire/vehn-nee-reh/to come
venti/vehn-tee/twenty
verde/f/m/vehr-deh/green
verdura/f/vehr-dooh-rah/vegetables
vestito/m/vehs-tee-toh/dress
via/f/vee-ah/street
viaggiare/vee-ahj-reh-reh/to travel
viaggio/m/vyahj-joh/travel
viale/m/vee-ah-leh/avenue
vino/m/vee-noh/wine
voi/voi/you
volere/voh-leh-reh/to want

Z
zero/dzeh-roh/zero
zia/f/dzee-ah/ant
zio/m/dzee-oh/uncle
zucchero/m/dzoohk-keh-roh/sugar
### English-Italian Mini Dictionary

#### A

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Italian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>address</td>
<td>indirizzo/m/een-dee-reet-tsoh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>airplane</td>
<td>aereo/m/ah-eh-reh-oh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>airport</td>
<td>aeroporto/m/ah-eh-roh-pohr-toh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>all right; okay</td>
<td>d’accordo/dahk-kohr-doh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>also</td>
<td>anche/ahn-keh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>always</td>
<td>sempre/sehm-preh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>American</td>
<td>americana/f/americano/m/ah-meh-ree-kah-nah/ah-meh-ree-kah-noh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aunt</td>
<td>zia/f/dzee-ah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apartment</td>
<td>appartamento/m/ahp-pahr-tah-mehn-toh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>appetizers</td>
<td>antipasti/m/ahn-tee-pahs-tee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>April</td>
<td>aprile/ah-pree-leh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>architect</td>
<td>architetto/m/ahr-kee-teht-toh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arm</td>
<td>braccio/m/brahch-choh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrive (v.)</td>
<td>arrivare/ahr-ree-vah-reh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>August</td>
<td>agosto/ah-gohs-toh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avenue</td>
<td>viale/m/vee-ah-leh</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### B

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Italian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bad</td>
<td>cattivo/m/cattiva/f/kaht-tee-voh/kaht-tee-vah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bag</td>
<td>borsa/f/bohr-sah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bakery</td>
<td>pasticceria/f/pahs-teech-cheh-ree-ah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bank</td>
<td>banca/f/bahn-kah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bathing suit</td>
<td>costume da bagno/m/kohs-tooh-meh dah bah-nyoh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be (v.)</td>
<td>essere/ehs-seh-reh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beach</td>
<td>spiaggia /f/spyahj-jah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beautiful</td>
<td>bella/f/bello/m/behl-lah/behl-loh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>because</td>
<td>perché/pehr-keh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beer</td>
<td>birra/f/beer-rah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bicycle</td>
<td>bicicletta/f/bee-chee-kleht-tah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>big; tall; large</td>
<td>grande/f/m/grahn-deh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>black</td>
<td>nera/f/nero/m/neh-rah/neh-roh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blue</td>
<td>blu/f/m/blooh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>book</td>
<td>libro/m/lee-broh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boring</td>
<td>noiosa/f/noioso/m/ni-oh-zah/ni-oh-zoh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bottle</td>
<td>bottiglia/f/boht-tee-lyah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boy</td>
<td>ragazzo/m/rah-gaht-tsoh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bread</td>
<td>pane/m/pah-neh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>breakfast</td>
<td>colazione/f/koh-lah-tsyoh-neh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brother</td>
<td>fratello/m/frah-tehl-loh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brown</td>
<td>marrone/f/m/mahr-roh-neh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bus</td>
<td>autobus/m/ou-toh-boohs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>but</td>
<td>ma/mah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy (v.)</td>
<td>comprare/kohm-prah-reh</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### C

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Italian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>can, may (v.)</td>
<td>potere/poh-teh-reh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canadian</td>
<td>canadese/f/m/kah-nah-deh-zeh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>car</td>
<td>automobile/f/ou-toh-moh-bee-leh</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
car/macchina/mahk-kee-nah
cash register/f/cassa/kahs-sah
cat/gatto/m/gah-t-toh
change (v.)/cambiare/kahm-bee-ah-reh
check/assegno/m/ahs-seh-nyoh
cheese/formaggio/m/fohr-mahj-joh
child (female)/bambina/f/bahm-beh
child (male)/bambino/m/bahm-beh-nah
chocolate/cioccolata/f/choh-koh-lah-tah
cinema/cinema/m/chee-neh-mah
city; town/città/f/cheet-tah
coat/cappotto/m/kahp-poht-toh
coffee/caffè/m/kahf-feh
cold/fredda/f/frehd-dah/
custard/crema/f/kreh-mah
dark/scura/f/scuro/m/skooh-rah/
skooh-rah
dog/cane/m/kah-neh
dress/vestito/m/vehs-tee-toh
drink (v.)/bere/beh-reh
dark/scura/f/scuro/m/skooh-rah/
dog/cane/m/kah-neh
dress/vestito/m/vehs-tee-toh
drink (v.)/bere/beh-reh

ear/orecchio/m/oh-rehk-kyoh
east/est/m/ehest
easy/facile/f/m/fah-chie-leh
et (v.)/mangiare/mahn-jah-reh
eight/otto/oht-toh
eighteen/diciotto/dee-choht-toh
eleven/undici/oohn-dee-chee
emergency/emergenza/f/eh-mehr-jehn-tsaah
employee/impiegata/f/impiegato/m/
eem-pyeh-gah-tah/eem-pyeh-gah-toh
dai/dahy
come on/venire/veh-nee-reh
country/campagna/f/kahm-pah-nyah
cream/panna/f/pah-nah
credit card/cartà di credito/f/kahr-tah
dee kreh-dee-toh
cup/tazza/f/taht-tsaah
custard/crema/crema/f/kreh-mah

dear/cara/f/caro/m/kah-rah/kah-rah
december/dicembre/dee-chehm-breh
dentist/dentista/m/dehn-tees-tah
department store/grande magazzino/m/
grahn-deh mah-gaht-tee-seh-noh
dessert (sweet)/dolce/m/doht-cheh
dinner/cena/f/cheh-nah
doctor/dottore/m/doht-toh-reh
dark/scura/f/scuro/m/skooh-rah/
dog/cane/m/kah-neh
dress/vestito/m/vehs-tee-toh
drink (v.)/bere/beh-reh
dark/scura/f/scuro/m/skooh-rah/
dog/cane/m/kah-neh
dress/vestito/m/vehs-tee-toh
drink (v.)/bere/beh-reh

dear/cara/f/caro/m/kah-rah/kah-rah
december/dicembre/dee-chehm-breh
dentist/dentista/m/dehn-tees-tah
department store/grande magazzino/m/
grahn-deh mah-gaht-tee-seh-noh
dessert (sweet)/dolce/m/doht-cheh
dinner/cena/f/cheh-nah
doctor/dottore/m/doht-toh-reh
Appendix B: Dictionaries

fog/nebbia/f/nehb-byah
four/quattro/kwaht-troh
fourteen/quattordici/kwaht-tohr-dee-chee
friend/amica/f/amico/m/ah-mee-kah/
   ah-mee-koh
fruit/frutta/f/frooht-tah

G

garden/giardino/m/jahr-dee-noh
girl/ragazza/f/rah-gaht-tsah
give (v.)/dare/dah-reh
glass/bicchiere/m/beek-kyeh-reh
go/andare/ahn-dah-reh
good/buona/f/buono/m/bwoh-nah/
   bwoh-noh
good-bye/ciao/chou
good evening/buonasera/
   bwoh-nah-seh-rah
good morning; good day/buongiorno/
   bwohn-johr-noh
good-night/buonanotte/
   bwohn-noht-teh
green/verde/f/m/vehr-deh
grey/grigia/f/grigio/m/gree-jah/gree-joh

H

hair/capelli/m/kah-pehl-lee (plural)
hand/mano/f/mah-noh
happy/felice/feh-lee-cheh
hat/cappello/m/kahp-pehl-loh
have (v.)/avere/ah-veh-reh
have, take (bar, restaurant) (v.)/
   prendere/prehn-deh-reh
have to (v.)/dovere/doh-veh-reh
he/lui/looh-ee
hello/ciao/chou
help/aiuto/ah-yooht-toh

I

I/io/ee-oh
ice/ghiaccio/m/gyahtch-choh
ice cream/gelato/m/jeh-lah-toh
ill/malata/f/malato/m/mah-lah-tah/
   mah-lah-toh
introduce (v.)/presentare/
   preh-zehn-tah-reh
invitation/invito/m/een-vee-toh
Italian/italiana/f/italiano/m/ee-tah-lee-
   ah-nah/ee-tah-lee-ah-noh

J

jacket; blazer/f/giacca/jahk-kah
January/gennaio/jehn-nah-yoh
jeans/jeans/m/jeenz
July/luglio/looh-lyoh
June/giugno/looh-nyoh

K

knee/ginocchio/m/jee-nohk-kyoh
knife/coltello/m/kohl-tehl-loh
Part V: Appendixes

L

lake/lago/m/lah-goh
large/larga/f/largo/m/lahr-gah/lahr-goh
late/in ritardo/een ree-tahr-doh
laugh (v.)/ridere/ree-deh-reh
lawyer/avvocato/m/ahv-voh-kah-toh
leave (v.)/partire/pahr-tee-reh
(on the) left/a sinistra/ah see-nees-trah
light-colored/chiara/f/chiaro/m/kyah-rah
live (v.)/abitare/ah-bee-tah-reh
love (v.)/amare/ah-mah-reh
love/amore/m/ah-moh-reh
lunch/pranzo/m/prahn-tsoh

M

man/uomo/woh-moh
March/marzo/mahr-tsoh
market/mercato/m/mehr-kah-toh
May/maggio/mahj-joh
me/me/meh
meat/carne/f/kahr-neh
medicine/medicina/f/meh-dee-chee-nah
milk/latte/m/laht-teh
mom/mamma/f/mahm-mah
money/soldi/m/sohl-dee
month/mese/m/meh-zeh
mother/madre/f/mah-dreh
mountain/montagna/f/mohn-tah-nyah
Mr./signore/m/see-nyoh-reh
Mrs./signora/f/see-nyoh-rah
my/mia/f/mio/m/mee-ah/mee-oh

N

name/nome/m/loh-meh
neck/collo/m/kohl-loh

never/mai/mahy
newspaper/giornale/m/johr-nah-leh
nice/carina/f/carino/m/kah-ree-nah/kah-ree-noh
nice to meet you/piacere/pyah-cheh-reh
nine/nove/noh-veh
nineteen/diciannove/dee-chahn-noh-veh
north/nord/m/nohrd
nose/naso/m/nah-zoh
November/novembre/loh-vehm-breh
number/numero/m/nooh-meh-reh
nurse/infermiera/f/een-fehr-uh-rah

O

October/ottobre/oht-toh-breh
office/ufficio/m/oohf-fee-choh
old (for persons)/anziana/f/anziano/m/ahn-tsee-ah-nah/ahn-tsee-ah-noh
one/uno/ooh-veh
one-way (ticket)/andata/f/ahn-dah-tah
only; just/solo/soh-loh

P

party; holiday/festa/f/fehs-tah
passport/passaporto/m/pahs-sah-pohr-toh
pay (v.)/pagare/pah-gah-reh
people/gente/f/jehn-teh
phone/telefono/m/teh-leh-foh-veh
physician/medico/m/meh-dee-koh
play (v.)/giocare/joh-kah-reh
play/gioco/m/joh-koh
please/per favore/pehr fah-veh-reh
police/polizia/f/poh-lee-see-eh
prefer (v.)/preferire/preh-veh-ree-reh
Appendix B: Dictionaries

**R**

rain/pioggia/f/pyohj-jah
raincoat/impermeabile/m/eem-pehr-meh-ah-bee-leh
red/rossa/f/rohs-soh
raincoat/impermeabile/m/eem-pehr-meh-ah-bee-leh
(on the) right/a destra/a dehs-trah
rice/riso/m/ree-zoh
round trip/andata/f/e ritorno/m/ahn-dah-tah eh ree-tohr-noh

**S**

salad/insalata/f/een-sah-lah-tah
sales/saldi/m.pl./sahl-dee
sales clerk/commessa/f/commesso/m/kohm-mehs-soh
salt/sale/m/ah-sah-leh
say (v.)/dire/dee-reh
sea/mare/m/mah-reh
secretary/secreta/f/secreta/m/seh-grehtah-reh-ah-seh-grehtah-reh-oh
see (v.)/vedere/veh-deh-reh
see you; good-bye/arrivederci/ahr-ree-ver-deh-chee
see you later/a dopo/ah doh-poh
see you tomorrow/a domani/ah doh-mah-nee
sell (v.)/vendere/vehn-deh-reh
September/settembre/seht-tehmbreth
seven/sette/seht-teh
seventeen/diciassette/deh-chahs-seht-teh
she/lei/ley
shirt/camicia/f/kah-mee-chah
shoe/scarpa/f/skahr-pah
shop/negozio/m/neh-goh-tseh-oh
shoulder/spalla/f/spahlt-lah
sister/sorella/f/soh-rehlt-lah
six/sei/sey

sixteen/sedici/seh-dee-cheh
skirt/gonna/f/gohn-nah
sleep (v.)/dormire/dohr-mee-reh
small; short/piccola/f/piccolo/m/peek-koh-lah
snow/neve/f/neh-veh
soccer/calcio/m/kahl-choh
something/qualcosa/kwahl-koh-zah
son/figlio/m/fee-lyoh
south/sud/m/soohd
square/piazza/f/pyaht-tsah
station/stazione/f/stah-tsee-oh-neh
strawberry/fragola/f/frah-goh-lah
street; road/strada/f/strah-dah or via/f/vee-ah
subway/metropolitana/f/meh-troh-poh-lee-tah-nah
sugar/zucchero/m/dzook-keh-roh
suit/abito/m/ah-bee-toh
suitcase/valigia/f/vah-lee-jah
supermarket/supermercato/m/sooh-pehr-mehr-koh-toh
tsweet/dolce/f/dohl-cheh
swimming/nuoto/m/nwoh-toh

**T**

take (v.)/prendere/prehn-deh-reh
talk (v.)/parlare/pahr-lah-reh
tax/dazio/m/dah-tsee-oh
telephone/telefeno/m/teh-loh-noh
ten/dieci/dyeht-cheh
thank you/grazie/grah-tsee-eh
theater/teatro/m/teh-oh-troh
there are/ci sono/chee soh-noh
there is/c'è/cheh
they/loro/lohr-noh
thirst/sete/f/seh-teh
thirteen/tredici/treh-dee-cheh
thousand/mille/meel-leh
three/tre/treh
ticket/biglietto/m/bee-lyeh-toh
tie/cravatta/l/krah-vaht-tah
tight; narrow/stretta/l/stretto/m/streht-tah/streht-toh
time; weather/tempo/m/tehm-poh
tired/stanca/l/stanco/m/stahn-kah/stahn-koh
today/oggi/oh-jee
tomorrow/domani/doh-mah-nee
too much/troppitorehpoh
train/treno/m/treh-noh
travel (v.)/viaggiare/veeh-ahj-reh
travel/viaggio/m/veeh-ahj-joh
trousers/pantaloni/m/pahn-tah-loh-nee
twelve/dodici/doh-dee-chee
twenty/venti/vehn-tee
two/due/dooh-eh

U

uncle/zio/m/dze-oh

V

vacation/vacanza/l/vah-kahn-tsaah
vegetables/verdura/l/vehr-doo-rah

W

waitress/waiter/cameriera/l/
cameriere/m/kah-meh-ryeh-rah/kah-meh-ryeh-reh
wallet/portafoglio/pohr-tah-foh-lyoh
want (v.)/volere/voh-leh-reh
warm/calda/l/caldo/m/kahl-dah/kahl-doh

water/acqua/l/ahl-kwah
we/noi/noi
wear (v.)/mettersi/meht-tehr-see
week/settimana/l/seht-tee-mah-nah
well (adverb)/bene/beh-neh
west/ovest/m/oh-vehst
what/cosa/koh-sah
when/quando/kwahn-doh
where/dove/doh-veh
which/quaie/l/m/kwah-leh
white/bianca/l/bianco/m/byahn-kah/byahn-koh
who/chi/kee
why/perché/pehr-keh
wife/moglie/l/moh-lyeh
window/fenestra/l/fee-nehs-trah
wine/vino/m/veeh-noh
woman/donna/l/dohn-nah
wool/lana/l/lah-nah
work/lavoro/m/lah-voh-roh

Y

year/anno/m/ahn-noh
yellow/gialla/l/giallo/m/jahl-lah/jahl-loh
yesterday/ieri/yeh-ree
you (formal)/Lei/ley
you (plural, informal/formal)/voi/voi
you (singular, informal)/tu/tooh
you’re welcome/prego/preh-goh
young/giovane/l/m/joh-vah-neh

Z

zero/zero/dzeh-roh
zip code/codice postale/m/koh-dee-cheh/pohs-tah-leh
Appendix C

About the CD

Track Listing

Following is a list of the tracks that appear on this book’s audio CD, which you can find inside the back cover. Note that this is an audio-only CD — just pop it into your stereo (or whatever you use to listing to regular music CDs).

Track 1: Introduction and pronunciation guide
Track 2: Common phrases
Track 3: Asking directions
Track 4: Making informal small talk
Track 5: Having an informal conversation
Track 6: Talking with friends
Track 7: Talking about the weather
Track 8: Days of the week
Track 9: Months of the year
Track 10: Following a recipe
Track 11: Finding a place to meet
Track 12: Getting back to the train station
Track 13: Making dinner reservations
Track 14: Let’s Eat! (Si mangia!)
Track 15: Enjoying some after-dinner ice cream
Track 16: Shopping for clothes
Track 17: Shopping for shoes
Track 18: Going to the movies
Track 19: Inviting friends to a party
Track 20: Talking on the phone to a friend
Track 21: Making a doctor’s appointment
Track 22: Leaving a message
Track 23: Talking about the weekend
Track 24: Talking about sports
Track 25: Discussing free-time activities
Track 26: Planning a vacation
Track 27: Talking about a plane schedule
Track 28: Changing dollars to euros
Track 29: Making train connections
Track 30: Purchasing train tickets
Track 31: Taking the subway
Track 32: Checking in to a hotel
Track 33: Common Italian when planning a trip
Track 34: Visiting a doctor
Track 35: Reporting an accident to the police
Track 36: Using interrogative pronouns

Customer Care

If you have trouble with the CD, please call Wiley Product Technical Support at 877-762-2974. Outside the United States, call 317-572-3993. You can also contact Wiley Product Technical Support at support.wiley.com. Wiley Publishing will provide technical support only for installation and other general quality control items.

To place additional orders or to request information about other Wiley products, please call 877-762-2974.
Appendix D
Answer Keys

The following are the answers to the Fun & Games activities.

Chapter 2: Jumping Into the Basics of Italian

albergo  facile
amica  fame
avere  fare
bici  italiano
caldo  partire
capire  pausa
dire  ragazza
dove  rosso
dovere  sete
esame  volere
essere  zio
Chapter 3: Buongiorno! Salutations!

come sta

e lei

le presento

Chapter 4: Getting Your Numbers and Time Straight

Chapter 5: Casa dolce casa (Home Sweet Home)

1. il bagno (the bathroom)
2. la camera da letto (the bedroom)
3. il letto (the bed)
4. il soggiorno (the living room)
5. il divano (the couch)
6. la cucina (the kitchen)
7. i fornelli (the stove-top)
8. la tavola (the table)
Chapter 6: Where Is the Colosseum? Asking Directions

1. Via della Vigna Nuova
2. Ponte Santa Trinità and Ponte Vecchio
3. Arno
4. Palazzo Vecchio
5. Piazza Duomo and Piazza San Giovanni
6. Lungarno
7. Piazza della Repubblica

Chapter 7: Food Glorious Food – and Don't Forget the Drink

1. ananas
2. ciliegia
3. uva
4. pera
5. cocomero
6. fragola

Chapter 8: Shopping, Italian Style

1. cappello
2. camicia
3. cravatta
4. completo
5. pantaloni
6. scarpe
7. gonna
8. camicetta

Chapter 9: Having Fun Out on the Town

1. festa
2. invitato
3. sabato
4. ora
5. verso
6. dove
7. perché
8. aspetto

Chapter 10: Taking Care of Business and Telecommunicating

1. pronto
2. parlo
3. amico
4. C’è
5. appena
6. lasciare un messaggio
7. prego
8. chiamato

Chapter 11: Recreation and the Outdoors

cavallo, fiore, uccello, gatto, lupo, quercia, pino, mucca, pecora, albero

Chapter 12: Planning a Trip

1. b
2. a
3. b
4. c
5. a
Chapter 13: Money, Money, Money

Banca  Dollaro
Bancomat  Euro
Cambiare  Kuna
Cartadicredito  Ricevuta
Cassa  Spiccioli
Contanti  Sportello
Documento  Sterline

Bank  identification  small change
ATM  dollar  door
to change  euro  counter
credit card  Croatian currency  British pound
cash  receipt
Chapter 14: Getting Around: Planes, Trains, Taxis, and Buses

traeno, fermata, stazione, binario, biglietto, andata, ritorno, supplemento

Chapter 15: Finding a Place to Stay

valige, cameriere, culla, camera, matrimoniale, letto, piscine, stanza, albergo, prenotazione, pensione, chiave, bagaglio, bagno
Chapter 16: Handling Emergencies

Chapter 17: Small Talk, Wrapping Things Up

1. mia madre e mio padre
2. mio fratello
3. i miei nipoti
4. mia nonna
5. mia zia
6. mio cognato
7. mia nuora
8. mia figlia
9. i miei cugini
10. mia suocera
Index

• Symbols and Numerics •

24-hour clock, 71

• A •

a che ora (what time), 153
a che piano è (what floor is it on), 90
a destra (on the right), 106, 117
a domani (see you tomorrow), 46, 179
a dopo (see you later), 46
a presto (see you soon), 46
a proposito (by the way), 80
a sinistra (on the left), 106, 117
abbastanza (enough), 300
abbigliamento da donna/da uomo
(women’s/men’s wear), 140
abito (suit), 142
accanto (next to), 95
accessori (accessories), 140, 147
accessorizing clothes, 147
accettare (to accept), 226
accettazione (check-in), 234
accidenti (wow, darn it), 12
accidenti, reporting to police, 280–281
acciughe fresche (fresh anchovies), 133
accommodations
checking in, 259–262
choosing, 255
Fun & Games, 269
imperatives, 267–268
pronouns, 262–266
reserving rooms, 256–258
Talkin’ the Talk, 255, 257–258, 260–261, 265–266
acqua frizzante (sparkling water), 121
acqua gassata/gasata (sparkling water), 121
acqua in bocca (water in mouth), 328
acqua liscia/naturale (still water), 121
acqua minerale (mineral water), 121
addormentarsi (to fall asleep), 336
adjectives
demonstrative, 263
possessive, 300–304
relationship with gender, 25–26
aeroporto (airport), 11, 117, 231
affidabile (dependable), 189
affittare (to rent), 88
agenzia di viaggi (travel agency), 213, 246
agenzia immobiliare (real estate agency), 87
agnello (lamb), 132
agriturismo (farm stay), 215, 255
airports
checking in, 234–236
excess baggage, 236
after landing, 238–239
waiting to board, 237
aiutami (help me), 271
aiuto (help), 271, 276
al bar (in the bar), 151
al forno (baked), 133
al macellaio (at the butcher’s), 132
albergo/i (hotel/hotels), 40, 255
albero (tree), 14, 192
alla dogana (at customs), 240
alla griglia (grilled), 133
alla stazione (at the station), 246
all’angolo (at the corner), 106
all’incrociò (at the intersection), 106
alphabet, 13
alta (tall), 283
alta stagione (high/peak season), 209, 256
alzarsi (to get up), 336
ambulanza (ambulance), 276, 281
amica/amiches (girl-friend/s), 26
amico/i (male friends or mixed gender friends), 26
ammobiliata (furnished), 87
amore (love), 10
anch’lo (I also, me too), 40
andare (to go), 32, 33, 109, 183, 197, 198, 336
andata (one way, spoken), 249
andate (go), 110
andiamo (let’s go), 12
angolo cottura (cooking area), 88
anni (years), 80
annoiarsi (to be bored), 195
annuncio (advertisement), 87, 189
Answer Key for Fun & Games, 361–367
antipasto (appetizers), 127
aperitivo (before-dinner drink), 122
aperto (open), 140
apparecchiare (to set the table), 97
appartamento (apartment), 87
appliances, 95
apra (finish), 267
apriamo (let’s open), 267
aprire (to open), 29, 267, 335
aprire un conto (to open an account), 221
arancione (orange), 145
Arena, 159
aria condizionata (air conditioning), 87, 245, 258
armadio (armoire), 94
arrivare (to arrive), 216
arrivederci (good bye), 44, 319
arrivò/i (arrival/arrivals), 240, 252
articles
  definite, 24–25, 144
  indefinite, 23–24, 144
ascensore (elevator), 88, 140
ascollare (to listen), 183, 205
ascollare la musica (listen to music), 203
asiugamano/gli, asciumagmani (towel/s), 94
asking simple questions, 295
aspettare (to wait), 253
aspirapolvere (vacuum cleaner), 95
assicurazione (insurance), 288
assistente (assistant), 189
attenda in linea (please hold), 182
attenzione (attention), 11
attore (actor), 156
attraversa/attraversi/attraversate/attraversino (cross), 110
auto (car), 15
autobus (bus), 113, 249
autunno (autumn, fall), 73
avanti (come in), 10
avere (to have)
  about, 30, 273
  idiomatic uses of, 32–35
  passato prossimo with, 183
  past participles using, 184
avere bisogno di (to need), 141
avere mal di (to have a __ache), 276
avete (do you (plural) have), 261
azienda (company), 186
azzurri (blue), 284
azzurro (sky blue), 145
Babbo (dad, daddy), 311
baffi (moustache), 284
bagaglio (baggage, carry-on luggage), 236, 266
bagno (bathroom), 88, 94, 300
balcone (balcony), 88
ballare (to dance), 170
bambino/a (child), 10
banca (bank), 224
bancomat (ATM), 225, 226, 228
barba (beard), 284
barista (waiter), 120
bassa (short), 283
batteria (drums), 205
beach, 217
bed and breakfasts (bed and breakfasts), 255
beige (beige), 145
bello (beautiful), 19
bene (well), 15
benzina super (premium fuel), 245
benzina verde (unleaded fuel), 245
bere (to drink), 14, 170, 337
berretto (cap), 147
biancheria per la casa (household linens and towels), 140
bianco (white), 145
bicchiere/i (glass/glasses), 97
bidet (bidet), 94
Biennale di Venezia, 160
biglietto (ticket), 153, 249
bilocali (two-room apartments), 87
bimbo (little boy), 14
binario (platform, track), 246, 249, 252
biondi (blond), 283
birra (beer), 123
bistecca (steak), 132
blu (blue), 145
boarding planes, 237
bocca carnosa (plump mouth), 284
bocca larga (wide mouth), 284
bocca stretta (thin lips), 284
bocce (lawn bowling), 199
body language, 46
boh (How should I know), 324
booking trips, 213–215
borsa (bag, handbag), 147, 283
bosco (woods), 192
bottiglia (bottle), 123
boutiques, 139–142
branzino (sea bass), 133
bravo/a (bravo), 10
breakfast, 126–127
bucatini (thick, tube-like spaghetti), 128
bunoa giornata (have a good day), 44
bunoa serata (have a good evening), 44
buon viaggio (have a nice trip), 209
buona fortuna (good luck), 163
buonanotte (good-night), 44
buonasera (good afternoon, good evening), 44
buone vacanze (have a nice vacation), 209
buongiorno (hello, good morning), 43, 44, 319
buono (good), 26
buses, 249–251
business and telecommuting
asking for people, 179–182
discussing your job, 186–189
Fun & Games, 190
getting messages, 179–182
making arrangements over phones, 178–179
past tense, 182–186
phones, 173–178
Talkin’ the Talk, 175, 176–177, 178–179, 180, 181, 184–185, 188
buste (envelopes), 218

• C •
cabriolet (convertible), 245
caffè (coffee), 19, 120, 126
catio (hello, goodbye), 16
cala mobile (escalator), 140
calamari (squid), 133
calcio (soccer), 191, 198
calendar, 68–72
calle (narrow Venetian street), 107
calle (narrow Venetian street), 107
calvo (bald), 284
calze (stockings), 147
cambiare (to change/exchange), 226, 231
cambiare valuta (to change money), 221
cambio (money exchange), 240
camera (room), 101, 256, 258
camera da letto (bedroom), 88, 94
camera doppia (room with two twin beds), 258
camera matrimoniale (room with a double bed), 258
camera singola (single room), 258
camere da letto (bedrooms), 87
cameriera (chambermaid, waitress), 266
cameriere (waiter), 120, 125
camicetta (blouse), 142
camicia (shirt), 142
camoscio (suede), 146
campagna (countryside), 87, 193, 209, 212
cane (dog), 194
cantantore (singer-songwriter), 162
cantina (cellar), 88
canzone (song), 316
capello (hair), 18
capire (to understand), 29, 30, 343
capo (head, boss), 309
cappello (hat), 18, 147
cappotto (coat), 142
capra (goat), 194
car rentals, 243–245
car trouble, 285–286
carne (meat), 127
caro (expensive), 90
Caro diario (film), 153
carro attrezzi (tow truck), 286
carta di credito (credit card), 223, 225
carta d’identità (identity card), 239
carta igienica (toilet paper), 132, 297
carta/scheda (phone card), 178
cartoline (postcards), 218
casa (house), 12, 14, 16, 26
casalinghi (housewares), 140
casco (helmet), 40
cassa (cash register), 140
cassaforte (safe), 259
castani (brown), 283
cattivo (bad), 26
cavallo (horse), 194
CD track listing, 359–360
c’è (there is), 296
cè l’ascensore (Is there an elevator), 90
cellulare (cellphones), 174, 178
cena (dinner), 16, 119, 129
centesmi (cents), 229
centimetro (centimeter), 78
centi commerciali (shopping malls), 139
centro (downtown, city center), 109
certo (certainty, of course), 16, 228
changing money, 224–226
che (what), 294
che bello (how beautiful), 323
che c’è (what’s up), 12
che domanda (what a question), 228
che è successo (what happened), 281
che macello (what a mess), 325
che ne so (how should I know), 324
che ora è (what time is it), 70
che ors sono (what time is it), 70
checking in
to accommodations, 259–262
for flights, 234–236
chi (who), 294
chi è il regista (who is the director), 156
chi sono gli attori (who’s starring), 156
chiacchierare (to chat), 182
chiamare (to call), 182
chiamarsi (to call oneself), 47
chiamata/e (call), 182, 276
chiarì (fair), 284
chiave (key), 16
chiesa (church), 16, 18, 117
chilogrammo (kilogram), 78
chilo/i (kilo/s), 78, 80, 135
chilometro (kilometer), 78
chirugo (surgeon), 277
chitarra (guitar), 205
chiudere (to close), 334
chiuso (closed), 140
ci sono (there are), 296
ci vediamo (see you), 46
ciao (hello, goodbye), 10, 40, 44, 319
cibo (food), 16
ciclismo (cycling), 198
cinema (cinema), 14, 117, 154
cinema, going to, 154–156
cinquanta centesimi (50 cents), 78
cintura (belt), 147
cioccolata (chocolate), 16, 126
cioccolata calda (hot cocoa), 121
circa (about), 237
città (city), 19
ciuccio (baby’s pacifier), 16
clarinetto (clarinet), 205
classica (classical), 203
cleaning, 99–100
cognates, 11
colazione (breakfast), 258
collant (tights/pantyhose), 147
colloquio (interview), 189
color, 145
colori (colors), 145
Colosseo (Colosseum), 318
colpa (guilt), 16
coltello/i (knife/knives), 97
come (how), 294
come, scusi/a (I beg your pardon), 112
come al solito (as usual), 77
come ti trovi (how do you like), 300
cominciare (to start), 153
commessa/commesso (sales clerk), 141
comunicazione (communication), 11
comò (dresser), 94
comodino (nightstand), 94
compagnia (company), 186, 307
compleanno (birthday), 80
completo (outfit), 142
concert, going to, 162–164
concerto (concert), 163
condominio (condominium building), 87
coniglio (rabbit), 132
cono (cone), 131
consegna bagagli (baggage claim), 240
consigliare (to recommend), 300
costanti (cash), 226, 228
conto (bill), 125
conto corrente (checking account), 223
contorni (side dishes), 127
controlli l’olio (check the oil), 245
controllo passaporti (passport control), 239
corrections, explained, 1–2
cooking, 98–99
coppetta (cup), 131
coprire (to cover), 335
correira (bus), 249
corsia di emergenza (emergency lane), 286
corta/e/o/i (short), 148, 284
cosa (what), 294
cosa le fa male (what hurts you), 275
costa di più (it costs more), 90
costa meno (it costs less), 90
costa poco (it costs little), 90
costruire (to build), 344
costume da bagno (bathing suit), 142
cotone (cotton), 146
counting, 63–66
countries, 56–58
cozze (mussels), 133
cravatta (tie), 147
credenza (credenza), 94
credit cards, 226–228
crema (custard), 126
crema solare (sun protection lotion), 296
crepi il lupo (may the wolf die), 327
cucchiaio/chucchiai (spoon/s), 97
cucina (kitchen), 88, 93–94
cucinare (to cook), 98, 333
culla (crib), 258
cuocere (to cook), 345
cuore (heart), 16
currencies, 228–231
cuscini (pillows), 94
customer care, 360
customs, 240–241

diaciavvento (to enter), 228
dining out
about, 123–124
making reservations, 124–125
paying for meals, 125–126
sales slips, 126
dinner, 129–132
dire (to say, tell), 32, 33, 337
directions, asking for
Fun and Games, 118
locations, 113–117
specific places, 103–109
verbs, 109–113
direttore (manager, director), 309, 311
disegnare (to draw), 333
distance, 78
ditta (company), 186, 300, 307
diva (diva), 15
divane (couch), 93
divertente (fun), 153
divertirsi (to enoy oneself, to have a good time), 195, 305, 336
doccia (shower), 88, 94
doctors, talking to, 272–277
documento (identification), 174
dodici (twelve), 64
dogana (customs), 243
dolce/i (sweet/s), 14, 127, 134
dollaro/dollar (dollar/dollars), 230
domanda (question), 40
domanda d’assunzione (job application), 189
domani (tomorrow), 14, 67, 125, 231
dopo (after), 106
dopodomani (day after tomorrow), 67


**E**

e chi se ne importa (who cares), 12, 20
È lo stesso (It’s all the same, It doesn’t matter), 12
È rotto (It’s broken), 189
eating, 119
cchi (here you go, here it is), 32
ccome (very), 329
cconomico (cheap), 90
celenco telefonico (phone book), 176
elettrodomici (household appliances), 95

emergenza (emergency), 281
English words, in Italian language, 9–10
entrata (entrance), 140, 240
esame (exam), 26
esaurito (sold out), 163
espresso, 120–121
esse (to be)
about, 30, 295, 335
passato prossimo with, 183, 185
past participles using, 186
est (east), 105
estate (summer), 73, 121
estratto conto (bank statement), 223
etto (100 grams), 135
ettogrammo (hectogram), 78
euro, 228–229, 230
Euro City (EC) trains, 246
Euro Star train, 246
excess baggage, 236
expressions, favorite, 323–325

**F**

fabbrica (factory), 309, 311
faccia il pieno (fill it up), 245
“false friends”, 320, 321
famiglia (family), 19
fantastico (fantastic), 12
fare (to do, to make), 15, 32, 33, 198, 338
fare benzina (to put in gas), 245
fare male (to hurt), 273, 276
farmacia (pharmacy), 277
fazzoletto di carta (tissue), 260
febbre (fever), 276
ferito (injured person), 281
fermare (to stop), 286
fermata (bus stop), 113
festa (party), 164, 170

Festival dei due mondi, 162
festivals, going to, 161–162
fettuccine (narrow, flat noodles), 128
fine settimana (weekends), 191
finestra (window), 88
finiamo (let’s finish), 267
finire (to end), 153, 267, 344
finisca/i/ite (finish), 267
fino a (to, up to), 106
fiore (flower), 192
fiume (river), 193, 212
flauto (flute), 205
fodera (lining), 146
fon (blow dryer), 259
food
breakfast, 126–127
dining out, 123–126
dinner, 129–132
drinking, 119–123
eating, 119
faux pas, 321
Fun & Games, 137
lunch, 127–129
ordering in Italian, 316
shopping for, 132–136
Talkin’ the Talk, 122, 123, 124–125,
126–127, 130, 131–132, 134–135
food labels, reading, 315
forchetta/e (fork/s), 97
formal, compared with friendly, 45
Formula 1 (Formula One car racing), 198
fornelli (stove-top), 95
forno (oven), 95
fotocopia (photocopy), 187
fotocopiatrice (photocopier), 187
francese (French), 25
francobolli (stamps), 218
frappé (fruit milk shake, frozen
fruit shake), 132
friendly, compared with formal, 45
frigorifero (refrigerator), 93, 95, 259
frullati (mixed fruit juice), 132
frullatore (blender), 95
frutta (fruit), 15
frutta fresca (fresh fruit), 127
frutti di mare (shell fish), 133
Fun & Games
accommodations, 269
Answer Key, 361–367
basics, 41
business and telecommuting, 190
clothes shopping, 150
directions, asking for, 118
directions, asking for, 118
emergencies, 291
food, 137
home, 102
money, 232
nightlife, 171
numbers and time, 81
recreation and the outdoors, 206
salutations, 61
small talk, 312
transportation, 254
trip planning, 219
funghi porcini (porcini mushrooms), 78
funzionare (to work, function), 228
fuori (outside), 95, 106
furnishings, 92–95
furto (theft), 283
fusili (spiral-shaped pasta), 128
future tense, 37
futuro semplice (simple future), 217–218

• G •
gallina (chicken), 194
gallo (rooster), 194
gamba (leg), 17
gamberetti (small shrimp), 133
gamberi (prawns), 133
garage (garage, car park), 88, 266
gatto (cat), 194
gelateria (ice cream shop), 131
gelato (ice-cream), 40, 131
gelato artigianale (homemade
ice cream), 131
gelosia (jealousy), 17, 18
gemello/a (twin), 300
gendered words, 22–26
gentile (kind), 17
gestures, 20
ghiaccio (ice), 17, 121
ghirlanda (wreath), 17
giacca (jacket), 17, 142
giallo (yellow), 145
giocare (to play), 29, 197, 198, 205, 321, 333
gioco (game), 17
giornale (newspaper), 316
giorni feriali (weekdays), 252
giorni festivi (Sundays and holidays), 252
giorno (day), 17, 80
gira/giri/girate/girino (turn), 110
girare (to endorse), 223
girare a destra/a sinistra (to run right/left), 109
gita (tour), 212
gita organizzata (organized tour), 211
giudice (judge), 17
gli (the), 19
gli inquilini (tenants), 88
gomma (rubber), 17
gomma a terra (flat tire), 286
gonfio/a/o (swollen), 276
gonna (skirt), 142
good-byes, common, 43–46
gradi (degrees), 77
grammo/i (gram, grams), 78
grande (big), 25, 142
grandi magazzini (department stores), 139
grassa (fat), 283
greetings
common, 43–46
replying to, 45–46
grembiule (apron), 93
grigi/io (gray), 145, 284
guanti (gloves), 147
Guardia di Finanza (Financial Guard), 126

- guerra (war), 17
guida (guide), 212
gusto (flavor), 131

- H -
ho bisogno di (I need), 141
ho fame (I’m hungry), 20
home
appliances, 95–98
cooking and cleaning, 98–99
directions to, 85–86
finding apartments, 87–91
Fun and Games, 102
furnishing apartments, 92–95
household chores, 100–101
Talkin’ the Talk, 89, 90–91, 92, 96–97, 98–99, 100
types, 87

- I -
i mobili (furniture), 93
i padroni di casa (landlords), 88
i palchi (box seats), 156
i pensili (cabinets), 94
icons, explained, 4–5
ieri (yesterday), 67
il bagno (bar/beach/club/restaurant), 217
il (il piatto) fondo (bowl for soup or pasta), 97
il mio (mine), 264
il mio babbo/il mio papa (my dad), 310
Il Museo della Scienza e della Tecnica, 160
il (il piatto) piano (flat dish), 97
il più presto possibile (as soon as possible), 286
il secondo (second course), 127
imbarco (boarding), 236
imparare (to learn), 333
imperatives, 267–268
impermeabile (raincoat), 142
imporre (to impose), 339
importante (important), 11
in bocca al lupo (in the wolf’s mouth), 327
in orario (on time), 237
in padella (in the skillet), 133
in piazza (on the public square), 151
in ritardo (late, delayed), 237
in treno (by train), 215
incidente (accident), 281
incidente stradale (traffic accident), 288
incredibile (incredible), 11
indefinite articles

relationship with gender, 23–24
when clothes shopping, 144
indirizzo (address), 261
infermiera (female nurse), 277
infermiere (male nurse), 277
informazione (information), 182
infusi (herbal tea), 121
innamorarsi (to fall in love), 336
insegnante (teacher), 40, 311
insieme (together), 163
Inter City (IC) trains, 246
interferire (to interfere), 344
Internet, 174–175, 318
interprete (interpreter), 272
interrogative pronouns, 293–300
intimo donna (ladies’ intimate apparel), 140
intimo uomo (men’s intimate apparel), 140
introductions, making, 47–52
inverno (winter), 73
investire (to invest), 222
invitare (to invite), 164
invito (invitation), 164, 170
io (I), 27
irregular past participles, 345
irregular verbs, 30, 32, 336–343
Italia (Italy), 318
Italian films, 153, 316
Italian language tapes, listening to, 317
Italian publications, reading, 316
Italian radio, 317
Italian Verbs For Dummies (Picarazzi), 345
Italian words, in English language, 10–11
Italianfoodnet.com, 318
italiano (Italian), 25

• J •
jeans (jeans), 142

• L •
La dolce vita (film), 153
La festa di l’Unita, 161
La sagra del cenfimiale (the wild board festival), 161
La sagra del pesce azzurro (the Blue Fish Fair), 161
La Scala, 159
la spiaggia (to the sea), 209
La strada (film), 153
La vita è bella (film), 153
Ladri di biciclette (film), 153
ladro (thief), 15
lago (lake), 193, 212
lampada (lamp), 94
lana (wool), 146
larga/ghe/go/ghi (loose), 148
largo (wide square), 107
lascia perdere (let it go, forget about it), 329
lastre (x-rays), 276
latte (milk), 132
lavandino (sink), 94
lavare i pavimenti (to wash the floors), 101
lavarsi (to brush, to wash oneself), 196, 336
lavastoviglie (dishwasher), 94, 95
lavatrice (washing machine), 95
lavello (sink), 94
lavero (job), 187
lavorare (to work), 307, 333
lavoro (work), 189, 311
lawyers, 287–288
leggere (to read), 334, 345
lei (she, you), 15, 27, 28, 45
length, 78
lentamente (slowly), 113
lenti a contatto (contact lenses), 281
lenzuolo/lenzuola (sheet/sheets), 94
Leonardo da Vinci airport, 215
lettere (letters), 218
letters, sending, 218
lettino (cot, lounge chair), 217, 260
letto (bed), 94
letto supplementare (extra bed), 258
librero professionista (self-employed), 187
libretto (registration), 288
libretto degli assegni (checkbook), 223
libro (book), 26
lino (linen), 146
lira/e (pound/pounds), 230
lisci (straight), 284
listening to Italian language tapes, 317
literal, being, 320
litro (liter), 78
lo sci alpino (downhill ski racing), 198
lo yogurt (frozen yogurt), 132
loggione (gallery), 156
loro (they), 27
lost luggage, 241–243
luggage, lost, 241–243
lui (he), 27
luna (moon), 15
lunch, 127–129
lunedì (Monday), 19
lunghi (long), 284
lupo (wolf), 194

macché (of course not, certainly not), 328
macchina (car, machine), 113, 189, 286, 288
macedonia (fruit salad), 127
madre (mother), 15
magari (if only, I’d love it), 324
maglia (sweater), 142
maglietta (T-shirt), 142
magra (thin), 283
maiale (pig, pork), 132, 194
Malpensa airport, 215
mamma mia (my goodness), 323
mandare (to send), 267
mandiamo (let’s send), 267
mandi/manda/mandate (send), 267
mangiare (to eat), 29, 333
mansarda (attic), 88
manzo (beef), 132
maps, public transportation, 251–252
marciapiede (sidewalk), 107
mare (sea), 193, 212
marmellata (jam), 14, 126
marrone/i (brown), 145, 285
me ne vado (I’m leaving), 20
meccanico (mechanic), 286
medicina (medicine), 277
medico (doctor), 272, 277, 311
merenda (snack-time), 119
meriuzzo (cod), 133
mese (month), 80
messaggino (text message), 174, 178, 189
messaggio (message), 266
messo litro (half liter), 78
metric system, 77–80
metro (meter), 78
mettere (to put), 334, 345
mettere in ordine (to straighten up), 101
mettersi (to put on/to wear), 196, 336
mettete in ordine le vostre camere  
(clean up your rooms), 267
mezza pensione (half board), 255, 258
mezz’etto (50 grams), 135
mezzo (half), 135
mezzo chile (half a kilo), 135
mi (me), 275
mi aiuti, per favore (help me, please), 271
mi gira la testa (I’m dizzy), 276
mi piacciono (I like [something plural]), 40
mi place (I like [something singular]), 40
mi può aiutare, per favore (can you help me, please), 141
mi raccomando (please, I beg you), 325
mi scusa, non ho capito (I’m sorry, I didn’t understand), 112
mi scusi/ino (excuse me), 103
mi sento male (I feel sick), 274
mi sento svenire (I’m about to faint), 276
mi sono persa (I’m lost), 40
mia mamma (my mom), 310
mia sorella (my sister), 301
microonde (microwave oven), 95
mila (one thousand), 64
mille grazie (thank you very much), 112
milligrammo (milligram), 78
millilitro (milliliter), 78
millimetro (millimeter), 78
minuto (minute), 113
misura (size), 148
mite (mild), 77
moda (fashion), 139
modulo (form), 243
money
banks, 221–223
changing, 224–226
credit cards, 226–228
currencies, 228–231
Fun & Games, 232
monolocali (studio apartments), 87
montagna (mountain), 193, 209, 212
morire (to die), 338, 345
moto GP (motorcycle racing), 198
motorino (moped), 283
movies, going to, 154–156
mucca (cow), 194
multisala (multiplex), 155
muscolo (muscle), 276
Musaei Vaticani, 160
museo (museum), 163
museums, going to, 160–161
musica (music), 163
musicisti (musicians), 162

• N •
nascere (to be born), 345
naso corto (short nose), 284
naso lungo (long nose), 284
nationalities, 56–57
nazione (nation), 18
neanche per sogno (no way), 328
nebbia (fog), 77
negozi di regali (gift shop), 260
neorealismo (neorealism), 316
neri/o (black, dark), 145, 284
niente (nothing), 243
nightlife
culture, 151–152
Fun & Games, 171
going to a concert, 162–164
-going to a local festival, 161–162
going to a museum, 160–161
going to the movies, 154–155
going to the theater, 156–159
Italian films, 153
suggesting activities, 164–171
no (no), 15
noi (we), 15, 27
non capisco (I don’t understand), 297
non c’èi di che (You’re welcome), 12
non è caro (it’s not expensive), 90
non fa niente (Don’t worry about it, It doesn’t matter), 12
non lo so (I don’t know), 297, 300
non mi sento bene (I don’t feel well), 274
non mi va (I don’t feel like it), 325
non te la prendere (Don’t get so upset), 324
nonno (grandfather), 18
nono (ninth), 18
nord (north), 105
nouns, relationship with gender, 22–23
numbers and time
calendar, 68–72
days of the week, 66–68
making dates, 68–72
metric system, 77–80
numbers, 63–66
ordinals, 85–87
times of day, 66–68, 70–72
weather, 72–77
numeri ordinali (ordinal numbers), 85
numero (number), 80, 113, 148
numero di telefono (telephone number), 176

• O •
occhio (eye), 19
office equipment, 187
oggi (today), 67
ognuno (each person), 101
ombrello (umbrella), 147
ombrellone (beach umbrella), 217
ondulati (wavy), 284
oppressi (to oppose), 339
orario (timetable), 252
orario di apertura (business hours), 140
orata (sea bream), 133
ordering food in Italian, 316
organization of this book, 3–4
ospedale (hospital), 117, 272, 276
otto (eight), 63
outdoors and recreation
Fun & Games, 206
hobbies and interests, 200–205
reflexive verbs, 195–196
sports, 196–200
taking tours, 191–194
Talkin’ the Talk, 193–194, 196, 199–200, 202, 203, 204
ovest (west), 106

• P •
-padre (father), 15
padrone (boss, owner), 309
pagare (to pay), 243
pagare (to speak), 27, 29, 333
parlare (to leave), 27, 29, 216, 305, 334
partita (game), 300
passaporto (passport), 215, 236, 239
passare la scopa (to sweep), 101
passare l’aspirapolvere (to vaccum), 101

parla/i inglese (do you speak English), 53
parla/i italiano (do you speak Italian), 53
parlare (to speak), 27, 29, 333
parlo un po’ (I speak a little bit), 53
parrucchiere (hairdresser), 260
partenza/e (departure/s), 240, 252
partire (to leave), 27, 29, 216, 305, 334
partita (game), 300
passaporto (passport), 215, 236, 239
passare la scopa (to sweep), 101
passare l’aspirapolvere (to vaccum), 101
prenotazione (reservation), 125
preservativi (condoms), 320
presto (early, soon), 298, 300
prezzo (price), 140
prima (before), 106
prima colazione (breakfast), 119, 126
primavera (spring), 73
primo piatto (first course), 127
profumeria (perfumery), 140, 278
pronouns
demonstrative adjectives and, 263
formal and informal 'you', 27–28
interrogative, 293–300
personal, 27
possessive, 263–266, 300–304
pronto (hello, ready), 173, 182, 298, 300
pronto soccorso (emergency room), 276, 298
pronunciation, basic
about, 12–13
alphabet, 13
consonants, 15–19
vowels, 13–15
proporre (to propose, suggest), 339
proseguire/proseguire/proseguire/proseguire/proseguire (go on), 110
prova (test), 26
public transportation
bus or tram, 249–251
maps and schedules, 251–252
taxis, 245–246
train, 246–249
pugilato (boxing), 198
pulire (to clean), 101, 344
pullman/pulmino (bus), 249
può ripetere per favore (could you repeat that please), 261
può ripetere più lentamente, per favore (can you please repeat it more slowly), 112
quadro (picture), 17
quale/i (which, what), 294
quando (when), 80, 153, 294
quantu anni ha (how old is...), 40
quantu/e (how many), 80, 294
quanto (how much), 80, 294
quanto vengono (how much is it), 135
quattordici (fourteen), 64
quattro (four), 17
quattro stagioni (four seasons), 72
quercia (oak), 192
questo (this), 17, 263
questura (police headquarters), 283
quindici (fifteen), 64
quintale (quintal), 78
racchettone (beach tennis), 217
radio (radio), 18
ragazze (girls), 199
ragazzo/a/i (boy/boys), 26, 199
rasato (clean-shaven), 284
reading
food labels, 315
Italian publications, 316
recreation and the outdoors
Fun & Games, 206
hobbies and interests, 200–205
reflexive verbs, 195–196
sports, 196–200
taking tours, 191–194
Talkin’ the Talk, 193–194, 196, 199–200, 202, 203, 204
reflexive verbs, 195–196, 305–311, 336
regista (director), 156
regular verbs, 28–30
reparti (departments), 140
reserving rooms, 256–258
responsabile (responsible), 189
ricci (curly), 284
ricetta (prescription), 281
ricevuta/e (receipt/s), 232, 243
rifugi (mountain huts), 255
rigatoni (short-cylinder-shaped, and grooved pasta), 128
rimanere (to stay, to remain), 215, 339
ripetere (to repeat), 29, 334
riposarsi (to rest oneself), 195, 305
riscuotere (to cash), 223, 226
riscuotere un assegno (to cash a check), 221
risotto (risotto), 127
rispondere (to reply, respond), 345
ritorno (return trip), 249
robberies, 281–284
Roma, città aperta (film), 153
rooms, reserving, 256–258
rosa (pink), 145
rossi/o (red), 145, 284
rotonda (rotary), 109

• S •
sagre (town celebrations relating to harvest, wild boar, or saints), 151
sagreh (fairs), 161
sala di pranzo (dining room), 88
salata (savory), 126
saldare il conto (to check out), 261
saldi (sales), 140
saldi alla cassa (reduction at cash register), 140
sale (salt), 14
salire (to go up), 340
salutations
  body language, 46
  common greetings and good-byes, 43–46
  Fun and Games, 61
getting acquainted, 53–60
  introductions, 47–52
invitations, 60
Talkin’ the Talk, 48, 49–50, 51, 52, 53–54, 54–55, 55–56, 59, 60
salute (bless you), 328
salve (hello, goodbye), 44
San Carlo, 159
sandal (sandals), 148
santo patrono (patron saint), 151
sapere (to know), 340
saxophone (saxophone), 205
scaffale (bookshelf), 93
scala (scale), 19
scarpe (shoes), 148
scegliere (to choose), 340
scena (scene), 19, 156
scesa (descent), 19
scheda telefonica (phone card), 174
schedules, public transportation, 251–252
sciarpa (scarf), 147
scimmia (monkey), 19
sciopero (strike), 309, 311
scippare (to snatch a handbag), 283
scippo (theft of a handbag), 283
scogliere (to melt), 345
sconto (discount), 19
scontrino (sales slip), 121, 126
scopa (broom), 97
scriver (to write), 334, 345
scuola (school), 19
scuri (dark), 284
scusi/scusa/scusate (excuse me, sorry), 11, 103, 259
sedersi (to sit), 341
sedici (sixteen), 64
sedie (chairs), 94
seguire (to follow), 110
segui/segua/seguito/seguano (follow), 110
semaforo (traffic light), 109
semplice (plain), 126
sempre dritto (straight ahead), 106
sending letters and postcards, 218

**señorita** (miss), 19

sentences, simple, 21

**sentire** (to hear, feel, taste, touch), 335

**sentirsi** (to feel), 336

seppia (cuttlefish), 133

**servizio in camera** (room service), 258

**servizio sveglia** (wake-up call), 258

seta (silk), 146

shoe sizes, 148

shopping, for clothing

accessorizing, 147

color, 145

definite and indefinite articles, 144
department store and boutiques, 139–142

Fun & Games, 150

sizes, 143, 148

Talkin’ the Talk, 141, 143–144, 145–146, 147–148, 149

shopping for food, 132–136

**siamo arrivati presto** (we arrived early), 298

simple future tense, 217–218

**sinistro/a** (left), 274, 276

sizes (clothing), 143, 148

Skype, 174–175

small talk

Fun & Games, 312

interrogative pronouns, 293–300

possessives, 300–304

reflexive verbs, 305–311

Talkin’ the Talk, 297–299, 302–304, 309–310

**soccorso stradale** (roadside assistance), 286

società (company), 186, 307

soggiorno (living room), 88, 93

sogliola (sole), 133

sole (sun), 14

solo (only), 18

soluzione (solution), 281

songs, listening to in Italian, 316

**sono americano** (I’m American), 58

sopra (on top of), 95, 106

sorpresa (surprise), 182

sotto (under), 95, 106

sottopassaggio (underpass), 107

spa, 217

spaghetti (spaghetti), 17, 128

speratechiare (to clear the table), 97

specialista (specialist), 277

spettacolo (show), 153

spiaggia (beach), 19

spiccioli (small change), 226

spigola (snapper), 133

spingere (to push), 140

spolverare (to dust), 101

sports, 196–200

**spremute** (fresh-squeezed fruit juice), 121

stamento (room), 88, 256, 258

stare (to stay, to be), 341

stasera (this evening, tonight), 40, 125

stazione (station), 109, 117

sterlina/e (pound/pounds), 230

stilisti (designers), 139

stipendio (salary), 309, 311

stivali (boots), 148

stomaco (stomach), 276

strada (street), 85, 107

strada principale (main street), 109

stressing words, 19–20

**stretta/e/o/i** (tight), 148

studente (male student), 26

studentessa (female student), 26

studiare (to study), 333

studio (office, study), 88

stupendo (wonderful, fabulous), 12

subafittare (sublet), 88

succhi di frutta (fruit juice), 121

sud (south), 106

suonare (to play [a musical instrument]), 170, 205, 333
supermercato (supermarket), 132
supplemento (supplement, surcharge), 237, 246, 249
svegliarsi (to wake up), 195, 196, 305
svendite (sales), 140

• T •
tabaccaio (tobacconist), 174, 218
tacchino (turkey), 194
tacere (to be silent), 341
taglia (size), 148
tagliatelle (flat noodles), 128
tailleur (skirt or pants and jacket), 142
talkin’ the talk
accommodations, 255, 257–258, 260–261, 265–266
basics, 31, 35–36, 37–38
business and telecommuting, 175, 176–177, 178–179, 180, 181, 184–185, 188
days of the week, 67
directions, asking for, 105, 107, 108–109, 111–112, 114, 115
food, 122, 123, 124–125, 126–127, 130, 131–132, 134–135
home, 89, 90–91, 92, 96–97, 98–99, 100
metric system, 78–80
numbers, 78–80
recreation and the outdoors, 193–194, 196, 199–200, 202, 203, 204
salutations, 48, 49–50, 51, 52, 53–54, 54–55, 55–56, 59, 60
shopping, for clothing, 141, 143–144, 145–146, 147–148, 149
small talk, 297–299, 302–304, 309–310
times of day, 72
trip planning, 210, 211–212, 213–214, 216
weather, 73–74, 74–75, 76
tamponi (tampons), 297
tappeto (rug), 93
tardi (late), 189
targa (license plate), 288
tartufi (truffles), 78
tasse (taxes, tuition), 311
tasso d’interesse (interest rate), 223
tavolino (small table), 122
tavolo (table), 94, 125
taxi (taxi), 245
taxis, 245–246
tazza (cup, mug, toilet bowl), 18, 94
tè (tea), 121
tè freddo (iced tea), 121
teatro (theater), 117

telecommuting and business
asking for people, 179–182
discussing your job, 186–189
fun & games, 190
getting messages, 179–182
making arrangements over phones, 178–179
past tense, 182–186
phones, 173–178
talkin’ the talk, 175, 176–177, 178–179, 180, 181, 184–185, 188
telefonino/telefonica (telephone), 174, 178
telefono pubblico (public phone), 178
tempo (time), 189
tempo incerto (uncertain weather), 77
tempo libero (free time), 200
tende (curtains), 94
tendine (tendon), 276
tenere (to hold), 342
tennis (tennis), 191
tense
  future, 37
  past, 37
  present, 37
  simple future tense, 217–218
terme (thermal springs), 217
text messaging, 174
theater, going to, 156–159
ti godi (you enjoy), 192

• U •
ungo (you), 15, 27, 28, 47
TV programs, 317
24-hour clock, 71
uccello (bird), 194
uffa (showing annoyance), 324
ufficio di cambio (exchange office), 224
ufficio postale (post office), 109, 218
ufficio/i (office/offices), 186, 307
Uffizi, 160
Umbria Jazz Festival, 162
umido (humid), 77
undici (eleven), 64
università (university), 20

public, navigating, 245–252
Talkin’ the Talk, 234–235, 237, 238–239,
  241–242, 244–245, 247, 248, 249–250,
  250–251
trasferisci (to move from one city to
  another), 88
traslocare (change houses), 88
trattoria (little restaurant), 124
trecentoventidue (three hundred and
  twenty-two), 63
tredici (thirteen), 64
treno (train), 15
treno rapido (express train), 246

trip planning
  arrivare (to arrive), 216
  beach and spa, 217
  booking trips, 213–215
  Fun & Games, 219
  partire (to leave), 27, 29, 216, 305, 334
  sending letters and postcards, 218
  simple future tense, 217–218
  taking tours, 211–212
  Talkin’ the Talk, 210, 211–212,
  213–214, 216
  when and where, 209–210

tromba (trumpet), 205
tu (you), 15, 27, 28, 47

transportation
  airports, 233–240
  car rentals, 243–245
  customs, 240–241
  early or late, 253
  Fun & Games, 254
  lost luggage, 241–243

trasferisci (to move from one city to
  another), 88

traffi c (traffi c), 286
traffi co (traffic), 286
trattoria (little restaurant), 124

• U •
trecentoventidue (three hundred and
  twenty-two), 63
tredici (thirteen), 64
treno (train), 15
treno rapido (express train), 246

trip planning
  arrivare (to arrive), 216
  beach and spa, 217
  booking trips, 213–215
  Fun & Games, 219
  partire (to leave), 27, 29, 216, 305, 334
  sending letters and postcards, 218
  simple future tense, 217–218
  taking tours, 211–212
  Talkin’ the Talk, 210, 211–212,
  213–214, 216
  when and where, 209–210

tramp (tram), 249
trama (plot), 156
tramonto (sunset), 192

transportation
  airports, 233–240
  car rentals, 243–245
  customs, 240–241
  early or late, 253
  Fun & Games, 254
  lost luggage, 241–243

uccello (bird), 194
uffa (showing annoyance), 324
ufficio di cambio (exchange office), 224
ufficio postale (post office), 109, 218
ufficio/i (office/offices), 186, 307
Uffizi, 160
Umbria Jazz Festival, 162
umido (humid), 77
undici (eleven), 64
università (university), 20

• U •
tre (you), 15, 27, 28, 47
TV programs, 317
24-hour clock, 71

uccello (bird), 194
uffa (showing annoyance), 324
ufficio di cambio (exchange office), 224
ufficio postale (post office), 109, 218
ufficio/i (office/offices), 186, 307
Uffizi, 160
Umbria Jazz Festival, 162
umido (humid), 77
undici (eleven), 64
università (university), 20
uno (one), 63
uno sputino (a snack), 119
uscire (to go out), 32, 35, 342
uscita (exit, gate), 140, 236
uscita di sicurezza (emergency exit), 140
uso personale (personal use), 243

• V •
va bene (okay), 12, 40
vacanza (vacation), 240
vacci piano (slow down), 329
valigia (suitcase), 236, 266
vasca da bagno (bath tub), 88, 94
va/vada/vadano (go), 110
vedere (to see), 334, 345
velluto (velvet), 146
vendere (to sell), 334
vendesi (for sale), 93
Venezia (Venice), 318
venga nel mio ufficio (come in my office), 267
vengo dall’America (I’m from America), 58
venire (to come), 32, 33, 343
venti (twenty), 63
ventidue (twenty-two), 63
verbs. See also specific verbs
directional, 109–111
-ire with special patterns, 343–344
irregular, 30, 32, 336–343
reflexive, 195–196, 305–311, 336
regular, 28–30
verde/i (green), 25, 145, 284
versare soldi sul tuo conto (to deposit money into your account), 221
vestirsi (get dressed, to dress oneself), 305
vestiti (clothes), 142
vestito (dress), 142
via (street), 85, 107
via principale (main street), 107
viaggiare (to travel), 215
viaggio (trip), 231
viaggio organizzato (organized trip), 215
viale (parkway, avenue), 107
vicino a (beside, next to), 106
vicolo (alley, lane), 107
villaggi turistici (resorts in hot spots), 255
vino/i (wine/wines), 15, 121
viola (purple), 145
violino (violin), 205
violoncello (cello), 205
virtù (virtue), 20
visas, 215
viscosa (rayon), 146
visibilità (visibility), 77
visto (visa), 215
vita (life), 14
vitello (veal), 132
vivere (to live), 27, 29, 334, 345
voce (voice), 205
voi (you), 27
volere (to want), 37, 343
volo (flight), 215, 237
vongole (clams), 133
vorrei (I would like), 297, 300
vowels, 13–15

• W •
watching Italian movies, 316
weather, 72–77
weight, 78

• X •
xenofobia (xenophobia), 16
xilofono (xylophone), 16
Get More and Do More at Dummies.com®

Start with **FREE** Cheat Sheets

Cheat Sheets include
- Checklists
- Charts
- Common Instructions
- And Other Good Stuff!

To access the Cheat Sheet created specifically for this book, go to www.dummies.com/cheatsheet/Italian

Get Smart at Dummies.com

Dummies.com makes your life easier with 1,000s of answers on everything from removing wallpaper to using the latest version of Windows.

Check out our
- Videos
- Illustrated Articles
- Step-by-Step Instructions

Plus, each month you can win valuable prizes by entering our Dummies.com sweepstakes.*

Want a weekly dose of Dummies? Sign up for Newsletters on
- Digital Photography
- Microsoft Windows & Office
- Personal Finance & Investing
- Health & Wellness
- Computing, iPods & Cell Phones
- eBay
- Internet
- Food, Home & Garden

Find out “HOW” at Dummies.com

* Sweepstakes not currently available in all countries; visit Dummies.com for official rules.

Mobile Apps

There’s a Dummies App for This and That

With more than 200 million books in print and over 1,600 unique titles, Dummies is a global leader in how-to information. Now you can get the same great Dummies information in an App. With topics such as Wine, Spanish, Digital Photography, Certification, and more, you’ll have instant access to the topics you need to know in a format you can trust.

To get information on all our Dummies apps, visit the following:
www.Dummies.com/go/mobile from your computer.